



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 478.41 .N986 1
Nutting, Herbert Chester,
First Latin reader : with exercises /

Stanford University Libraries



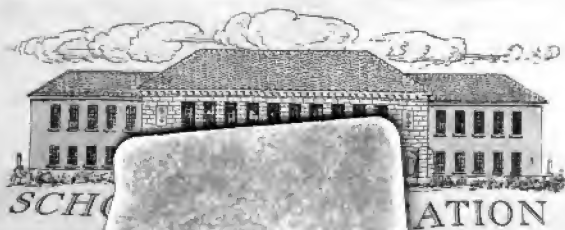
3 6105 04926 5486

A FIRST
LATIN READER
WITH EXERCISES

HERBERT CHESTER NUTTING



Gift of
Stanford Language Arts
Investigation



A FIRST
LATIN READER
WITH EXERCISES

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

592555

COPYRIGHT, 1902, 1913, BY
H. C. NUTTING.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

NUTTING LATIN READER.

E. P. 2

PREFACE

WITH the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1-45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492-1783, and the second group (46-100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101-125), and the concluding series (126-140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson are defined in the footnotes on that exercise. For teachers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading, the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as providing a means of locating familiar material with which to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance has been Merguet's "Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars." I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable suggestions.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.

TO THE TEACHER

FROM the present vigorous discussion touching methods of Latin instruction it seems very clear that there is increasing dissatisfaction with a course of study which begins with memorizing forms and numerous abstract rules, and ends (for students who do not persevere beyond the Caesar year) with a microscopic analysis of very limited portions of Latin text. From the disciplinary point of view, even such a course of study is, beyond doubt, profitable; but it seems likely that criticism will in no large measure be disarmed, until more tangible results can be shown in the matter of the student's power to *read the language*.

In framing the Primer and Reader, therefore, the author has endeavored to formulate a plan for "First Year Latin," which, while retaining the chief merits of the old method, will at the same time hold the pupil's interest, and lay the foundation for a real power to read simple Latin at sight. To meet successfully these additional requirements, two things seem beyond all others essential, namely:

- (1) To provide abundant easy reading matter, carefully graded both in vocabulary and syntax; and
- (2) To relieve the reading lessons of the dragging weight of constant, minute, grammatical analysis.

In conformity with these ideas, the Reader, as well as the Primer, has been provided with a long gradatim series of easy and interesting Latin stories, which, as stated in the Preface, are designed to be handled briskly in class, with a minimum of grammatical comment. Adequate time

will thus remain for discussion of the material provided for *daily* practice in composition, and here the teacher will find a text for all needful grammatical drill.

With the helps provided in the way of footnotes and Word List, some classes will doubtless be able to handle many of the Latin stories of the Reader without previous preparation ; and, whenever this is the case, the practice should in every way be encouraged ; for a story always has added charm when taken up for the first time, especially if it be not made the subject of unnecessary grammatical discussion. As for daily practice in composition, the idea will seem to some, at first sight, impracticable ; but, as a matter of fact, it is really the most practical method of all. For students who are required to write but once a week usually detest the task ; whereas those who have daily practice gain a facility which renders the work a pleasure.

In working out the composition exercises of the Reader, the pupil should be urged to use as little as possible the general English-Latin vocabulary at the end of the volume. For frequent recourse to this source of help there is little excuse ; for, aside from numerals, proper names, and the material supplied in the footnotes, the whole series of composition lessons calls for only about three hundred Latin words, in addition to those carried over from the Primer ; moreover, the footnotes give much help in the way of paraphrase and cross-reference.

It has not seemed wise, either in the Primer or in the Reader, to introduce many abstract rules regarding Latin style. Frequent help, however, is given in the footnotes of the latter book ; and the student, through abundant reading, will learn much by induction. The teacher will need to watch for, and curb, individual peculiarities here and there ; but it will be found generally that this matter takes

care of itself surprisingly well, so far as fundamentals are concerned. And, at this stage of the work, correctness of syntax is far more important than minute refinement of style.

In cases where the Reader is taken up after the lapse of the long summer vacation, it is very desirable that the work of the new school year be begun with a review of forms and of the few last lessons of the Primer; otherwise the opening lessons of the Reader will seem to the pupil unusually difficult. Even with this help, it may prove in some cases that the first of the English-Latin Exercises of the Reader require more than the usual amount of study; if so, thorough work should be done at this point, even though the reading for a time outruns the composition. Where more mature classes are using the Primer and Reader together as texts for a single year's work, it has been found that the Primer can be covered easily at the rate of a Lesson a day. Such classes will naturally handle many of the Latin stories of the Reader at sight; and the composition work of that volume can be reduced one third by omitting the last paragraph of each Exercise.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Christopher Columbus . . .	1	23. William Penn and the Friends	26
2. Christopher Columbus (<i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i>)	2	24. Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia .	27
3. Christopher Columbus (<i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i>)	3	25. Nathaniel Bacon (<i>continued</i>)	28
4. Christopher Columbus (<i>con-</i> <i>cluded</i>)	4	26. Nathaniel Bacon (<i>concluded</i>)	30
5. The Cabots	5	27. The Boyhood of George Washington	31
6. Captain John Smith	6	28. Experiences on the Frontier .	32
7. Captain John Smith (<i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i>)	6	29. A Dangerous Mission . . .	33
8. Captain John Smith (<i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i>)	7	30. A Dangerous Mission (<i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i>)	34
9. Captain John Smith (<i>con-</i> <i>cluded</i>)	10	31. The Beginning of the French and Indian War	35
10. Pocahontas	11	32. Braddock's Defeat	36
11. Henry Hudson	12	33. Later Events of the War . .	37
12. Henry Hudson (<i>continued</i>) .	13	34. The Outbreak of the Revolu- tion	38
13. Colonization in New Eng- land	14	35. Operations about Boston . .	39
14. A Soldier's Courtship . . .	16	36. The Battles of Long Island and Trenton	41
15. Unrest among the Indians .	17	37. The Retreat from Trenton .	42
16. Old Friends become Enemies	18	38. Burgoyne's Campaign . . .	43
17. The Outbreak of King Phil- ip's War	20	39. Valley Forge	44
18. A Remarkable Deliverance .	21	40. Help from France	45
19. Philip finds Allies	22	41. Benedict Arnold	46
20. Captain Church	23	42. A Roman who fought again t his Country	48
21. The Death of Philip . . .	24	43. The Surrender of Cornwallis .	49
22. End of the War	25	44. Washington retires to Private Life	51
		45. The Father of his Country .	52

TALES OF LAND AND SEA

	PAGE		PAGE
46. The Settler's Daughter . . .	54	74. The Treasure Seekers . . .	88
47. The Trials of War . . .	55	75. A Dangerous Conspiracy . .	90
48. The Attempt to surprise De- troit	56	76. A Dangerous Conspiracy (continued)	91
49. The Attempt to surprise De- troit (continued)	57	77. A Quick-Witted Messenger .	92
50. A Successful Ruse	58	78. Fortune favors the Brave . .	93
51. How the Town was Saved . .	59	79. Andrew Jackson	94
52. An Example of Fortitude . .	61	80. Pirates Ashore	95
53. A Hasty Leave-Taking . . .	62	81. Carrying the Tribute . . .	97
54. The Capture of a Man-of- War	63	82. A Successful Ambuscade . .	98
55. The Fall of New London . .	64	83. An Intrepid Commander . .	99
56. The Fall of New London (con- tinued)	65	84. Burned at the Stake . . .	101
57. Captivity among the Indians .	67	85. An Early Morning Surprise .	102
58. A Fresh Supply of Powder . .	68	86. Some Very Distinguished Geese	103
59. A Battle against Great Odds .	69	87. An Army of Two	104
60. A Night Attack	70	88. Horatius at the Bridge . . .	105
61. A Choice of Evils	71	89. A Favor Repaid	108
62. Lost in the Woods	72	90. An Earthquake in Colonial Times	109
63. The Battle of Saratoga . . .	73	91. Evils of the Slave Trade . .	110
64. Unwelcome Visitors	74	92. A Pirate Outdone	111
65. The Boyhood of Daniel Boone .	76	93. Colonization in Africa . . .	112
66. The End of the Pequots . . .	78	94. A Prize Won and Lost . . .	113
67. The End of the Pequots (con- tinued)	79	95. A Prize Won and Lost (con- tinued)	114
68. A Difficult Escape	80	96. A Mysterious Disappear- ance	116
69. Stories about Daniel Boone . .	81	97. Early Days in Liberia . . .	118
70. An English Privateer	82	98. An Experience with Rob- bers	119
71. A Roman Vandal	83	99. The Capture of Stony Point .	120
72. Indian Vengeance	86	100. Nathan Hale	121
73. A Tale of Brave Women . . .	87		

STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

101. Unexpected Trouble . . .	123	103. Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp	126
102. A Parley with the Enemy .	125		

	PAGE		PAGE
104. The Advice of the Enemy is Taken	127	111. A Messenger eludes the Enemy	137
105. The Romans are Ambushed	128	112. Caesar heads a Relief Force	138
106. The Enemy Prevail	130	113. The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach	139
107. Annihilation of the Roman Force	131	114. The Enemy raise the Siege	141
108. The Gauls attack a Second Camp	133	115. They are Outgeneraled by Caesar	142
109. The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar	134	116. Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter	143
110. Heroic Defense of their Camp	135		

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

117. Caesar lands a Force in Africa	145	122. Narrow Escape of their Commander	152
118. Operations about Utica	147	123. King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus	154
119. Curio gains an Initial Advantage	148	124. The Numidians resort to Strategy	155
120. He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar	149	125. Curio's Army is Annihilated	156
121. The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse	151		

SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

126-128. An Episode from the Gallic War	158	131. The Death of Caesar	166
129-130. An Episode from the Civil War	163	132-133. The Fate of Hannibal	169
		134-136. Catiline's Conspiracy	172
		137-140. On the Eastern Frontier	178
WORD LIST			186

LIST OF MAPS

Gallia	124
The Scene of Curio's Campaign in Africa	146
Asia Minor	179

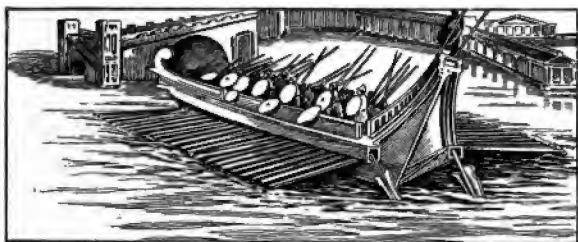
ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

EXERCISE	PAGE
I. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN AND WITHIN WHICH. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE	199
II. ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. DOUBLE AC-CUSATIVE. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE	203
III. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE .	207
IV. <i>Dum</i> WITH THE PRESENT INDICATIVE	212
V. THE GERUND. DATIVE OF POSSESSION	215
VI. REVIEW OF EXERCISES I-V. SEQUENCE OF TENSES .	218
VII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	222
VIII. ABLATIVE OF MANNER. REVIEW OF THE GERUNDIVE	225
IX. THE INDIRECT OBJECT WITH CERTAIN VERBS	229
X. NEGATIVE CONNECTIVE	232
XI. DATIVE OF AGENCY. THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES	235
XII. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	239
XIII. REVIEW OF EXERCISES VI-XII	242
XIV. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST	244
XV. LOCATIVE CASE. THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES (<i>Continued</i>)	247
XVI. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE	251
XVII. THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE	254
XVIII. THE CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING	258
XIX. GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC	261
XX. DATIVE OF SERVICE	264
XXI. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XIV-XX. DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE	267
XXII. THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS	270
XXIII. RESULT CLAUSES	273

EXERCISE	PAGE
XXIV. TOWN NAMES	276
XXV. THE GERUND IN PURPOSE CLAUSES	279
XXVI. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE	282
XXVII. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXI-XXVI	285
XXVIII. THE SUPINE	287
XXIX. SUMMARY OF PURPOSE CONSTRUCTIONS. USE OF quō	290
XXX. ABLATIVE OF WAY BY WHICH	294
XXXI. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC	296
XXXII. NUMERALS	300
XXXIII. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXVIII-XXXII	302
XXXIV. NUMERALS (<i>Continued</i>). HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE	305
XXXV. SUMMARY OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTIONS	307
XXXVI. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	312
XXXVII. THE THIRD PERSON REFLEXIVES	316
XXXVIII. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC	321
XXXIX. I-STEMS AND U-STEMS	324
XL. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXXIV-XXXIX	327
XLI. INSTRUMENTALITY OR INTERMEDIATE AGENCY	329
XLII. INDIRECT OBJECT WITH THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE	332
XLIII. THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES	335
XLIV. CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	338
XLV. THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE	341
SUMMARY OF FORMS	345
LIST OF VERB CONSTRUCTIONS	382
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	385
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	427
INDEX	443

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abl., ablative.	interrog., interrogative.
absol., absolute.	l., line.
acc., accusative.	lit., literally.
act., active.	loc., locative.
adj., adjective.	M., m., or masc., masculine.
adv., adverb.	N., n., or neut., neuter.
C., or c., common (gender).	nom., nominative.
cf., compare.	obj., object.
compar., comparative.	p., page.
conj., conjunction.	part., or partic., participle.
dat., dative.	pass., passive.
decl., declension.	perf., perfect.
demon., demonstrative.	pers., person.
e.g., for example.	pl., plural.
etc., and so forth.	pluperf., pluperfect.
F., f., or fem., feminine.	posit., positive.
ff., (and) following.	pred., predicate.
ftn., footnote.	prep., preposition.
fut., future.	pres., present.
gen., genitive.	pron., pronoun.
i.e., that is.	reflex., reflexive.
imperf., or impf., imperfect.	rel., relative.
impers., impersonal.	sc., understand, supply.
indecl., indeclinable.	sing., singular.
indef., indefinite.	subj., subject.
indic., indicative.	superl., superlative.
infin., infinitive.	transl., translate.
intens., intensive.	Vocab., Vocabulary.



NĀVIS

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

LESSON I

Christopher Columbus

Quōdam in oppidō Ītalīae ōlim nātus est puer, qui Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officīnā laborāvit. Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad litus ibat, ut vidēret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exhibant diversās. In nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare ipse trānsire saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniā nullā habēbat. Sed postea, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam et Āfricā nāvigāvit.

Illis temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cursumque prope litus tenēbant. Interdum autem secundum Āfricae ōram longē nāvigātum erat, quod Henricus, rēx Lūsitāniae, invenire viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Āfricā prōgressae, ad Asiā pervenire possent.

Line 2. officīnā: officīna, -ae, F., *workshop*.

7. usque ad: *all the way to*, lit. *even to*.

9. illis temporibus: *in those days*.

10. interdum: *not interim*.

11. ōram: *i.e.* litus (ōra, -ae, F.). — nāvigātum erat: *people had*

sailed, lit. *it had been sailed* (impersonal passive).

12. quā: *by which*; antecedent, viam.

13. possent: *could*; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose. In translating the verb possum, some other rendering than "be able" should often be chosen.

Quidam tum crēdebant terram esse rotundam, Columbusque etiam spērāre coeperat se trānsīre mare Atlanticum posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenire; nēmō enim intellegēbat terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus est Americam interpōni.

LESSON 2

Christopher Columbus (Continued)

Interim Henricus rēx mortuus erat. Columbus tamen in Lūsitāniam profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnū obtinentī cōsiliū suū aperīret; sed pecūniā, quā petēbat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniā iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bellum cum Maurīs gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēginā nōlle ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est; cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōsecūtus, quī dixit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniāque dare. Quā rē audītā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, perīculum veritī, cum eō nāvīgāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs, quae Pinta, Nīna, Santaque Mariā appellābantur; cumque

1. quidam: masc. pl., used as a noun. — rotundam: rotundus, -a, -um, round, or spherical.

4. nec: and . . . not.

5. interpōni: lit. to lie between.

7. obtinentī: pres. part. modifying rēgī.

10. ubi: (but) there.

11. nec quisquam: and nobody.

12. ubi: temporal conjunction.

13. ea: (neut. pl.) the things.

15. velle: was willing.

16. laetus: gladly, or with joy.

A Latin adj. is often best translated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. veritī: perf. part. of vereor; to be translated as a present, the Latin use being somewhat inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvigāset, ad insulās quāsdam pervēnit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus. Tum per ignōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

LESSON 3

Christopher Columbus (Continued)

Cum multa milia passuum Columbus nāvigāset neque
5 terram vidisset ūllam, nautae vehementer timēre coepē-
runt, quod multa audiverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per
mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam postea redi-
erant; in Hispāniam igitur statim redire volēbant, dux
tamen nōluit. Quārē illi primō habuērunt in animō Co-
10 lumbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum
animi irāti ā duce mītigāti sunt.

Ōlim nauta quidam crēdebāt sē terram vidēre, et omnēs
gaudēbant; nūbem autem viderat ille, nōn terram. Sed
paucis post diēbus rāmum invēnērunt et bācās in mari
15 natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre.
Mox noctū ignem quoque in litore vidērunt, ac mātne ad
insulam pervēnērunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressi
paucōs diēs morāti sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque insulās adiit, in
20 quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur. Gazās tamen inve-
nīre nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat. Putābat enim sē iam ad

1. nāvigāset: *i.e.* nāvigāvis-
set.

2. plūrimae: see multus.

4. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

6. multa: *many (stories)*.

11. mītigāti sunt: *were calmed*
(mītigō, 1).

13. nūbem: nūbēs, -is, *F., cloud*.

14. paucis post diēbus: *a few*
days later, lit. *afterward by a*
few days (abl. of degree of
difference).

15. natantēs: pres. part. of
natō. — iam: *at length*.

21. potuit: see the note on pos-
sent, p. 1, l. 13.

Asiam pervēnisse; quārē incolās eārum insulārum, quās adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

LESSON 4

Christopher Columbus (Concluded)

Indī Columbum amābant; isque, cum ad Hispāniam reditūrus esset, in insulā quādam colōniam parvam reliquit.
5 Colōnī tamen iniuriās mox Indīs fēcērunt ac brevī ad ūnum ab eis interfectī sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat; subitō autem, cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā, nāvēs fluctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scripsit
10 litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit; crēdēbat enim nūllam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad lītus ventīs ferri, civēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fieri dē eis insulis, quās ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt, et Columbus in Hispāniam incolumis pervēnit; ubi rēx et
15 rēgīna eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt insulārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvigāvit. Rem autem haud fēliciter gessit, inopsque postrēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat,
20 Asiae partem esse crēdēbat.

3. reditūrus esset: *was about to return.*

5. brevī: *i.e. mox.*—ad ūnum: *to a man.*

8. laetus: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. dōlia: dōlium, -ī, N., *cask.*—conditās: *freely, he placed . . . (and); lit. what?*

12. certiōrēs fieri: *be informed, or learn, lit. be made more certain.* Supply *posse* with this clause.

13. violentiam: *violentia, -ae, F., force.*

14. incolumis: *for rendering, cf. laetus, l. 8.—ubi: there.*

15. eius rēbus gestīs: *in his exploits.*

16. praefectum: *cf. the predicate accusative (Indōs) with appellāvit, l. 2.*

18. inops (-opis, adj.): *in poverty.*

LESSON 5

The Cabots

Interim vir quidam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britannīā cum nāve parvā nautisque paucis profectus est atque ad Americam pervēnit. Quī nōn solum insulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Postea idem cum filiō ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressus, Indōs vidit multōs. Interim nautae prope insulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscis caperent. Quī, cum domum incolumēs redissent, amicis suis multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus miris, quās viderant; quīn etiam dixerunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscis raperent.

Cabot filius postea omnis in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenire, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenire posset; eam tamen viam numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Ōlim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dīcitur dedisse nautis quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās ignōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvis nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. ā: *from*.

3. quī: *he*. — eam: *the*.

8. quī, cum: (*and*) *when they*.
— incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. multa: cf. ea, p. 2, l. 13, and multa, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. ursās: *ursa*, -ae, *F., bear*.

12. filius: *the younger*.

13. quā: abl. of way by which;
cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

15. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

16. diūtius: (*any*) *longer*.

17. dīcitur: lit. *he is said*. This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. profectūrōs esse: cf. reditūrōs esset, p. 4, l. 3.

LESSON 6

Captain John Smith

Quod colōnī, quī ex Hispāniā in Americam dēducti erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, quī castra pōnerent eā in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indi mox
5 adortī sunt, sagittisque occidērunt paucōs; castra tamen prope ripam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus fēla plūrima inmisērunt in hostēs, quī sē celeriter in silvās recipere coactī sunt.

Brevi autem erat periculum etiam maius; nam paene
10 omnis cōsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britannīā nāvibus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir fortis, cum scaphā paucisque militibus adversō flūmine longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.
15 Postea dux idem, cum iterum profectus esset ut inveniret viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenire possent (omnēs enim iam intellegēbant Americam nōn esse Asiae partem) fortiter pugnāns ab Indis captus est.

LESSON 7

Captain John Smith (Continued)

Postremō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber
20 postea per litora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

3. pōnerent: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13. — eā: modifier of terrā: for translation, cf. eam. p. 5, l. 3.

4. quōs: *these* (adj.).

10. nāvibus: freely, *in their ships*; strictly, abl. of means.

12. adversō flūmine: *up stream*; lit. what?

14. nūgīs: nūgae, -arum, F., *trifles*.

16. omnēs: *everybody*; cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1. The noun use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsire et ita ad Asiam pervenire posset. In itineribus et dux et milītēs noctū saepe frigora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō ignī et haud procul collocātō, humī iacere solēbant eōdem locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope litus quoddam nāvigārent, ab incolis sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; milītēs tamen, cum postea in litore eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus tenentēs vidissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdiderunt. Dux autem, insidiās veritus, milītēs iussit hostēs prius sonō armōrum terrere; tum, cum Indī perterriti in silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad litus vērunt, et in harēnā dōna posuerunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant, ac colōnīs iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eis libenter dedērunt.

LESSON 8

Captain John Smith (Continued)

Dum haec fiunt, Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. *esse inventūrum*: *would find*.—quō: cf. *quā*, p. 1, l. 12.

2. *et . . . et*: *both . . . and*.

3. *maxima*: for the various renderings of *magnus*, see the Vocab.—*tum*: *at such times*.—*remōtō*: *removeō*, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move*.

4. *humī*: *on the ground*; locative case.—*eōdem locō*: the prepositions *in* and *ex* are often lacking with *locō* and *locis*.

5. *interdum*: cf. p. 1, l. 16.—*dulcem*: *dulcis*, -is, -e, *fresh*.

6. *pānis* (-is, M.): *bread*.—

corruptus est: *corruptō*, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, *spoil*.

9. *corbulās*: *corbula*, -ae, F., *basket*.—*manibus*: for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.

14. *quae*: *these* (noun).

15. *factī amīcī*: *freely, becoming friendly* (*factī* from *fiō*). English often uses a pres. part. where the perfect would be more exact.

16. *haec*: *these things*.—*fiunt*: in connection with *dum*, the pres. indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

17. *rapiēbant*: *would steal*; a common meaning of the impf. indic.

arma quoque ē colōniā rapta sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, qui ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse pacē sē interfēcit.

Postremō ē Britannīā vēnērunt colōnī novī, quī Fabrō, dē quō suprā dixi, amīcī nōn erant. Ā quibus domum redire
5 coāctus, numquam postea ille ad Virginiā revēnit. Sed
per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque ōlim pervēnit
usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur.
Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūris diēs morātī, piscēs cē-
pērunt multōs, quōs sāle conditōs postea in Britanniam
10 reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa milia
passuum secundum litus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque
ab incolis emēbat.

Quī, cum dēmum in Britanniam redire vellet, Indōs complūris in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi
15 est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvibus ēgressi sunt, ūnus
ē praepositis Indōs paucōs sē sequi nāvemque iterum cōn-
scendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniā cum captivīs
miseris profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnā-
rētur, sacerdotēs quīdam, quī dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs facti
20 erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captivi
servāti sunt.

1. ex: *of*.

2. tractāre: (*how*) to handle.
—ipse . . . sē: freely, *his own self*.

4. domum: *i.e.* to England.

5. revēnit: the prefix *re-* often means "back"; cf. reportāvērunt (l. 10), redūxit (l. 14), and re(d)-ire (l. 4).

7. usque ad: *as far as*.

8. locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. sāle conditōs: *salted down* (condiō, 4, *season*; sāl, sālis, *M.*, *salt*); conditōs modifies quōs.

11. pellēs: pellis, -is, *F.*, *skin*, or *pelt*.

13. quī, cum: *when . . . he*.
—vellet: *was ready*; for other meanings of the word see the Vocab.

14. in nāvēs accēpit: translate freely. —sēcum: *i.e.* sē + cum. —quō: *there*; lit. *whither*.

15. est perventum: cf. the impersonal passive on p. 1, l. 11, and translate according to the context here. —omnēs: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. praepositis: praepositus, -i, *M.*, *officer*.

19. certiōrēs facti erant: cf. p. 4, l. 12.



SACERDŌS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood for a term of thirty years' service. The Vestal Virgins were held in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence when they appeared in public; and a condemned criminal was saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them as he was being led away to execution.

LESSON 9

Captain John Smith (Concluded)

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēdūcere parābat, brevīque cum militibus ac nautīs sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsiret, subito tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene
5 frāctae sunt; quārē domum redire coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum ūnā nāve parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēliciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātis procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātae tamen inventī sunt militēs esse, quōs ipse ōlim in Eurōpā
10 dūxerat; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucis post diēbus Galli quīdam, quī per maria omnia prae-
dam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōnscendere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius
15 nautae, quī domum redire iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās postea dedērunt cum dēmum redisset Faber, qui cum Gallis diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam postea ille colōniam dēdūcere cōnātus est.

2. ad . . . versus: *for*; cf. p. 2, l. 13.

6. paulō post: *a little later*, lit. *afterward by a little*; cf. paucis post diēbus, p. 3, l. 14. — profectus: cf. the note on factī, p. 7, l. 15.

9. inventī sunt . . . esse: *i.e. proved to be*; lit. *what?* — Eurōpā: note the case.

14. morārētur: *was detained*.

15. iam diū: in connection with such adverbial words and phrases as iam, iam diū, etc., an imperf. has almost the force of a pluperf. — dedērunt vēla: *sc. ventis, i.e. set sail*.

16. incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14 — ubi: see the note on p. 4, l. 14.

LESSON 10

Pocahontas

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūxerant, habitābat quīdam rēx Indus, cui erat filia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābatur, colōnōs amāvit, ōlimque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprà multa dixi; nam trāditum est, cum ille ab Indīs captus esset, hostēsque cum interficere vellent, rēgis filiam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multi crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque postea mentitum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium misit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occidere pararent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quī etiam ōlim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multī mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt; Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, filiā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnīs amāre coepit. Quī, cum eam in mātrimonium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

2. cui erat: freely, *who had*: lit. what?

4. multa: *much*; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9. — trāditum est: *it is related* (trādō is short for trānsdō, lit. *hand over, pass along*).

6. suum: emphatic position, *her own*. When a possessive adj. is employed for clearness merely, it is apt to follow the modified

noun; when it precedes the noun, it is often best rendered as *suum* here.

7. id: *i.e.* the incident. — multī: cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1.

15. prō: *as*.

17. morātur: for the force of the tense, see the note on fiunt, p. 7, l. 16.

LESSON 11

Henry Hudson

Hōc ferē tempore Batāvī, qui volēbant viam invenire, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmīdia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britannicum, ducem fēcērunt.

5 Ille primō circum Eurōpam nāvigāre frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audiverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsire possent. Quō ubi perventum est, multa milia passuum secundum lītus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāsset, postrēmō pervēnit ad insu-
10 lam, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hīc Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, qui cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittisque hominem interfēcērunt ūnum.

Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōnscendere
15 coēgit. Tum insulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāsset, captivi ē nāvi sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōspectū erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās
20 nautīs libenter vēdidērunt.

1. hōc . . . tempore: for syntax, cf. illis temporibus, p. 1, l. 9.

2. nāvigārī posset: lit. *it could be sailed*; cf. the impersonal passive nāvigātum erat, p. 1, l. 11.

3. Dīmīdia: *Half* (dīmīdius, -a, -um).

7. quō: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. cum explōrāsset: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. nāvigāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

14. quō: *this* (noun).

15. adversō flūmine: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. nandō: *gerund, by swimming*; the phrase nandō . . . pervēnērunt may be rendered *freely* "swam."

LESSON 12

Henry Hudson (Continued)

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvigātum esset, dux ipse ē nāvi in ripam ēgressus incolās convēnit, quī libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnīs, ut advenae intellegerent sē esse amicōs. Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit angustius fieri, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenire nōn posse. Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvi nāvēs aliās et hominēs misērunt, quī cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux idem, cum ā Britannīā ad Americam iterum profectus esset, mare maximum sub septentrionibus invēnit, quod nunc eius nōmine appellātur. Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coāctus est. Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnis cōsūptus esset, nautae scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

15 Hudsōnem nēmō postea vidit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissis, incolumēs domum pervēnērunt:—quamquam primō fame omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptis, nōn habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōspectum vēnit nāvis, cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliisque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

4. haud diū: freely, but a short time.

6. angustius: predicate adj., agreeing with flūmen, l. 5. — hāc: sc. viā; cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13.

9. negōtiārentur: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.

10. cum . . . profectus esset: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. mare: bay. — maximum: mighty; absolute use of the superlative. In a similar way, com-

paratives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — sub septentrionibus: i.e. toward the north (septentrionēs, -um, M., the "Great Bear").

14. altum: the deep (sea).

15. āmissis: i.e. by death.

17. paucīs . . . exceptis: freely, with the exception of a few.

18. quod ēssent: (anything) to eat (ēssent from edō). As antecedent for the relative, supply id (acc.).

LESSON 13

Colonization in New England

Paucis post annis Britannii complures, qui apud Batavos diu habitaverant, in Americam cum liberis atque uxoribus emigrare constituerunt. Qui, cum pervenissent ad litus eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellatur, impetum
 5 Indorum veriti, legatum, nomine Standisium, cum militibus paucis miserunt, qui loca undique exploraret. Illi igitur multa milia passuum secundum litus progressi sunt, cum navigarent interdiu, noctesque autem in litore agerent.

10 Primo terrae incolae raro viderunt; olim tamen, cum mane proficisci pararent unusque ex militibus omnium arma in scapha iam collocavisset, Indi subito e silva magno clamore eruperunt, sagittisque vulneraverunt paucos. Sed milites statim ad scapham cucurrerunt, ut arma caperent,
 15 hostesque celeriter fugere coacti sunt.

Postrimo ad portum tutum perventum est, ubi tribus ante annis multi habitaverant Indi; qui iam ad unum morbo perierant. Qua de re certiores facti, coloni reliqui quoque ad eum locum venerunt, ibique e navis in litus egressi, dis
 20 egerunt gratias castraque posuerunt. Est in litore etiam nunc saxum, quod Americani semper coluerunt colentque

2. liberis atque uxoribus: sc. suis.

3. qui, cum: cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. exploraret: note the mood.

8. cum navigarent: translate by a participial phrase.

10. raro: adv., *seldom*.

11. omnium: used as a masc. noun, modifier of arma.

14. ut arma caperent: *i.e. to arm themselves*.

17. ad unum: *utterly*; cf. p. 4, l. 5.

18. qua de re: *i.e. de hac re*.

19. dis: from deus.

21. coluerunt: colō, 3, colui, cultus, *venerate*.



IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEŌRUM

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.

semper, quod hīc dēmum ē nāvi ēgressi sunt Britannī illi, quī postea maiōrēs peregrinantēs appellāti sunt.

LESSON 14

A Soldier's Courtship

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōnī complūrēs periē-
runt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille,
5 uxōre mortuā, in mātīmōnium volēbat dūcere quandam
puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla; sed, cum sē
sentīret militem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit,
iuvenemque quandam mīsit, quī puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, quī forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre coeperat,
10 amicō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est,
lēniterque per litus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit.
Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim
sē nōn nōlle dixit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā
dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestis loquerētur, illa diū
15 tacita audīvit, tum rīdēs: “Nōnne prō tē,” inquit, “dic-
tūrus es?” Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum
ad lēgātum rediit. Quī primō amicum verbis acerbis

1. quod: conjunction.

2. maiōrēs: as noun, *Fathers*.
— peregrinantēs: *Pilgrim* (pere-
grinor, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. quōrum in numerō: *i.e.*
among whom. — Standisī: *filius*
and proper names in -ius and -ium
have regularly this short form of
the gen.; so also some common
nouns in -ium. Accent, *Standisī*.

6. cum: causal conjunction; cf.,
however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. maestus: cf. the rendering
of *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

11. domum: *residence*; with
domum in this meaning, the prepo-
sition cannot be omitted (as in l.
16).

12. quō: cf. the note on p. 8,
l. 14. — rēs: (*his*) *errand*.

13. nōn: with nōlle. — cum Pris-
sillā: we would say “*to Pris-*
cilla.”

14. eius: *i.e.* of *Standish*. — rē-
bus gestis: cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. nōnne: *i.e.* nōn + ne. —
dictūrus es: *going to speak*; cf.
reditūrus esset, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illius culpā rem ita cecidisse. Itaque paucis post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in mātirimōnium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam sūmpsit.

LESSON 15

Unrest among the Indians

5 Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimici erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō suprà dixi; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum semper gessit, neque umquam periculum ūllum recūsāvit. Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; ōlim enim, cum ad oppidum
10 Indōrum inimicōrum profectus esset hostēsque vicisset, trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī alii, ā Britannīā profecti, haud procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indī
15 vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō incendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōstituērunt; sed rēx quīdam, quī colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit, eumque dē hostium cōsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Periculō cōgnitō, lēgātus statim cum mīlitibus paucis ad alterum oppidum
20 profectus est. Ibi Indī, cum vidissent mīlītēs esse paucōs, arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrere posse, ei ostendērunt

1. illius culpā: *through (any) fault of his, i.e. of the iuvenis (culpa, -ae, f.). — rem: the affair.*

8. neque umquam: *and . . . never; cf. the rendering of nec quisquam, p. 2, l. 11. In translation, nec (neque) should always, if possible, be resolved thus into connective and negative.*

15. conciliō: contrast cōsiliō, l. 18.

18. periculō cōgnitō: *freely, having learned of the danger.* A literal rendering of cōgnitus in the abl. absol. construction would often be awkward.

21. arbitrātī: cf. the use of veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

sicās, ac verbōrum quoque contumēliās adiūnxērunt. Sed paucīs post diēbus, cum quīdam Pecuot cum lēgātō loquerētur, is, signō militibus datō, Pecuotis sicam subitō rapuit, eāque ipsum interfēcit; simul milites, comitēs Pecuotis adortī, eōs omnēs occidērunt. Quō factō, Indī reliquī perterriti fūgērunt, nec diūtius dē caede colōnōrum cōgitābant ūlli.

LESSON 16

Old Friends become Enemies

Eī rēgī, ā quō colōnī dē suō periculō cōnsiliisque Indōrum certiōrēs factī sunt, duo erant filii, quī quoque colōnīs diū amici erant. Patre autem mortuō, iuvenēs suspicārī coepērunt bene ēmissee colōnōs, quibus silvās Indī vēndiderant; tum novam religiōnem civēs suōs amplectī haud libenter vidērunt: itaque mox dē bellō cōgitābant.

Quod ubi cōgnitum est, ē colōniā milites missī sunt, quī frātre maiōrem, nōmine Alexandrum, prō obside in oppidum sēcum redūcerent. Ille autem ibi morbo affectus est gravī; cumque postea domum redisset, apud suōs brevī mortuus est. Quō factō, Alexandrum venēnō periisse arbitrātī, Indī sicās secūrēsque suās acuere statim coepērunt.

1. verbōrum . . . contumēliās:
i.e. *insulting words*; lit. what?
—adiūnxērunt: adiungō, 3, -iūnxī,
-iūctus, add.

2. quīdam: *a certain*.

3. is: i.e. *Standish*.

4. eā: note the case.—ipsum:
him. The intensive pronoun
points a contrast between Pecuot
and his companions (comitēs).

5. quō: cf. p. 12, l. 14.

6. nec diūtius: *and no longer*:
cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.—caede:
a massacre.

10. patre . . . mortuō: translate
by a clause introduced by "when"
or "after."

11. bene ēmissee: i.e. *had made
a good bargain*; lit. what?

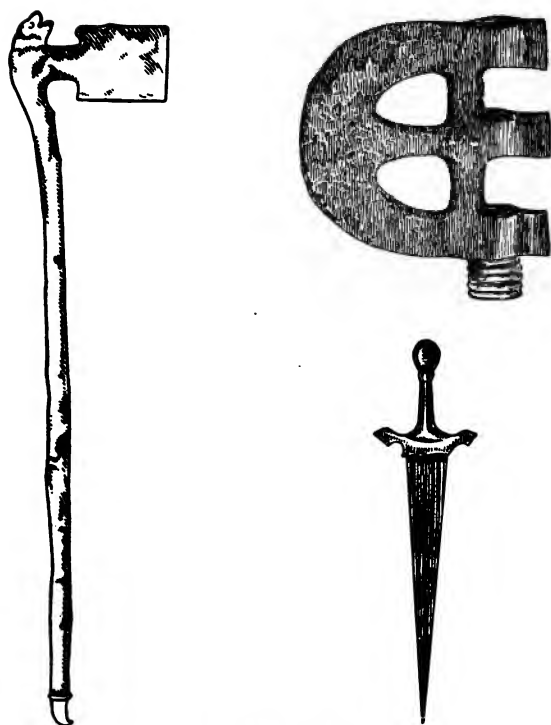
12. tum: *furthermore*.—civēs
suōs: subject of the infin.

13. cōgitābant: note the tense.

14. quod: cf. quō, l. 5.

17. gravī: modifying morbo.
—suōs: as noun, *his own people*.

19. acuere: acuō, 3, acui, acū-
tus, *sharpen*. This proceeding,
of course, portended war.



SECURÆ ET SICA

Two ancient battle-axes are shown above, one complete, the other lacking a handle. The dagger was found in a tomb in Etruria.

Tum dēnum oppidānī alterum frātre, quī Philippus appellābātur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dimisērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

LESSON 17

The Outbreak of King Philip's War

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuīs iam ipse rēx erat, irātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī eum libenter secūtī sunt; quīn etiam ōlim quendam civem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnis prōdiderat.

10 Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī primō tantum villis admōvērunt ignis bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdotibus monitī, hominem occidere nūllum ausi sunt, dōnec ā colōnis ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēnum, omnibus oppidīs oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima
15 est facta, ac colōnī miserī, aliī cum aquam peterent, aliī cum ā villis in oppida fugerent, undique occisī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcissent sagittāsque ārdentēs misissent in tēctum, postrēmō ipsī quoque castellō ignem admovēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē
20 animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

4. hominem: *the man*.

5. trāditūrum: sc. esse.—
domī: *at home*; for the case, cf.
humī, p. 7, l. 4.

8. suum: *of theirs*.

12. hominem: standing in contrast to villis and bovēs of the preceding clause.

13. ipsōrum: *their own*

15. aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others*.—cum: *as*.

17. hostēs, cum: *when the enemy*. Note the changed order of the English.—in: *upon*.

19. ipsī: modifying castellō.—
quā rē: *this*.

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extinctī. Quārē Indī cōnātū dēsistere coactī sunt.

LESSON 18

A Remarkable Deliverance

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quīdam, 5 quī ē Britannīā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum eum volēbat interficere. Homō scilicet nōlēbat oppidānōs cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed ōlim, cum colōnī in templō adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebrīs exire posse crēdēbat; itaque ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Primō nēminem vidit; tum subitō 10 animadvertit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī cum celeriter ē templō cucurrissent, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter 15 pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coactī sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec postea ā colōnīs invenīri potuit. Quī igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum 20 esse, quī sē adiuvāret, sicut multis ante annis Castor et Pollūx ōlim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānīs

1. dēpōnēbant: note the tense.
— imber (-bris, m.): shower.

3. cōnātū dēsistere: give up
(lit. desist from) the attempt.

6. homō: cf. hominem, p. 20,
l. 4.

12. quibus . . . rēbus: transl.
as singular (cf. quā rē, p. 20, l. 19).

13. cum . . . cucurrissent: cf.
the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. advenā duce: abl. absol.,
lit. the stranger (being) leader;
transl. freely.

18. invenīri: note the last letter
of the word.—potuit: for the translation,
cf. the note on possent,
p. 1, l. 13.

19. quī: cf. the rendering of
quī in the note on p. 5, l. 3.—
ducem: a leader.

tulērunt, cum illi hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus, neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

LESSON 19

Philip finds Allies

Dum haec geruntur, Indi quīdam longinquī, quibus erat castellum maximum, armīs aliisque rēbus Philippum iuvāre
5 coepērunt. Quō cōgnitō, colōnī, quamquam iam hiems erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōstituērunt; nam putābant hanc quoque gentem primā aestāte bellum gerere parāre, cōnsiliaque hostium ipsi praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profecti, per silvās
10 ad castellum iter fēcērunt. Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātum, ac colōnī multī interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātum est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōsumptae: quibus rēbus factis, colōnī vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum lēniter sē recēpērunt.

15 Hōc dētrīmentō vehemēter commōti, Indi iam undique convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnāre coepērunt singula. Subitō veniēbant in cōspectum; tum, colōnīs occīsīs villisque incēnsīs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant, cum interim militēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nullō
20 modō cōsequī poterant. Itaque diū colōnī miserī undique

3. *dum*, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

5. *quō*: neuter.—*cōgnitō*: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 18.

7. *primā*: *the early*, lit. *the first (part of)*.

8. *ipsi*: may be omitted in translation.

9. *viā*: for syntax, cf. *quā*, p. 5. l. 13.—*nivālī*: *nivālis*, -is, -e, *snowy*.

10. *ācerrimē est pugnātum*: freely, *a desperate battle was fought*; lit. *what?*

13. *vulnerātōs*: as noun, *the wounded*.—*ferentēs*: nom. case.

17. *singula*: modifying *oppida*.—*veniēbant*: for the translation, cf. the note on *rapiēbant*, p. 7, l. 17

19. *cum*: *while*.

20. *cōsequī*: sc. *eōs* (i.e. *Indōs*).

interfecti sunt; Standisius enim iam pridem mortuus erat: sed postrēmō dux alius inventus est, qui fēliciter cum Indīs bellum gerere sciēbat.

LESSON 20

Captain Church

Cercās, qui iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum
 5 hostibus fēliciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indīs
 interdum sociōs sibi asciscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō ōlim
 profectus, ad quandam gentem pervēnit haud longinquam,
 cuius rēgīnae diū fuerat ipse amicus; quārē spērābat eius
 civibus facile sē persuādere posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent.
 10 Ibi tamen ab Indīs impetus ācerrimus in Cercam eiusque
 comitēs factus est; qui igitur in palūde coacti sunt latēre,
 dōnec in scaphā vērērunt milītēs complūrēs, qui eōs ex
 periculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tum perficere nōn potuerat,
 15 convenire tamen rēgīnam iterum cōnārī cōstituit. Itaque
 paucis post mēnsibus ūnō cum milite Indisque tribus pro-
 fectus, in eiusdem gentis finēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi
 est perventum, comitibus in scaphā relictis, ad rēgīnam ipse
 prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indi multī, qui per

3. gerere: cf. the use of the
 infin. with *nesciēbat*, p. 8, l. 2.

4. Cercās: gen. *Cercae*, etc.
 —modo: the adv., *only*.

5. etiam: *also*.

6. sociōs: (*as*) *allies*. — cōn-
 siliō: *design*.

8. rēgīnae: dat. case.—ipse:
he. — eius: *i.e.* the queen's.

9. persuādere: *persuade*, lit.
make (it) agreeable (hence the dat.

civibus). — posse: replacing the
 fut. infin., which is lacking in this
 verb.

14. Cercās, quamquam: cf. the
 note on *hostēs*, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

15. convenire: dependent on
 cōnārī.

17. dēnuō: *i.e.* iterum. — quō:
 cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. cum: preposition. — per:
around in.

herbam latuerant, subitō armāti exsiluērunt. Quī tamen, cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humī tum sēdērunt conciliōque habitō polliciti sunt sē colōnōs adiūtūrōs in bellō, quod illi cum Philippō gerēbant.

LESSON 21

The Death of Philip

- 5 Cercās cum hīs sociīs suīsque militibus iam omnēs in partis iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam dedit. Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucīs cum comitibus per vallīs multa mīlia passuum in palūdēs longinquās fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cōstituerat: quīn etiam ōlim, cum quīdam ex eius amīcis dicere ausus esset pācem cum eīs faciendam esse, rēx irātus hominem suā manū occīdit. Cuius rei acerbitāte commōtus, frāter mortuī statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque certiōrēs fēcit dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.
- 15 Itaque dux colōnōrum, quī multōs diēs frūstrā quaesiverat rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōsōlārētur, iterum celeriter profectus est, militēsque suōs prope illam palūdem sine morā instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Philippus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnātī sunt; 20 rēx vērō infēlix, interceptus ā militibus quī in silvā collocātī,

1. quī tamen, cum: *but when*
 . . . they; cf. quī, cum, p. 8,
 l. 13.

2. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4. — tum:
 may be omitted in translation.

5. suīs: *his own*; cf. suum,
 p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. quīdam: *a certain one*.

12. hominem: cf. p. 20, l. 4.
 — suā: cf. suīs, l. 5. — rei: for

the various meanings of rēs, see
 the Vocab.—acerbitāte: acerbitās,
 -ātis, F., *harshness*.

13. mortuī: *of the dead*
 (*man*); part., used as a noun, masc.
 sing.

16. modo: (*but*) *just*.

18. quā rē: cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. vērō: *i.e.* tamen. — infēlix
 (-icis, adj.): *ill-starred*.

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indī interfectus est, quem ipse occiderat. Caput Philippī secūri abscisum colōnī sēcum domum tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent rēgem rē vērā mortuum esse.

LESSON 32

End of the War

- 5 Quō dētrīmentō perterritus lēgātus Philippī, quī paucis cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvis procul latēbat. Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesivit; sed postrēmō Indum senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō modō in lēgātī castra subitō perventum est.
- 10 Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat, arma Indōrum, quae humī collocata erant, audācter rapuit. Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit. Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēni ut vobiscum cēnārem." Tum lēgātus: "Equinam carnem māvīs," inquit,
- 15 "an būbulam?" Quō auditō, Cercās scilicet dixit sē malle būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōsumptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpītī; sed Cercās et lēgātus diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

2. abscisum: agreeing with caput.

3. suprā: preposition, *over*.

4. rē vērā: *in very fact* (vērus, -a, -um, lit. *true*, or *actual*).

5. lēgātus: *lieutenant*.

7. quem: *him*.

8. senem: *aged* (from senex).

10. perpaucōs: the prefix *per-* is intensive.

12. magnā: *i.e. loud*.

13. Cercās vērō: sc. inquit.

14. equinam: equinus, -a, -um, (*of*) horse.—māvīs: what form of mālō?

15. an: conjunction, *or*.—būbulam: būbulus, -a, -um, (*of*) cow.

19. Indus: *the Indian*.—silen-tiō: abl., used as adv.

sus est; quārē alter crēdebāt eum exisse ut arma alia sūmeret. Brevī autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns insignia quae quondam Philippus gesserat. "Haec nunc tua sunt," inquit, insigniaque ante Cercae pedēs humī posuit. Ita bellum cōfectum est.

LESSON 23

William Penn and the Friends

Dum haec in Britannīā Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae partēs ex Eurōpā veniēbant colōnī multi; in quibus erant complūrēs, quī sē Amicōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō, quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum magnam pecūniā dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret, in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōstituit, virumque illum lēgātum fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lēgātī Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amicōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta nōn erat, colōnōs plūrimōs statim ad Pennsylvēniā prae-misit, paucisque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profectus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur. Propter religiōnem Amīcī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse, atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vivere volunt; itaque

1. alter: *the other (i.e. Church).*

2. aderat: *was back (again).*
— manibus: *forsyntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10. — insignia: trappings (insigne, -is, N.).*

3. gesserat: *had worn.* — tua: *tuus, -a, -um, yours.*

6. dum haec, etc.: *cf. p. 7, l. 16.*

7. veniēbant: *note the tense.*

— in: *among.*

10. magnam: *(a) large (sum*

of). — dēbēbat: *dēbeō, 2, -ui, -itus, owe.* — quod: *this (adj.).* — ut: *the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause.*

11. cōstituit: *established.*

12. lēgātum: *governor.* — ē: *freely, after.*

14. grāta: *freely, popular (with); lit. what?*

17. ubi: *there.*

18. nefās esse: *that it is a crime (nefās, indeclinable noun).*

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

Dē cōmitātē lēgātī multa narrantur; quī etiam trāditum est illum, cum ōlīm per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam puellam vidisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsius equō positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

LESSON 24

Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia

Dum in Britannīā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Virginiā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, multōsque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidīs habitābant, cum cruciātū occidērunt. Quō periculō commōtī, colōnī multa milia passuum nūtiōs ad caput prōvinciae misērunt, quī lēgātum ōrārent, ut mitteret militēs, quī hostīs coercērent. Lēgātō autem nullō modō persuādēri potuit ut colōnōs adiuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum dīmittere volēbat; quī etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō, quī ā Britannīā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat, cum dixisset sē velle in Indōrum finis dūcere colōnōs paucōs, quī iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domī est iussus manēre.

20 Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

1. *per*: freely, *for*. — *continuōs*: continuus, -a, -um, *consecutive*. — *cum*: *after*.

3. *multa*: cf. p. 5, l. 9. — *trāditum* est: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. *euntem*: from *eō*. — *eam*: *her*. — *ipsius*: *his own*.

6. *positam*: part. (from *pōnō*), agreeing with *eam*.

11. *caput*: *capital*.

13. *persuādēri potuit*: lit. *could it be made agreeable*; cf. *persuādēre*, p. 23, l. 9.

15. *volēbat*: cf. *velle*, p. 2, l. 15.

17. *cum*: translate much earlier in the English sentence.

18. *ipsi*: *on their own motion*, i.e. without waiting for the governor to act.

fectus, cum primum in eorum conspectum venit summō assensū omnium dux factus est. Qui igitur, quamquam sciēbat lēgātum postea irātum sē fortasse interfectūrum, in finis tamen Indōrum cōpiās dūxit, hostēsque in fugam undique dedit. Quod ubi est auditum, lēgātus ex oppidō celeriter profectus est, ut Bēcōnem caperet suppliciumque dē eō sūmeret, quod iniussū suō bellum cum Indīs gereret.

LESSON 25

Nathaniel Bacon (Continued)

Brevi autem ad caput prōvinciae lēgātus celeriter redire est coactus; nūtiātum enim est oppidānōs, quōs domi reliquerat quique iuveni duci amicissimi erant, rēs novās ibi agitāre. Quibuscum lēgātus tum pācem fēcit; postquam vērō Bēcō dēmum ē bellō longinquō domum rediit, colōnī, lēgātum adhūc esse irātum arbitrātī, noctēs diēsque ducis cārī aedēs custōdiēbant; eumque, cum paulō post decuriō factus esset, multī comitēs armātī ad oppidum secūtī sunt. Ibi tamen lēgātus, qui quoque cōpiās coēgerat, Bēcōnem statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidānis irātis dimittere coactus est. Sed iuvenis, paucis post diēbus certior factus

1. cum primum: *i.e. as soon as.*

2. omāium: as (masc.) noun, modifying assensū. — qui: cf. p. 5, l. 3.

3. irātum: *in (his) anger.* — fortasse: adv., *perhaps.* — interfectūrum: sc. esse.

4. cōpiās: *(his) troops.*

5. quod: *this* (noun).

6. supplicium: supplicium, -i, n., *punishment.*

7. dē: lit. *from.* supplicium sūmere is the converse of poenās dare.

10. iuveni: here as adjective. — rēs novās: *revolution*: lit. what?

11. agitāre: agitō, i, *plan.* — quibuscum: cf. sēcum, p. 8, l. 14.

13. arbitrātī: cf. the use of veriti, p. 2, l. 17. — noctēs diēsque: *night and day.*

14. decuriō (-ōnis, m.): *member of the legislature.*

16. coēgerat: *had called together.*



BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an attack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lĕgātum parāre sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimicis suis inveniri potuit.

Colōnī scilicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārum adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum
 5 Indis modo cum lĕgātō, fēliciter bellum gessit. Ōlim, cum obsidēret urbem, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōres inimicōrum ē praediis proximis dēductas ante militēs suōs posuisse dicitur, ut sine periculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

LESSON 26

Nathaniel Bacon (Concluded)

10 Lĕgātus, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obsessus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvis cōscendit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, quī sentiēbat lĕgātum mox cum sociis esse reditūrum, ur-
 15 bem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus periculisque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellegerent lĕgātum solēre inimicōs etiam mortuōs contumēliis afficere, corpus ducis cārī tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lĕgātus,
 20 cum redisset ad urbem amicōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfēcisset, ipsius iuvenis corpus invenire nōn potuit.

2. inveniri: note the last letter of the word.

4. modo . . . modo: at one time . . . at another.

6. quod: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. dicitur: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. suōrum: to (lit. of) his men.

10. lĕgātus, cum. cf. hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

17. cum intellegent: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.—solēre: cf. solēbant, p. 7, l. 4.

18. mortuōs: (when) dead.

19. mersērunt: mergō, 3, mersi, mersus, bury, lit. sink.

20. multōs: many (of).

Paucis post annis ille lēgātus pessimus quoque poenās dedit; nam ā rēge domum revocātus, summā ignōminiā affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque prōvinciae paulatim validiōrēs fiēbant. Sed antequam dē bellō loquor, quod postea ā colōnis cum Britannis gestum est, quaedam dīcenda sunt de puerō, quī imperātor summus Americanōrum futūrus erat.

LESSON 27

The Boyhood of George Washington

Hic puer, quī Vasingtō appellābātur, in Virginiā nātus est sexāgintā ferē annis post bellum, quod cum lēgātō eius prōvinciae gesserat Bēcō ille, dē quō modo dixi. Puerō erat frāter maior, quī tribūnus mīlitum factus ad bellum abierat, quod Britannī cum Hispānis tum gerēbant eis in insulis, ad quās Columbus primum nāvēs appulit.

Vasingtō, postquam frāter ad exercitum profectus est, dē bellō saepe cōgitābat; cumque lūdēbant pueri ac simulābant sē esse militēs, semper erat ille imperātor. Postea vērō, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrimē dīcitur currere potuisse neque equum timuisse ūllum.

Frāter iam volēbat Vasingtōnem nautam fieri, māter autem nōluit; itaque ille domi aliquamdiū mānsit et didicit omnia, quae ibi in lūdō trādēbantur. Sed paucis post an-

4. *fiēbant*: note the tense.

6. *quaedam*: (neut. pl.) *something*.

7. *futūrus erat*: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l.

15.

8. *nātus est*: cf. p. 1, l. 1.

9. *post*: here preposition.

16. *imperātor*: pred. nom.

17. *vērō*: *moreover*.—*et*: omit in translation.—*factus*: render by a clause introduced by "when."—*dīcitur*: cf. p. 30, l. 8.

21. *omnia*: *everything*.—*lūdō*: *lūdus*, -i, M., *school*.—*trādēbantur*: *i.e. was taught*; lit. *what?*

nīs vir quīdam, cui erat maximum praedium longinquum, hominem conducere voluit, quī terminōs praedii sui cōstitueret; ac Vasingtō, quī hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab eō conductus in praedium missus est.

LESSON 28

Experiences on the Frontier

5 In praediō, quod instar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agricolae pauci, at multi Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multos per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō prope ignem humi iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amābat. 10 Ōlim cum ita sōpītus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex periculō ipse tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, quī tum vigilābat.

Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēvigintī 15 annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus militum factus est: nam Virginiā tōtā reliquisque prōvinciis colōnī arbi- trābantur bellum cum Gallis mox gerendum esse. Britannī enim multi iam trānsierant montēs cōnsēderantque in vallis- bus, quae a Gallis prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. terminōs: terminus, -i, M., boundary.

3. hanc . . . artem: i.e. of surveying.

6. hīc: the adverb.

8. autem: moreover.

9. humi: cf. p. 7, l. 4 — amābat: fancy; for other meanings of this word, see the Vocab.

10. foenum: foenum, -i, N., straw.

11. ex quō: (out) of which. . . quō ex periculō: for word order, cf. eā in terrā, p. 6, l. 3.

14. ūndēvigintī annōs nātus: at nineteen years of age, lit. having been born nineteen years.

15. tribūnus militum: a major.

16. Virginiā tōtā: throughout all Virginia. The prep. in is often omitted when the abl. is modified by tōtus.

Galli commōtī, cum hanc regiōnem dimittere nōllent, ca-
stella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

LESSON 29

A Dangerous Mission

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus
Virginiae cōstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ullō modō
5 rēs sine bellō compōnī possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine
morā dēlēctus quī hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucis cum
comitibus per silvās fortiter profectus est; cumque montēs
quoque trānsisset, Indīs quibusdam ad concilium vocātis
persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.

10 Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmiter accēpē-
runt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs
ex illīs finibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, quī Gallōrum
cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, do-
mum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs per-
15 ventum esset, impedimentis relictis, ūnō cum comite et
duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.

Via scilicet erat ipsa periculōsa (nam hiems iam erat):
alterum autem fuit periculum maius; colōnis enim inimī-
cus erat dux. Quī ōlim, cum advesperāsceret, tēlum subitō

1. cum . . . nōllent: translate
by a participial phrase.

2. pōnēbant: note the tense.—
arcērent: note the mood.

4. sī: (*if*) *perchance*.

5. compōnī: compōnō, 3, -po-
sui, -positus, *settle*.

6. tractāret: note the mood.

8. Indīs: cf. the note on per-
suādēre, p. 23, l. 9.—vocātis:
modifier of Indīs.

11. nisi: introducing the part.
coāctōs.

13. cōpiās: *stores*, or *supplies*.
—sollicitūdine: sollicitūdō, -inis,
F., *anxiety*.

14. vērō: *and*.

16. duce: *guide*.

18. alterum: *another*; contrast
the commoner meaning of alter
on p. 34, l. 1.—colōnis: construe
with inimicus.

in Vasingtōnem misit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum interficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est; iam autem nōn solum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum arbitrābatur, quod periculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

LESSON 30

A Dangerous Mission (Continued)

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est; quod cum rate trānsirent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frigidam cecidit, unāque cum comite in insulā parvā morārī coactus est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit: tum dēmum per glaciem,
 10 quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum periculō ad rīpam alteram ambō vērērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō, facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertinaciā Gallōrum certior factus esset, molestē ferēns illōs tam audācter respondisse,
 15 Vasingtōnem iussit militēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella eisdem in locis pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōnī aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs profectī, in illis regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castris maximē idōneum, audācter occupāverunt. Quī vērō brevī
 20 ā Gallis sē dēdere coactī sunt; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse facienda

1. in: *at*.7. rate: *ratia*, -ia, F., *raft*; for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.10. in: *upon the surface of*. — natābat: cf. *natantēs*, p. 3, l. 15.11. ab: *from*.12. facilius: *i.e. more comfortably*.13. ubi: cf. *ubi*, p. 4, l. 14.14. illōs . . . respondisse: *that they had replied*.15. ad castella . . . pōnenda: *to establish forts*.16. quibus: the antecedent is *locis*.21. sibi: *dat. case, this being the regular agency construction with the gerundive. The whole*

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, civibus tamen suis satis mātūrē auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

LESSON 31

The Beginning of the French and Indian War

At paucis post diebus, per loca aspera summō labōre prōgressus, in hostium finēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque sibi parva posuit. Deinde paulō longius profectus explōrātōrēs cēpit paucos; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque adesse plūrimos, iterum sē in castra recēpit. Quō factō Galli, cum sociis Indis celeriter cōsecūtī, in castra impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum; sed postrēmō, colōnis multās hōrās frūstrā oppugnātis, ē castris Vasingtōnem cum armis eā condiciōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitum ex hīs finibus statim redūceret. Ille igitur invitus domum iter facere cōactus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britannīā legiōnēs complūrēs misae sunt ad Gallōs expellendos ex eis locis, unde illi modo Vasingtōnem discēdere cōegerant. Imperātor factus erat vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, quī tamen cum Indis bellum gerere nesciēbat. Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia scire, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquis colōnis sē monērī volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam multa milia passuum per viās periculōsās silvāsque maximās iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explōrātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely
*that he must exert himself to the
utmost for the defense, etc.*

1. suis: modifier of civibus.

8. Indis: here as adj.

10. eā condiciōne . . . ut: on
these terms, that.

12. invitus: cf. the note on
laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

14. ad Gallōs expellendos: purpose clause; cf. the similar phrase on p. 34, l. 15.

17. gerere: cf. the infinitive with nesciēbat, p. 8, l. 2.—
omnia: all (about the subject).

18. sē: omit in translation.

21. legiōnibus: for syntax, cf. sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnīs ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō pollicitī sunt: nam nē cōspēctum quidem legiōnum suārum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

LESSON 32

Braddock's Defeat

Postrēmō vērō, cum in finēs hostium longē iter factum
esset, subitō in silvīs Indōrum ululātus est audītus; tum
tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac militēs Britannicī, quī ho-
stem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōnī
interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque inter-
positīs cum Indīs ācriter pugnābant; at imperātor legiōnēs
10 in viā habēbat instrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est,
quamquam caedem maximam fierī sentiēbat. Itaque illi
paene omnēs aut interfectī sunt aut vulnerātī, ac Braddoc
ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Va-
singtō militēs perterritōs primō cohortārī cōnātus, imperā-
15 tōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad castra redūxit, ubi
impedimenta maxima relictā erant. Ibī, conciliō convocātō,
tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē finibus hostium sibi dis-
cēdendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dicam dē incommodō maximō,
20 quod ā Rōmānīs acceptum est apud lacum Trasumenrum,

7. vidēbant: we would say
"could see."

8. arboribus . . . interpositīs:
freely, *getting behind trees*; lit.
what?

10. habēbat: *kept*. — suōs: cf.
suōrum, page 30, l. 9. — locō:
from their places; cf. the note on
p. 7, l. 4.

12. aut . . . aut: *either . . . or*.

14. imperātōre vulnerātō: trans-
late by a phrase introduced by
"after."

17. discēdendum esse: imper-
sonal use of the gerundive.

19. ut: *to*.

20. apud: *at*. — lacum Trasu-
mennum: in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi insidiās clam fēcisset. Secundum lītus est viā angustā, tum agrī apertī. In locō apertō Hannibal castra posuit, milītēs autem multōs in latebris prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō Poenī ē latebris ērūpērunt et hostis perterritōs in lacum compulērunt.

LESSON 33

Later Events of the War

Etsī in proeliō, dē quō suprā dixī, Galli victōriam erant adeptī Britannique ex illis regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēperant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem igitur colōnī, cōpiis tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctis, summum fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostis arcendōs misērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallīs eōrumque sociis mēnsēs multōs fēliciter gessit: tribusque post annis, cum iam imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britannīā ad Americam missī essent, ūnā cum lēgātis aliis legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Pennsylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eis locis discēdere coēgit, ubi illi quondam Britannis tantum dētrīmentum intulerant.

Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō dēmissī bellum alibi ācritēr gessērunt; nam Indī, quī erant paene omnēs amīcī, eōs omnibus modis adiuvābant. Sed

2. in locō apertō: freely, *in the open*; lit. what?

5. viā angustā: for syntax, cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13; here the abl. may be rendered "along."

8. erant adeptī: adipiscor, 3, adeptus sum, *gain, or secure*.

10. quem: not relative in the English translation.

18. Britannis: dat. case; translate "upon."

20. animō dēmissī: lit. *cast down in mind, i.e. discouraged*. The abl. case here expresses specification.

postrēmō, multis dētrimentis frācti, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adepti sunt, Canadā aliisque regiōnibus Britannis trāditis.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mā-trimōnium dūxit mātērnam quandam, quae Marta appellā-bātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

LESSON 34

The Outbreak of the Revolution

Nunc mihi dīcendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucis post annis cum Britannis ipsis gessērunt. Diū rēx senātusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciis vectigālia quaedam exigere
 10 erant cōnāti, etsi hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūlli licēbat. Id colōnī molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciis in ūnum locum viri dēlēcti, in eis Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum
 15 convocāti sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum misērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnis iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domi cīvēs reliquī obtinēbant. Quibus litteris acceptis, rēx irātus nōn solum iūra concēdere

1. petiērunt: *i.e.* petivērunt.
 —quam: *this* (noun).

2. adepti sunt: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8. — Britannis: dat. case.

6. ōtiōsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectigālia: vectigālia, -ium, N., *taxes*.

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, F., *measure, or law*.

11. suffrāgium ferre: *cast a vote* (suffrāgium, -i, N.). — id: *this* (*state of affairs*).

13. ferenda: *bearable*; lit. what? — in ūnum locum: with convocāti sunt, l. 15.

14. in eis: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7. — cōnsilium . . . conciliō: contrast the meaning of the two words.

15. litterās: for the force of the plural, see the Vocab.

16. quibus: *in which*; strictly, abl. of means.

17. obtinēbant: *freely, enjoyed*.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam misit militēs multōs, quī ā colōnis audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtōnem, primum pugnātum est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum; nam agricolae, muris interpositis, tēla plūrima inmisērunt in hostēs, quī ita sex milia passuum sē recipere coacti sunt ad urbem, unde paulō ante profecti erant. Quibus rēbus factis, concilium idem, quod ad rēgem litterās miserat, quaerere coepit imperātorem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cī-
 10 vēs scilicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in bellō, quod paucis ante annis cum Gallīs Indisque gestum erat; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus est.

LESSON 35

Operations about Boston

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenire
 15 potuit, iterum, ācritē pugnātum est in quōdam colle, ubi postēā Americānī columnam maximam eōrum nōmine statuērunt, quī ibi prō libertāte vītam suam largītī sunt. Eō in proeliō Britannī vicērunt; sed nē hostēs quidem satis laudāre poterant virtutem colōnōrum, quī impetum veterā-
 20 nōrum tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostīs mēnsēs multōs

2. audāciae: *for* (lit. *of*) *their insubordination*.

3. apud: *near*.—primum: the adverb.

6. ita: *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. concilium: (*deliberative*) *body*.

9. cīvēs: (*his*) *fellow-citizens*.

10. memoriā tenēbant: *i.e.* *had not forgotten*.

16. columnam: *columna*, -ae, F., *monument*. — nōmine: *in honor*.

17. statuērunt: *i.e.* *posuērunt*. — vītam: translate as though the noun were plural.

18. eō: modifier of proeliō.

21. Vasingtō, postquam: cf. the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20.
 1. 17. — illūc: adv., *thither*.



COLUMNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnitiōnēs Bostōnis continuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiaē maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritāte exstrūxit; quīn etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnitiōnēs novās animadvertit, vehementer commōtus ille: “Hī colōnī ūnā nocte,” inquit, “tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēse tōtō perficere nōn potest.” Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotīdiē tēla plūrima ballistīs Americanōrum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōnscendere
 10 atque ē portū fugere coācti sunt.

Colōnī adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britannicōrum sibi concēderentur; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audire vellet, dē Britannīā dēsciscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōstituērunt.

LESSON 36

The Battles of Long Island and Trenton

15 Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā marique oppugnāre parābant. Haud procul est magna insula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānis ācritēr pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn solum ex insulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum
 20 dimittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factis, colōnī omnēs animō

6. tanta . . . quanta: *such . . . as.*

7. potest: *could*, a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb. — hōc vāllō, etc.: the abl. absol. may be translated by a “when” clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. ballistis: abl. of means.

12. cum: causal. — neque . . . neque: *neither . . . nor.*

13. dē: *from.* — dēsciscere: *dēsciscō*, 3, -scīvī, -scitum est, *separate*.

14. rem pūblicam: *commonwealth*.

15. terrā marique: *by land and sea*, the abl. expressing place where.

20. animō . . . dēmissi: cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.

vehementer erant dēmissi; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat, putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem cīvibus suis adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam
 5 Britannī, quī invitī cum Americānīs ipsī pugnābant, multōs Germānōs condūxerant, quī in exercitū stīpendia facerent; quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō Eboracō in hibernīs iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Vasingtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmen-
 10 que quoddam trānseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore periērunt. Hostēs, quī nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum celebrābant, ab Americānīs facillimē captī sunt. Tum dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

LESSON 37

The Retreat from Trenton

15 Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredi ad eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, periculum adiit maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britannī plūrimī, nec propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsire Americānī poterant. Tum imperātor Britannicus, quī Cornivallis appellā-
 20 bātur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum esse, glōriāns, "Crās," inquit, "ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur."

2. aciē: *regular engagement.*

4. adferret: note the mood.
 —quam facultātem: freely, an opportunity for which.

5. invitī: *with reluctance.* — ipsī: *in person.*

9. erat: *there was.*

12. diem . . . fēstum: *a holiday (fēstus, -a, -um).*

16. illōs: *i.e. those mentioned in l. 7.*

20. cum . . . crēderet: translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.

21. crās: adv., *to-morrow.* — vulpēs (-is, c.): *fox.*

- At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castris ignis facere, ut cotidiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstinārent; quod eō cōnsiliō iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium excipere
- 5 Americānōs parāre. Nocte tamen intempestā colōnī, sine strepitū ūllō ex castris ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt circum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs incolumēs pervēnērunt. Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum “vulpem istum” invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam
- 10 tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quīdam Britannī alii castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentiret sē ēlūsum esse, celeriter sē recēpit, ut impedimenta cōservāret sua, quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē reliquerat.

LESSON 38

Burgoyne's Campaign

- Posterō annō alius imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per
- 15 prōvinciam Noveborācēensem legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere cōnātus est. Cui omnia primō fēliciter ēvēnērunt; Taeconderōga enim capta est unā cum cōpiīs omnibus, quās eō Americānī comportāverant. Cum autem Germānī multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam
- 20 missi essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

2. ut : *as.* — solēbant : *sc.* facere. — pauci : here used as a (*masc. pl.*) noun.

3. vāllum : of course, of their own camp. — fēstinārent : fēstinō, *i.*, hurry along. — quod : *i.e.* id quod, a thing which. — cōnsiliō : *design.*

10. oppugnābat : note the tense.

13. ad pugnam : for a battle (*merely*), *i.e.* not for a campaign.

16. cui : for whom. — omnia : note the gender.

18. eō : there, lit. thither ; cf. the note on quō, p. 8, l. 14.

agricolae, qui ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique statim convēnerunt; Germānisque magnō cum dētrimentō ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctīs, imperātorem ipsum mox ācerimē adorti sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiae
5 maiōrēs fiēbant.

Quō proeliō victī hostēs, qui iam omnibus ex partibus obsidēbantur, in Canadam redire primō frūstrā cōnātī, postrēmō Americānīs in dēditionem vērunt. Tum scilicet colōnī omnēs ecfrenātē gaudēbant, quod periculum
10 maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibi hostēs ācriter gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

LESSON 39

Valley Forge

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dixī, Britannī Philadelphiam oppugnāre parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput rei pūblīcae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiae
15 numerō erant multō inferiōrēs, hostēs nūllō modō arcēre poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac Philadelphia nūllō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

4. in diēs: *from day to day*.

6. omnibus ex partibus: *on all sides*.

8. Americānīs: dat. case.

9. quod: conjunction.

10. vidēbantur: sc. sibi, *i.e.* they seemed to themselves; freely, they thought that they, etc.

11. gerēbant: note the tense. — maximē dubius: by the prefixing of maximē, an adj. (or adv.) is raised to the superlative degree.

12. haec: neut. pl.

13. quae urbs: *the city which*; lit. what?

15. numerō: for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20. — multō: (*by*) much.

16. senātus: *Congress*.

17. nūllō: supplying the missing abl. of nēmō. — dēfendente: sc. eam (*i.e.* Philadelphiam). For the pres. part., being active in meaning, may take an object even when used, as here, in the abl. absol. construction.

Paucis post diebus circiter quinque milibus passuum ab eadem urbe acriter pugnatum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō discessit inferior. Quī igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, milites suos in hibernis collocavit in quādam valle, ubi menses 5 multos summā cum inopiā omnium rerum necessariarum miserrimē victum est. Nam nōn solum in aerariō nulla erat pecūnia, sed in castris mox frumentum quoque deficere coepit; militesque miseri, quibus erant saga nulla, saepe noctes totas prope ignem vigilare coacti sunt. Quin etiam 10 traditum est, cum agmen in hiberna iter faceret, multorum pedes nudos in nive vestigia cruenta fecisse.

Sed iam dēnum ex Eurōpā socii Americānis auxilium ferre parabant; multi enim etiam aliis ex gentibus molestē ferēbant Britannos iura civium colonis concedere 15 noluisse.

LESSON 40

Help from France

Ita hōc ferē tempore factum erat ut Galli, qui Britannos minimē amābant, cum Americānis facerent foedus atque trāns mare imperātorem cum classe mitterent, qui colonos

1. quinque milibus passuum: abl. of degree of difference. — ab: (*away*) from.

2. pugnatum est: a battle was fought; lit. what?

3. cum: as, or since.

5. cum: freely, under the stress of.

6. miserrimē: miserē (adv.), wretchedly. — victum est: impersonal pass. (from vivō). — aerariō: aerarium, -ri, n., public treasury.

8. quibus: dat. case; cf. cui, p. 11, l. 2.

10. multorum: as (masc.) noun; cf. multi, l. 13.

12. Americānis: indirect obj. with auxilium ferre.

13. aliis ex gentibus: i.e. of other nationalities.

16. factum erat: it had come to pass.

17. cum: preposition. — foedus: foedus, -eris, n., alliance.

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnītis, Britannī illi, quī Philadelphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentīrent flūmine classe obsessō sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxērunt cum cōpiis aliis, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita
5 Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervēnit.

Adhūc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vinci posse; sed iam dēmum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre; cumque in prōvinciis, quae ad merīdiem spectant, colōnī rārī multis cum servis in praediis maximis habitārent, in
10 eās cōstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere fēlicius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōnsilium fefellit; nam Gorgia unā cum aliis quibusdam prōvinciis brevī est occupāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victi sunt. Quibus dētrimentis minimē animō dēmissi, colōnī
15 iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvis palūdibusque latēbant, dōnec occāsionem rei bene gerendae nanciscerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs aut eōs in fugam dabant.

LESSON 41

Benedict Arnold

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam
20 imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. quibus rēbus: *this*. — Philadelphia: locative case.

2. flūmine . . . obsessō: translate by a conditional clause.

3. oppugnārī: note the last letter of the word. — posse: *could*. — sēsē: *i.e.* sē.

8. cum: *since*, or *inasmuch as*.

10. eās: referring to prōvinciis, l. 8. — sī: cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

11. nec vērō, etc.: *freely, and the plan was successful*; lit. what?

13. ubicumque: conjunction, *wherever*.

15. manūs: *companies*, or *bands*.

16. latēbant: cf. the note on rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17. — rei bene gerendae (gen. case): *freely, successful action*. — nanciscerentur: translate the subjunctive "could."

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in ripā flūminis Hudsonis posuerant, quōque ab Americānis comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessariā erant; nam castra nātūrā locī mūnitissima erant, ac fūnis quoque **5** ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūntium mīsērunt, quī ducem convenīret Americānum, litterāsque ab eō reportāret. Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit **10** nūntius; sed cum ad Britannōs redīret, ab Americānis tribus captus est: quī captivum sine morā in castra proxima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modis ab eis salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est. Quā dē rē certior factus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quō **15** rum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitis est damnātus; litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americānī scrīptās ferēbat, dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnis tribus ductus est. Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs civēs ācerrimē bellum gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam **20** eis ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. castra, quae, etc.: namely, West Point.

2. quōque: *i.e.* quō + que, and into which; for quō, cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. omnia: note the gender. — ad: *for*.

4. nātūrā: note the case. — fūnis (-is, M.): *chain*.

5. ferreus (-a, -um): *iron*. — ductus erat: *had been stretched*.

7. prōditiōnis: prōditiō, -ōnis, *F., betrayal*; cf. the verb prōdō, l. 1.

12. ille miser: *he, poor fellow*.

14. quam celerrimē: *as quickly as possible*. — quōrum in exercitū: *and in their army*.

16. cōgnitā: *tried*. — capitis: *i.e. to death*. The charge or (less often) the penalty may be expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. manū: *abl. of means with scrīptās*.

19. cum . . . gessisset: *after waging*. — suōs: observe the emphatic position (cf. the note on suum, p. 11, l. 6).

21. eis ipsīs: *dat. case; construe with invīsus*.

LESSON 42

A Roman who fought against his Country

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dicam dē Coriolānō, clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā cīvibus iniuriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūxit cum hostibus, quī antea bellum Rōmānis saepe intulerant.

5 Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus primō rēs undique fēliciter evēnērunt, Rōmānique lēgātōs pācis petendae causā ad Coriolānum mittere coācti sunt. Quī autem, propter iniuriā ā cīvibus inlātā adhūc irātus, asperius respondit lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dimisit; quīn etiam idem
10 nūntiī ā senātū iterum missi nē in castra recepti quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, Rōmāni graviter permōti etiam sacerdōtēs mittere cōstituērunt, si ab eis saltem Coriolāni animus ferōx flecti posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolāni unā
15 cum aliis matrōnis complūribus ad hostium castra maestae profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, matrīs verbis vehementer commōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē finibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum. Postea apud hostis mul-

1. pauca: *a few (words)*.

2. quī: *this (adj.)*.

3. iniuriā: abl. used adverbially. — urbe: *the city, i.e. Rome*, often thus designated as being *the city* par excellence.

4. Rōmānis: dat. case.

5. dēnuō: *i.e. iterum*.

6. pācis petendae causā: *i.e. ad pācem petendam*. Literally causā means "for the sake of."

8. asperius: *rather harshly (asperē: adv., harshly)*; for the

rendering of the comparative, cf. the note on *maximum*, p. 13, l. 11.

9. lēgātōs: *envoys or ambassadors*. — maestissimōs: pred. adj. — idem: pl.

13. ferōx (-ōcis, adj.): *fierce*. — flecti: flectō, 3, flexi, flexus, *influence*. — vērō: *and*. — quicquam: *any concession*, lit. *anything*.

15. maestae: *in (the garb of) mourning*.

tōs annōs vixit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse solitum dicere senī miserrimum esse exsilium.

LESSON 43

The Surrender of Cornwallis

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eis diū ac variā fortūnā bellum cum Britannīs gestum est. At paulātīm oppida
5 prōvinciārum, quae ad meridiem spectant, rursus in potestatem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coāctus est; quā in prōvinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere coepit omnia.

10 Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociisque Gallicis; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnitissimā, quae Eborācopolis appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnātiōnem duōs mēnsēs aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā erumpere cōnātī essent parsque mūnitiōnum ab Americānīs esset expugnāta,
15 sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem ipse, nē suis oculis Ignōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē esse aegrum simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditio est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victoriā nūtiātā, Americānī ecfrenātē gaudēbant;
20 ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximā ēgit.

1. vixit: from vivō. — nec libenter: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

2. senī: for an old man; senī is from senex.

3. ut . . . redeāmus: to return.

6. ibi: in that region.

8. licentiā: licentia, -ae, f., lawlessness. — rapere et agere: freely, rob and plunder; strictly,

steal (goods) and drive off (live stock).

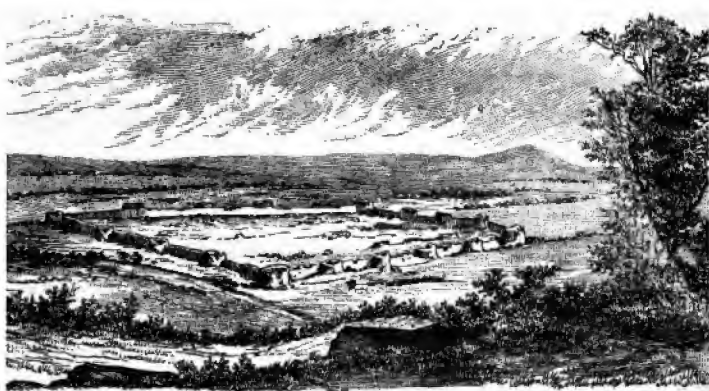
11. mūnitissimā: strongly fortified.

13. hostēs: i.e. the English.

16. nē . . . vidēret: freely, in order to avoid seeing.

16. suis: cf. again suum, p. 11, l. 6.

20. dīs: cf. p. 14, l. 19.



MŪNITIŌNĒS

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses ; namely, a *vallum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britannīs pācem iam dēmum esse petendam.

LESSON 44

Washington retires to Private Life

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, quī tum Eborācum Novum praesidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōnscendere domumque redire ā rēge iussus est.

Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convocāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgātī, quī eō duce annōs circiter octō stipendia fēcerant, lacrimās nōn potuerunt diūtius continēre, sed flentēs imperātōrem dextrā tenuerunt. Lēgātīs dimissis, Vasingtō, ut imperium suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitudinēs maximae ex oppidīs omnibus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sic prōgressus est usque ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpositō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in praediō iūre ōtiōsum vivere posse, sicut fēcerat, antequam bellum indictum est.

1. Britannīs: cf. the note on sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

6. lēgātōs: *staff officers*.

7. eōs valēre iussisset: *had bidden them (to) fare well (valeō, 2, valui)*.

8. eō duce: cf. advenā duce, p. 21, l. 14. — circiter: cf. p. 45, l. 1. — stipendia fēcerant: cf. p. 42, l. 6.

10. ut: *for the purpose (of)*.

11. senātus . . . habēbātur:

freely, *Congress was . . . in session*.

13. cum: *as*.

14. sparsērunt: spargō, 3, sparsi, sparsus, *scatter*. — fausta: faustus, -a, -um, *complimentary*.

16. exspectābat: note the tense.

17. arbitrātus: cf. the note on veriti, p. 2, l. 17.

18. iūre: abl. of iūs, used adverbially; cf. iniuriā, p. 48, l. 3.

— ōtiōsum: cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

LESSON 45

The Father of his Country

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animis hominū, in aeternitāte temporum, neque aliud umquam ab Americānīs aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, quī paucis contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cum vīcisset civīs pessimōs, quī rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antiquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā civibus grātīs iūre datum est.

- 10 Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniuriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vivēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Gallī plūrimī trāns montēs in Italiā subitō profectī, proeliō acrī vicērunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut
15 audācter finēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānisque fortiter auxilium ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profectī, in quōsdam Gallōs, quī sine custōdiīs in agrō apertō

1. laus (laudis, F.): *credit*.
— tribuenda est: *is due* (tribuō, 3, tribui, tribūtus, *give*, or *ascribe*).
— quod: *that* (conjunction).

2. mānsūrum est: cf. futūrus erat, p. 31, l. 7.

3. aeternitāte: aeternitās, -ātis, F., *endless extent*. — temporum: *the ages*. — aliud: (*any*) *other*.

4. aequē: adv., *equally*. — quod: *as for the fact that*.

5. hīc est: *this is*; for the gender, cf. the note on quod, p. 30, l. 6. — paucis: (*only*) a

few; masc., as noun. — contigit: contingō, 3, -tigi, *fall (to the lot of)*, or *happen (to)*.

7. perdere: perdō, 3, perdidī, perditus, *ruin*.

8. cōgnōmen: cōgnōmen, -inis, N., *title*. — grātīs: *grateful*.

11. Ardeātēs: *people of Ardea* (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. Gallī: *the Gauls*, a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. urbem: cf. the note on urbe, p. 48, l. 2.

humī iacēbant sōpīti, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum, eōsque in fugam dedērunt. Ac paulō post reliquī quoque hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morāti erant, ā Camillō paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. ad Rōmam: *near* (or *at*) *Rome*. 4. ad ūnum: cf. p. 4, l. 5

TALES OF LAND AND SEA

LESSON 46

The Settler's Daughter

In Britannia Novā quondam agricolae, quī semper impetūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotidiē sēcum arma ferre solēbant; ac prope quendam vicum in colle ēditō castellum quoque positum erat, quō, sī quandō opus esset, colōnī 5 liberōs uxōresque statim dēdūcerent. Quō ex castellō ōlim sīgnum subitō datum est Indōs adesse. Hōc audītō, agricolae, equis in agris sine morā relictis, ad villās cucurrerunt, et mulierēs ac liberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere coepērunt.

10 At vir quīdam, cui erat filia tantum, ad castellum cum eā pervenire nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōspectum vēnērunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocāvit, nē hostēs eam invenire possent, ipseque, ut auxilium cīvibus suis ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

15 In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in silvās longinquās dēductī sunt agricolae pauci, in eīs ille vir, dē quō modo dīxī. Oppidānī scilicet crēdidērunt filiam ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multis post mēnsibus

3. ēditō: ēditus, -a, -um, *high*.

4. quō: cf. quō, p. 47, l. 2.
—sī quandō: *if at any time, or whenever*. — opus esset: *there should be need*.

7. sine morā: *i.e. instantly*.

8. quam celerrimē: cf. p. 47,

l. 14.

11. priusquam: *i.e. antequam*.

15. est . . . commissum: *i.e. commissum est*.

16. in eīs: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vicō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum pervēnisset neque in oppidō filiam potuisset invenīre, cīvīs suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa tantum et sagitta ūna.

LESSON 47

The Trials of War

- 5 Ab hostibus trāsmarinīs quī ōlim bellum cum colōnis Americānis multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta esse dīcuntur plūrima. Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā dīligentiā cūrābat; at imperātor hostium, quī hoc oppidum praesidiō tenēbat, 10 quīque erat omnibus oppidānis superbiā maximē invīsus, illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet. Sed ūnum ex equīs nēmō posteā vidit, alterque paucis post hōris in viā moribundus haud procul repertus est.
- 15 Praedam quoque ē villīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs; sed eōs quondam duo servī Āfri callidē ēlūsērunt; postquam enim militēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum domini celeriter sub aedibus condidērunt. Ūnus autem ex eīs sub aedibus ar- 20 gentum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in cōnspectum vērērunt. Itaque ille, quī suprā stābat, tabu-

3. ossa: os, ossis, N., bone.

5. trāsmarinīs: trāsmari-
nus, -a, -um, from across the sea.

6. atrōcia: atrōx, -ōcis, adj.,
dastardly.

7. dīcuntur: note the pl. verb.

10. quīque: i.e. quī + que. —
omnibus oppidānis: dat case;

construe with invīsus. — superbiā:
abl. of cause.

11. quod . . . vellet: on the
ground that he wanted.

16. callidē: adv., cleverly.

18. tabulā: tabula, -ae, F., board.

21. ille: the one. — tabulam
cf. l. 18.

lam statim dēmīsīt, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur ; ac servus alter, quī nūllō modō ēvādere poterat, trīs diēs noctēsque sub aedibus dicitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

LESSON 48

The Attempt to surprise Detroit

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indisque
 5 gerēbātur, paene cōfectum est, multaque castella longin-
 qua in potestātem Britannōrum vērunt, quidam rēx
 Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa
 recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē
 posse spērāre coepit ; quārē, conciliis undique convocātis,
 10 Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostīs
 invīsōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caedem faciendam Indī omnia expedirent,
 ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in taber-
 nāculis arma parāre animadvertit. Quā rē nūntiātā, lēgātus
 15 Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec
 puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit,
 cōnsiliumque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castel-
 lum custōdiīs maiōribus firmātum est, nec nimis mātūrē ;
 nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audiri poterat cantus

1. dēmīsīt: not dīmīsīt.—
 quid: *i. e.* aliquid. After nē and
 sī, the short forms quis, quid, etc.,
 are regularly used.

3. dicitur: cf. dicuntur, p. 55,
 l. 7.

4. bellum, quod, etc.: namely,
 the French and Indian War.

8. recipere: a compound of
 capi. This and the following
 infin. depend on posse, l. 9.

9. posse: *could*.

10. sē: *him*.

14. quā rē: *this observation*.

15. nihil . . . verēbātur: freely,
felt no concern; lit. what?

18. nimis: adv., *too*. The
 whole phrase may be rendered
freely and none too soon.

19. audiri: note the last letter
 of the word.—cantus: cf. p. 2,
 l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sic enim Indī sē ad caedem incitāre solēbant.

LESSON 49

The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō intervāllō sequēbātur reliqua multitūdō Indōrum, quī simulābant sē extrā mūnitiōnēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portis castelli patefactis, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, unā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestimentis tēcta ferēbant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permōtus milites omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armis circumstāre animadvertit. Postquam vērō ad principia dēductus est ac vidit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loquī coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum perventum est, comitēs rēx monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō signō impetum statim in lēgātum centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēteri, quī extrā mūnitiōnēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praesidiumque adorirentur.

2. caedem: (*the business of*) *murdering*.

4. intervāllō: translate the abl. "at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. pilā: (*at*) *ball*; abl. of means (pila, -ae, f.). — lūsūrōs: sc. esse.

8. quī omnēs: *all of whom*. — vestimentis: abl. of means; but translate "under."

10. cum armis: *i.e. (fully) armed*.

11. circumstāre: *i.e. in such a way as to encircle* Pontiac and his followers. — principia: *principia, -ōrum, n., headquarters*.

15. pauca: note the gender; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9.

16. zōnam: *zōna, -ae, f., belt*. — datūrum: *would offer*. — quō signō: abl. of time when; translate "at."

17. cēteri: *i.e. reliqui*.

Cum vērō porrigere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus signum dedit, et subitō prīncipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēmum barbarī, quī iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmissō ē castellō silentiō sunt ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.

LESSON 50

A Successful Ruse

Colōnī, cum bellum gererent, hostis saepe fallāciis elūsērunt. Sicut dux quīdam Americānus, quī mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā olīm clam domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, quī paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātum Britannicum, quī castrīs praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōtī sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scilicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātā: sed filia ex aedibus fortiter ēgressa lēgātō, "Māter mea," inquit, "aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae."

1. zōnam: see p. 57, l. 16. — signum dedit: *i.e. made a motion.*

2. prīncipia: see p. 57, l. 11.

7. fallāciis: *tricks or trickery* (fallācia, -ae, f.).

8. sicut: *as, for instance.*

9. causā: cf. the note on p. 48, l. 6.

10. oppidānī: (*his*) *townsmen.*

11. quī paucī: cf. quī omnēs, p. 57, l. 8.

12. praeerat: cf. p. 56, l. 15.

The word means literally "to be before" or "to be over," notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. legiōne: (*his*) *regiment.*

15. Americānī: as noun, gen. sing.

16. ignēs: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — quō: neuter.

19. obsecrō: *I beg (you)* (obsecrō, 1). — eius . . . miserae: *of her, poor woman.*

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est; militēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant: quīn etiam haud procul sunt morātī, dōnec aedēs tōtae ignī cōn-sūmptae sunt. Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās dedisse. At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur, sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum viderat quisquā. Sic astūtiā filiae servātus mox ad ex-
ercitum tūtō rediit.

LESSON 51

How the Town was Saved

Multis post annis, quam ea, quae modo dixi, facta sunt, duae puellae Americānae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt. Ōlim enim, cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōnspectum subitō vēnit
nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset, militēs multī scaphis vectī ad litus celeriter contendērunt atque Americānōrum coepērunt incendere nāvigia, quae tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōnsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēterī; at puellae illae,

1. rē: *concession*. — ēlāta est: from *effertō*.

3. omnibus ex partibus: cf. p. 44, l. 6.

4. tōtae: cf. the note on *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

5. inter sē: *among themselves*.

8. manibus, etc.: abl. of means; translate "upon" (*g'nū, ūs, N., knee*). — neque . . . quisquam: cf. p. 2, l. 11

9. astūtiā: *astūtia*, -ae, F., *quick wit*.

11. post . . . quam: *i.e. postquam*. — ea: *the events*.

13. facinus: not as on p. 55, l. 6 (see the Vocab.). The phrase, as a whole, should be rendered freely.

19. parābant: *were making preparations for*. What are other meanings of this word?



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*fibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march ; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.



tibiā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum litus clam properāvē-
runt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt.
Quō sonō auditō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs
plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī mul-
5 taeque gentēs aliae tibiā tympanōque canere solent, cum in
proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur,
hostēs, nāvigiis oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam
nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtius de iniūriis in-
ferendis cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque
10 in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellis duābus
oppidum servātum est.

LESSON 52

An Example of Fortitude

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū pati
possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dicuntur inter nivēs vitam
agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsi ignēs admoveantur. Illi
5 tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nullō modō supe-
rant. Nam ōlim, cum diū neque fēliciter bellum cum rēge

1. tibiā: tibia, -ae, F., *flute*. —
tympanō: tympanum, -i, N., *drum*.

2. interpositō: cf. p. 36, l. 8.
— clārē: adv., *loudly*.

5. tibiā tympanōque: see l. 1;
for syntax, cf. *manibus*, p. 59, l. 8.

6. nē: (after a verb of fear-
ing) *that*.

7. suam: cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6.

8. inferendis: *inflicting*; cf.
the force of the gerundive as seen
in the use with *ad* and *causā* in
purpose clauses.

9. solvērunt: lit. *loosed*, or
released; see the Vocab.

13. nūdī: pred. adj. — vitam:
translate as pl.

14. ēdere: not *edere*. — etsi:
even though. — ignēs: translate as
sing. — admoveantur: sc. *eis*;
subjunctive, because part of the
indirect discourse. Render the
whole phrase freely.

15. ferendō: *in (the matter
of) bearing*; cf. *inferendis*, l. 8.
The ablative expresses specifica-
tion.

16. neque fēliciter: *and unsuc-
cessfully*; cf. the note on p. 17,
l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Romānus, Tiberim cōstituit sōlus trānsire rēgemque hostium, sī posset, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est; cumque flūmen clam trānsisset, in castra hostium incolumis pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scribam occidit; deinde frūstrā effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Quī cum vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōsilia, quae in sē inita erant, ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur. 10 Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque sine gemitū passus est. Quō visō rēx, tantam fortitudinem admirātus, captivum incolumem dīmisit, ac paulō post ā Rōmānīs pācis condiciōnēs petivit, quod cum gente, ex quā erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōllet.

LESSON 53

A Hasty Leave-Taking

15 Prīmō bellō, quod Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē

1. Porsinnā: king of Etruria, a district of Italŷ just north of Latium.—C.: *i.e.* Cāius (*Gaius*).

2. Tiberim: acc. sing. of Tiberis.—sī: *if*.

3. veste: *i.e.* vestimentō: cf. p. 57, l. 8.

5. internōscere: internōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nōtus, *distinguish*.

6. scribam: scriba, -ae, M., *clerk*.

7. ad: *before*.—quī: the king.—cum vellet: translate by a participial phrase.

8. penitus: adv., *fully*.—in: *against*.—inita erant: ineō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *enter into*.

9. omnia: *everything*.

11. quō: neut.

13. quod: *because (as he said)*.—ex quā . . . iuvenēs: *freely, the young men of which*.

14. tantae virtūtis: the gen. expresses characteristic or quality; translate first literally and then freely.

15. prīmō bellō: abl. of time when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociis Indīs multum adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitum prōgressī, villis undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitate occidēbant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsi erant animī.

- 5 Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer ōlim subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominumque certiōrem fēcit sē Indum in herbā latentem vīdisse. Quō audītō, dominus statim ad frātris villam profectus est, ut cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor filium iussit
10 equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater, pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus relictis, ad ripam flūminis satis magnī, quod prope fluēbat, sine morā prōgressi sunt. Id cum trānsissent, celeriter inde per agrōs contendērunt unā cum colōnis aliis, quī in
15 his regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sic quidem sine labōribus periculisque effūgērunt; nam in itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter liberique sub caelō noctem agere coacti sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

LESSON 54

The Capture of a Man-of-War

- 20 Ōlim multī armātī Americāni ad Canadā versus iter faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallis pugnārent. Quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

1. Indīs: here adj.
3. occidēbant: cf. rapiēbant,
p. 7, l. 17.
5. rēs: *matters*.
8. villam: *farm*; cf. the common meaning of the word in l. 3.
9. commūnicāret: commūnicō,
1, *make . . . jointly*.

11. pauca: note the gender.
— bōbus: from bōs.
12. satis: *quite*.
14. aliis: not reliquis or cēteris.
18. noctem agere: cf. vitam
agere, p. 61, l. 13.
20. armātī: strictly, noun; but
the phrase may be rendered freely

gredi veilent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsire posset.

Americānī scilicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam esse intellēxerunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sententiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quīdam, maximae virtutis vir, imperātōrī “Ego,” inquit, “sī mihi militēs sex et cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōficiam.” Militibus cuneisque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sic inseruit, ut gubernācula nūllam in partem movērī possent.

Māne Americānī lacum trānsire coepērunt. Quō animadversō, Gallī, quī nihil suspicābantur, vēlīs passīs in hostēs impetum facere cōnātī sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad litus dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānīs, quī ad id ipsum in litore morātī erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae Americānōrum sine ūllō incommodō ad litus ulterius pervēnērunt, militēsque rursus ad Canadam per montēs silvāsque lēniter prōgressī sunt.

LESSON 55

The Fall of New London

Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praesidiō tenērent, colōnī classis onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum necessāriae sunt, secundum litus Novae Britanniae ad

1. ultrō: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.

2. nē quis: *so that no one*; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

4. sententiae: cf. sentiō.

8. nocte intempestā: cf. p. 43, l. 5.

9. inseruit: inserō, 3, -serui, -sertus, *force in*. — ut: introduc-

ing a clause of result. — gubernācula: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.

10. movērī: note the last letter of the word.

12. passīs: from pandō.

13. ventīs: abl. of means.

14. id ipsum: *this very purpose*.

16. ulterius: modifier of litus.

occidentem nāvigantēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus liburnicis celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte, tardius prōgressae, intervāllō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs longās, quae eis praesidiō missae erant. Id Britannī diū molestē tulerant; cumque insula Longa iam tōta subācta esset, nē postea umquam colōnī in nāvēs suās impetum facere auderent, Novum Londinium dēlēre cōstituērunt.

Itaque ab insulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt; sed ventis adversis impeditī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre, donec diēs postera illūxit. Tum celeriter ē castellis sīgnum colōnis datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omnibus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt. Quī, cum Britannī ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad litus versus fēcērunt iter, mūrisque interpositīs tēla plūrima in hostēs inmisērunt. At Britannī, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrūpērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templisque admōvērunt. Quō visō, colōnī, ut uxōrēs liberōsque in loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

LESSON 56

The Fall of New London (Continued)

Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant. Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. nāvigantēs: modifying *clasis*, p. 64, l. 20.—interdum: not *interim*.—vidēbant: *used to sight*.

2. capiēbant: cf. *raپیēbant*, p. 7, l. 17.—sī quae: *if any*; cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1.

3. tardius . . . maiōre: absolute comparatives (cf. the note on p. 13, l. 11).—intervāllō: cf. p. 57, l. 4.

4. eis praesidiō: *as an escort*

for them, lit. *for a protection to them*, praesidiō being a dat. of service.—id: *i.e.* this preying upon their shipping.

5. subācta: subigō, 3, -ēgi, -āctus, *subdue*.

6. nē . . . umquam: *so that never*.

8. fretum: *sound*.

15. numerō: cf. p. 44, l. 15.

16. ignēs: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerrimē ibi pugnātum est: sed Britannī, quī, ut suprà dixī, numerō multō erant superiōrēs, postrēmō cōnscendērunt mūnitiōnēs, castraque expugnāvērunt; quī etiam virtūte colōnōrum, quī animō obstinātō restiterant, adeō exacerbatī sunt, ut summā crudelitāte occiderent deditōs quōsdam, quī arma iam prōiēc-
cerant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrāti,
10 vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā, ut hominēs miserī in carrum alius super alium abicerentur. Tum ā Britannis circiter vigintī carrus dūcī coeptus est ad villam quandam, ubi vulnerātī ab amicis cūrārī possent. At praeceps erat via, ac postrēmō ā militibus carrus diūtius
15 retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclive celeriter dēlātus, in arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātis īnterfectī esse dīcuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns portum audītus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxili ferendī
20 causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvīs sē recipere coācti sunt.

2. respōnsō: noun, derived from respondeō.

3. ut: *as*.

6. adeō: cf. p. 5, l. 18. — exacerbatī sunt: exacerbo, 1, *exasperate*.

7. deditōs: *as* noun; cf. vulnerātōs, l. 10.

9. funditus: adv., *totally*, or *utterly*. — arbitrāti: cf. veriti, p. 2, l. 17.

10. id: *sc. fecerunt*.

12. coeptus est: the passive forms of this verb are used

when the dependent infinitive is passive.

13. possent: note the mood.

14. praeceps (-cipitis, adj.): *steep*.

15. per dēclive: *along the slope*; dēclive being used as a neut. noun (from dēclivis, -is, -e, *steep*). — dēlātus: *i.e. rolling down*; lit. what?

16. concussiōne: concussio, -ōnis, *f., shock*. — ē: *of*.

19. auxili: cf. the note on Standisī, p. 16, l. 4.

LESSON 57

Captivity among the Indians

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eis captī sunt. E quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

- 5 "Ōlim," inquit, "cum barbarī. subitō in cōspectum vēnissent, ego cum oppidānīs cēteris fugā petivī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reliquīs captivīs in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs
 6 per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumēliās acerbissimās cotidiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

"Noctū hostēs captivōs humī supinōs collocābant, cu-
 neisque in terrā dēfixīs, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē
 quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārētur. Interdum
 5 autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbarī, veritī nē frūmen-
 tum dēficeret, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in
 animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum
 paene necātus, paucīs post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emp-
 tus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī."

2. adoriēbantur: cf. capiēbant, v. 65, l. 2.

4. haec: neut. pl. — commemorat: *i.e.* nārrat. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. inquit: present tense.

6. fugā: abl. of means; we would say, "*in flight*"; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. quam: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — lutē: lutum, -ī, N., *mud*.

11. contumēliās: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. artē: adv., *tightly*. — nē quis: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. nostrum: from ego.

15. autem: *moreover*. — nē: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. mandāre: mandō, 1, *con-sign*. — semel iterumque: see the Vocab.

LESSON 58

A Fresh Supply of Powder

Ōlim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānis suis ita salūti fuit. Subitō ab Indis oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbari diū expugnāre frūstrā cōnāti sunt. At dēficere iam
 5 coeperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissi; quamquam enim in villā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relictā erat, nēmō eam putābat
 10 ūllō modō ad castellum tūtō adferri posse, quod Indi in insidiis undique latēbant. Multi tamen periculum subire volēbant, sed Elizabēta: “Ego ībō,” inquit; “puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis.”

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam
 15 ēgressa est, lēniterque ad villam versus ambulāvit. Quārē novā permōti, Indi primō ēventum taciti exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediēte ad villam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum barbari, quī iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant,
 20 tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. ita: *in the following way*.
 —salūti: lit. *for a safety*; cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. —erat oppugnātum: contrast expugnāre, l. 4.

5. quō: abl. of means.
 7. animō dēmissi: cf. p. 37, l. 20.

10. modō: freely, *chance*. For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. subire: subeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *risk*, lit. *undergo*.

12. volēbant: *were willing*.

13. mē . . . carēre: *spare me*, lit. *be without me*; mē is abl. case. —potestis: *you could*; cf. potest, p. 41, l. 7.

16. rē: *performance*.

17. nūllō impediēte: cf. nūllō dēfendēte, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnique pulvere sublevātī impetūs Indōrum potuerunt sustinēre, dōnec amici auxili ferendī causā ex oppidīs finitimis frequentēs convēnērunt.

LESSON 59

A Battle against Great Odds

S In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in litore positum est oppidum Taeconderōga, ācriter quondam ab Americānis cum Britannīs pugnātum est. Americānis parvae erant nāvēs et paucae; at dux Britannicus, quī facile ē Canadā cōpiās adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā diligentīā instrūctās parāverat; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expugnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maximae virtūtis, etsī numerō erat multō inferior, committere proelium minimē dubitāvit; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britannī, noctem veritī, proeliō dēstitērunt; sed ad ancoram haud prōcul cōsistēbant, nē colōnī per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americānī nocte intempestā, lucernīs extinctīs, silentiō dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vitāverunt. Itaque mātine, cum Britannī proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix in cōspectū erat nāvis ūlla; quārē illi, ancorīs sublātis, summā celeritatē insequi coepērunt. Postquam autem Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūtī sunt, cōstitit ea

2. sublevātī: sublevō, I, *help out*.

6. Americānis: dat. case.

9. instrūctās: *equipped*.

12. maximae virtūtis: cf. *tan-
tae virtūtis*, p. 62, l. 14.

17. proeliō: for syntax, cf. *cōnātū*, p. 21, l. 3.

19. lucernīs: lucerna, -ae, F., *lantern*.

24. fugientēs: participle as adj.

nāvis, quā vehēbātur dux ipse colōnōrum, et sōla hostium sustinuit impetum, dōnec reliqua classis Americāna in portum mūnitum pervenire potuit; quīn etiam nē illam quidem praedam cēpērunt Britanni; nam suō nāvigio, cum ad litus
5 appulsum esset, Americānī ipsī ignis admōvērunt.

LESSON 60

A Night Attack

Bellō primō, quod ā Britannīs cum Americānīs gestum est, in flūmine quōdam Carolaenae Ulteriōris insula parva praesidiō Britannicō tenēbātur: interim dominus insulae, vir locuplēs reiue pūblīcae amantissimus, molestē scilicet
10 ferēbat castra hostium in praediō suō collocāta esse, eō magis quod militēs interdum sē insolenter gerēbant.

Postrēmō Americānī cōstituērunt adversō flūmine nāvigāre cōpiāsque Britannicās, sī possent, ex insulā expellere. Itaque clam profectī, nāvibus nocte intempestā ad insulam
15 silentiō appulsīs, impetum ācerrimum subitō fēcērunt. Quā rē novā permōti Britannī ad arma celeriter cucurrērunt; et dominus quoque insulae, quī nesciēbat amicōs adesse, impetum ab hostibus factum arbitrātus, unā cum uxōre
liberisque in silvās tardius sē contulit; ipse enim pedibus

4. suō: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

5. appulsum esset: cf. appulit, p. 31, l. 13.

6. bellō primō: cf. p. 62, l. 15.

7. Ulteriōris: lit. *Farther* (from the point of view of the capital of the United States), i.e. *South*.

9. rei . . . pūblīcae amantissimus: *most loyal to his country*, lit. *most loving of the common*

wealth (objective gen.); amantissimus is the superlative of the part. amāns.

10. eō magis: *and all the more*, lit. *on this account (the) more*.

11. insolenter: adv., *insolently*, or *impudently*.

16. rē: *action*.

19. tardius: absol. compar. — pedibus captus: *being crippled*, lit. *bring incapacitated in his feet*.

captus ā servīs tum sellā ferēbātur. Ubi sic ad casam longinquam perventum est, māter subitō clāmāvit puerum infāntem in aedibus relictum esse. Quō auditō, filia fortiter per tenebrās profecta celeriter domum cucurrit; cumque inter tēla amicōrum et hostium in aedēs pervēnisset, puerum ē cūnīs rapuit incolumemque ad mātrem sēcum redūxit.

LESSON 61

A Choice of Evils

Parvō in oppidō Novae Britanniae habitābat quidam agricola, cui erant liberī octō. Is ōlim, cum subitō nūntiātum esset Indōs appropinquāre, ex agris ad bona liberōsque servandōs summā celeritāte properāvit; aegra enim domi uxor iacēbat.

Quō igitur cum pervēnisset, liberis convocātis atque ad castellum proximum statim praemissis, ipse uxōrem ad iter parāre cōnātus est. Sed iam in cōnspectū erant Indī, neque diūtius ūlla erat salūtis spēs. Itaque uxōre bonisque relictis, agricola, qui iam antea statuerat cum liberis sibi vīvendum aut prō eis moriendum esse, equum cōnscendit, atque ad castellum versus quam celerrimē contendit. Liberōs mox adsecūtus est, et omnēs, etsi Indī vestigiis sequēbantur, in castellum incolumēs pervēnērunt; nam

1. sellā: sella, -ae, F., *sedan chair*; for syntax, cf. rāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

2. clāmāvit: cf. clāmor.

3. infāntem: infāns, -antis, adj., *infant*.

6. cūnīs: cūnae, -ārum, F., *cradle*. — mātrem: (*her*) *mother*.

10. servandōs: agreeing with the nearer noun. For the form of

the phrase as a whole, cf. ad Gallos expellendōs, p. 35, l. 14. — aegra: pred. adj.

17. vīvendum: sc. esse. Note that this and the following gerundive are impersonal; but translate *that he must*, etc.

19. vestigiis sequēbantur: *i.e. were following the trail* (lit. *in their footsteps*).

quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōsistēbat in viā, cōsque armis terrēbat. Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier magnae fortitudinis, unā cum captivis aliis ab Indīs in silvās dēdūcēbātur.

LESSON 62

Lost in the Woods

5 Multōs abhinc annōs quīdam puer parvus mātrem insciente in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit. Quī, cum iam advesperāsceret, viam reperire nōn potuit ac brevi intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse. Itaque ex foliis lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque
10 aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quīēvit. Māne iterum viam invenire frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācis sustinuit; quō modō quīque diēs per silvās errāvit. Deinde noctū ignem animadvertit, et celeriter prōgressus in vicum Indōrum subitō pervēnit. Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, mul-
15 tōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fiunt, lēgātus prōvinciae unā cum comitibus paucis puerī quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppidaque Indōrum finitima adibat omnia. Quae rēs puero salutī fuit; nam postrēmō repertī sunt quīdam barbarī,
20 quī nūntiāverunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. propius: absol. compar., *too near*. — accesserant: translate as if a perfect. — cōsistēbat: note the tense, and contrast the force of the imperfect dēdūcēbātur, l. 4.

5. abhinc: cf. p. 52, l. 6. — insciente: insciēns, -entis, adj.: lit. *not knowing*; translate the abl. absol. freely.

6. profectus: *slipping away*. — sēcum: *i.e. by himself*.

9. stellās: stella, -ae, F., *star*.

10. suspēxisset: suspiciō, 3, suspēxi, suspectus, *watch*, lit. *look up at*. — somnō gravissimō: abl. of manner.

18. rēs: *proceeding*. — puero salutī fuit: cf. oppidānis . . . salutī fuit, p. 68, l. 1.

20. ipsum: *he*. — viam: *i.e. the way to reach him*.

runt. Puerō sic receptō, lēgātus sicās dedit eis Indīs, ā quibus ille servātus erat. Barbarī scilicet dōnis tam grātis gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

LESSON 63

The Battle of Saratoga

- Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, qui
 5 postea Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnitissima, quae in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt: et nōn numquam etiam salūtī civibus suis fuit; tantopere enim ā militibus amābātur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs incitāre posset.
- Olim Saratōgae, cum eius ordinem adēmisset imperātor, quōcum simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proeli ad aurēs adlātō, "Ego," inquit, "sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem manipulārīs erō;" quae cum dixisset, iniussū imperātōris equum cōnscendit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est: ubi
 5 militēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laetī secūtī sunt, atque impetum ācerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi aciēs hostium cōnfertissima vīsa est. Ibi summā virtūte pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Americānis parta est.

2. ille: the boy.

3. gaudēbant: *were delighted*.

— autem: omit in translation.

4. iste: *that* (in the disparaging sense), a frequent meaning of this word; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. nōn numquam: *i.e. sometimes*.

8. ipsō: *mere*.

10. Saratōgae: for syntax, cf.

Philadelphiae, p. 46, l. 1. — adēmisset: adimō, 3, -ēmi, -emptus, *take away*.

11. quōcum: *i.e. quō + cum*. — simultātem gerēbat: *he was at odds* (simultās, -ātis, F., *quarrel*).

13. iniussū imperātōris: cf. iniussū suō, p. 28, l. 7.

16. partem: *direction*.

17. vīsa est: from videor.

Etsi vulnera Arnoldi nōn erant exitiālia, tempus tamen mortī opportūnissimum erat. Odium enim perfīdiae, quā ille postea ūsus est, glōriam eius rērum gestārum semper obruet; quin etiam trāditum est (ut suprā commemorāvī) nē Britannōs quidem, quī eius perfīdiā victōriam sē nactūrōs spērāverant, hominem ūllō in honōre habuisse, postquam bellum cōfectum esset.

LESSON 64

Unwelcome Visitors

Britanni, cum iam iterum cum Americānis gererent bellum pugnisque nāvālibus saepe victi essent, postrēmō cōstituērunt usque ad Lovisiānam classem mittere, si ibi fēlicius rem gerere possent. Quārē appulsis nāvibus ad eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flūmen maximum, quem Indī patrem aquārum vocābant, milītēs multī in litus ēgressi praedia finitima explōrāre coepērunt.

15 Sic factum est ut quīdam adulēscēns Americānus, quī in villā ōtiōsus hōrā diēi ferē quārtā morābātur, milītēs complūris in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret. Quā rē novā graviter commōtus, comitēs ut sine morā latebrās

1. Arnoldi: cf. Standisi, p. 16, l. 4. — tempus: *occasion*. — tamen: may be omitted in translation.

2. mortī: note the case. — odium (-ī, N.): *contempt*. — perfīdiae: objective gen.; translate "for." — quā: the case regularly used with ūtor.

4. obruet: obruō, 3, -rui, -rurus, *dim*, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. cōfectum esset: for mood, cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

9. nāvālibus: nāvālis, -is, -e, *naval*.

10. usque ad Lovisiānam: freely, *to far-away L.* — si: *in the hope that*; cf. si, p. 33, l. 4.

12. fertur: *rolls*; cf. *dēlātus*, p. 66, l. 15. — quem: for gender, cf. the note on *quod*, p. 30, l. 6.

15. factum est ut: *it happened that* (factum est from *fiō*).

16. hōrā diēi ferē quārtā: *i.e.* about 10 A.M. See the note on p. 75.

17. rē: *happening*.



CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify "Beware of the dog."



HŌRAE

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours—long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaerent hortatus est, et ipse primō fugā salūtem petivit; sed ab hostibus statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn dubitāvit. At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cumque tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis
 5 pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britannī armīs impeditī summō labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervallō satis magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret, celeriter cōnscendit. Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub
 10 arbore audivit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vidit canem, quam maximē amābat. Quārē periculum veritus, comitem fidēlem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invitus necāvit, multisque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit. Deinde aliquamdiū tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britannī
 15 quaerendō dēfessī ad villam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū custōdiās hostium vitāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem fēcit imperātōrem Americānum, quī oppidum haud longinquum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

LESSON 65

The Boyhood of Daniel Boone

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est
 20 puer, quī postea factus est explōrātor clārissimus. Quīn etiam ā primā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōnsuēverat, ac in

1. fugā: cf. p. 67, l. 6.
2. tum: *i.e.* for the time being.
3. fenestrā patefactā: abl. of way by which; translate *through*.
- cum: concessive.
7. ab: *from*.
8. abesset: *i.e.* was separated.
10. dēspēxisset: dēspiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectus, look down; cf. suspēxisset, p. 72, l. 10.

12. invitus: cf. p. 35, l. 12.
14. postquam: freely, *when at length*. — quaerendō: cf. nandō, p. 12, l. 17.
15. magnō circuitū, etc.: cf. p. 69, l. 20.
20. factus est: from fīō.
21. primā: *early*; cf. p. 22, l. 7. — cōnsuēverat: *i.e.* solēbat.

silvis ambulāns ferās saepe occidit. Ōlim, cum vespere
 primō domum nōn redisset, vicinī, veritī nē puer ab Indīs
 aut ferīs esset interfectus, frequentēs convēnērunt, com-
 plūrisque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, sī ūllō modō eum in-
 5 venīre possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs
 caespitibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frustum carnis
 in ignem porrigēns humi sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam
 ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōsultō sē longius contulerat in
 silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitibus etiam tum
 10 libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annīs pater multa mīlia passuum ad loca
 longinqua cōstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque
 urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sedēs novās
 ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātresque arborēs ex-
 15 cīderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, ferīs
 interfectīs carnem ē silvā cotīdiē domum reportābat. In-
 terdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dīcitur: quō quidem
 tempore facibus ārdentibus ūti solēbat; lūmina enim, ut
 saepe ab explōrātōribus audīvimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs ēlici-
 20 endās magnō ūsuī sunt.

2. nē: cf. the note on p. 61,
 l. 6.

5. rāmīs caespitibusque: abl.
 of means with aedificātam; trans-
 late (freely) "of."

7. sine timōre: *i.e.* uncon-
 cerned; cf. timeō.

8. longius: absolute compara-
 tive.

9. etiam tum: *i.e.* even when
 so young.

10. libenter habitābat: *i.e.* he
 had a liking for living.

11. pater: sc. eius.

12. in silvās: acc., because of
 the verb of motion (ēmigrāre); we

would say "in the woods." —
 ipsī: *him*; construe with grāta.

13. quās: *this*.

15. satūs: satus, -ūs, *M., crop*.

16. reportābat: note the tense.

17. vēnātus: note the case
 (and that dīcitur is personal).
 — quō . . . tempore: *i.e.* at night;
 freely, *on such occasions*. In trans-
 lating, quidem may be omitted.

18. facibus: fax, facis, *F.,*
torch; for syntax, cf. quā, p. 74,
 l. 2. — ut: *as*.

19. ab: *from*.

20. magnō ūsuī: cf. the note on
 praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4.

LESSON 66

The End of the Pequots

Nātiō Indōrum crūdēlissima, quae haud procul ā Novō Londiniō habitābat, quondam īnsidiās collocāre ac colōnōs singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus nūntiātis, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae agricolis auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At militēs longē ā litore prōgredi nōn audēbant; quī igitur, parvō frūmentī numerō direptō tabernāculisque paucis incēnsis, ē finibus hostium brevī domum sē recēpērunt. Barbarī vērō, hāc iniuriā graviter permōti, incendia ac caedēs 10 undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius praeffectus iussus erat militēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō, quī haud longē ā castris Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, hostēs ita cōsiliū suū facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus, 15 praeter illum portum nāvigāvit, cumque classis ē cōspectū barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad litus appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs adorīrētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs finitimās 20 adiit, ē quibus multī armātī operam suam polliciti sunt.

5. auxiliō: cf. *ūsui*, p. 77, l. 20, and see the Vocab. — poenās . . . repeteret: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. numerō: *amount*. — direptō: diripiō, 3, -ripui, -reptus, *plunder* (cf. rapiō).

9. incendia . . . caedēs: translate as singulars. With *incendium* cf. *incendō*.

10. crūdēlius: crūdēliter, adv, *savagely*.

11. prōvinciā: *i.e.* eādem prōvinciā.

12. iussus erat: *i.e.* was under orders. — expōnere: expōnō, 3, -posui, -positus, *land*.

14. ita: *i.e.* if he followed orders. — posse: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. viā dēviā: cf. *vis dēvia*, p. 43, l. 6. — ā tergō: cf. the use of *ex* in the phrase *omnibus ex partibus*.

Sic postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī. ratī propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus diligenter castra sua custodiēbant.

LESSON 67

The End of the Pequots (Continued)

Noctū castris appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant
5 uxōrēs quoque liberique Indōrum, intusque audīri poterat
cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignis saltantēs, victōriās
superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī exspectā-
vērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēsceret Indique saltandō
dēfessī somnō quiēscerent gravī, subitō in castra portīs
10 duābus inrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentinō commōti, hostēs tamen celeriter ē
lectīs exsiluērunt, tabernāculisque interpositīs, tēla in militēs
conicere fortiter coepērunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux
colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōnsilium sibi mūtandum esse,
15 suōsque tabernāculis ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter
ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indi mi-
serī, ignī ē castris fugere coāctī, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum
interfectī sunt; et sī quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs socii
Indī libenter occidērunt.

20 In proeliō multi quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerāti, atque
exercitus statim Novum Londinium sē recipere coactus est;

1. ratī: *i.e.* arbitrātī.

6. saltantēs: cf. saltābant,
p. 57, l. 1.

7. superiōrēs: here, of time.
— exspectāvērunt: *waited*.

8. saltandō: for syntax, cf.
mandō, p. 12, l. 17.

9. somnō . . . gravī: cf.

p. 72, l. 10. — portīs: cf. the
note on fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

18. sī quī . . . , eōs: lit. *if any*
. . . , *them* (cf. the note on quid,
p. 56, l. 1).

19. Indī: as adj. — libenter oc-
cidērunt: *freely, were glad to kill*.

21. Novum Londinium: town

quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem militesque exspectarent. Sed hostēs paucis post mēnsibus alterā pugnā victi sunt, neque umquam postea iniuriā ullam colōnis facere potuerunt; quā etiam brevī in manūs parvās
5 divisi, aliī in aliam nātiōnem asciti sunt.

LESSON 68

A Difficult Escape

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotidiē laborābant; nam, etsi colōnī tum bellum cum Gallīs Indisque gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ullōs nūper viderat. Sed olim duo Indī subitō ex arboribus erūperunt
10 proximis, puerisque arreptis sē celerrimē in silvam recēperunt. Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed alter, qui plānē sentiēbat flētum nihil prōfutūrum esse, frātre m hortātus est ut sē fortiter gereret. Per silvam unā cum captivis iam properābant barbarī. Quī, postquam sic
15 diēs multōs iter fecerunt, ad lacum pervēnerunt longinquum, ubi cum aliis civibus suis hiemāre cōstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coeperunt puerī. Quō modō maior primā aestāte repperit Indōs in animō habere in Canadam dūcere captivōs, eosque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not require prepositions to express the ideas "to" and "from."

1. iussum erat: note the gender.
2. alterā pugnā: we would say "in" rather than "by."
3. neque umquam: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.
4. colōnis: dat. case.
5. aliī in aliam: *some into one . . . , some into another.*

11. minor: *i.e. the younger*; cf. maior, l. 18.

12. flētum: flētus, -ūs, M., *crying*; cf. fleō. — nihil: adverbial acc., *not . . . at all*, lit. *in no respect*. — prōfutūrum esse: *promised, promised, help, or avail*.

16. suis: *of theirs*.

18. maior: cf. minor, l. 11. — primā aestāte: cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallis vēdere. Quārē, cibō armisque arreptis, frātrēs duo ex hibernis noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illuxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant.
 5 At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frūstum carnis eis prōiēcit. Quae rēs pueris salūtī fuit; cum enim canēs carnem dēvorārent, barbari nihil suspicantēs arborem prae-
 teriērunt. Quō visō, pueri rursus profecti per silvās errā-
 10 vērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōfecti sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi antea ignōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

LESSON 69

Stories about Daniel Boone

Ille explōrātōr clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dixi, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Ūlim ē
 15 Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliis explōrātōribus quinque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indīs captus, postquam ab eis septem diēs summā diligentīā custōditus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, incolumis ad casam pervēnit,
 20 quam ipse cēteriūque explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucis post annis eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō

1. servitūtem: servitūs, -ūtis, F., slavery; cf. servus.

2. autem: and.

5. propius: quite close; what use of the compar.?

6. lātrātū: lātrātus, -ūs, M., barking. — ūsus: translate as if ūsus est . . . et.

7. quae: this.

11. sibi: construe with ignōtum.

13. cuius: modifier of pueritiā.

14. aetātem: not aestātem.

15. Citeriōre: (citerior, -ior, -ius), lit. *Nearer, i.e. North*; cf. the note on Ulteriōris, p. 70, l. 7.

20. cēteri: contrast the force of aliis, l. 15.

- ribus liberisque dēdūxit ad locum, qui castellō maximē idō-
 neus vidēbātur. Ubi aliquamdiū fortunā prōsperā ūsus est;
 sed quondam eius fīlia, quae errābat in agrīs, ut flōrēs car-
 peret, ūnā cum puellis aliīs ab Indīs capta, in silvās com-
 5 plūra milia passuum ducta est. Dum autem iter faciunt,
 puellae prūdentēs omnibus locīs aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs
 aut humī pannōs reliquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsuī erat patri-
 bus irātis, quī haud longō intervāllō vestigiis insequēbantur
 Barbaris victis, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.
- 10 Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud
 Indōs vivere coactus est. Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam
 prōfluentem cucurrisset, nē vestigia ūlla faceret, ad amicōs
 incolumis pervēnit. Multis autem ante mēnsibus uxor
 liberique, patrem iam pridem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs
 15 suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

LESSON 70

An English Privateer

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsi illō ipsō tempore bellum
 iūstum cum Hispānis nōn gerēbātur, quīdam praefectus
 Britannicus per maria nāvigābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs
 Hispānōrum omnibus locis spoliābat; itaque accidit ut, cum

6. prūdentēs: prūdēns, -entis,
 adj., *wide-awake*. — omnibus locis:
 cf. the note on eōdem locō, p. 7,
 l. 4; translate *everywhere*. — aut
 . . . aut: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. pannōs: pannus, -i, M., *strip
 of cloth*.

8. intervāllō: cf. the note on
 p. 57, l. 4. — vestigiis: cf. p. 71,
 l. 19.

12. prōfluentem: prōfluēns, -en-

tis, part., *running*, lit. *flowing
 forward*.

14. ratī: modifying the whole
 phrase uxor liberique. — propin-
 quōs: here, as noun.

15. in: cf. the note on in
 silvās, p. 77, l. 12. — Citeriōrem:
 cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. illō ipsō: *that particular*.

17. iūstum: iūstus, -a, -um,
regular.

secundum litus Americae Ulteriōris nāvigāret, urbēs illius regiōnis adiret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argentique trādere cogeret.

Līmae duodecim nāvigia in portū ad ancoram consistēbant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvigiiis cōnfestim in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, summāque celeritāte coepit insequi; divitiās enim etiam maiōres sē iam captūrum spērābat.

10 Mox in cōspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nūllō modō ēvādere potuit, cum Britannī celeritāte tantopere superārent. Nāve trāditā, divitiae maximae intus repertae sunt; quin etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse dicitur. Quae cum praefectus vidisset, gubernātōri, “Duo
15 pōcula tū habēs,” inquit; “alterum mihi dandum est.” Tum gubernātor miser, qui omnia trādenda plānē intellegēbat, invitus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādidit ambō.

LESSON 71

A Roman Vandal

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimis facinoribus Verris, hominis plānē scelerāti, pauca nunc dicam. Nam ille,

4. Līmae: a town name; what case?

7. suum: sc. nāvigium. — solvit: cf. nāvem solvērunt, p. 61, l. 9.

8. divitiās: divitiae, -ārum, f., *treasures*.

10. fugiēns: cf. fugientēs, p. 69, l. 24.

11. cum: causal. — celeritāte: for syntax, cf. *animō*, p. 37, l. 20. — tantopere: cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. divitiae: cf. l. 8.

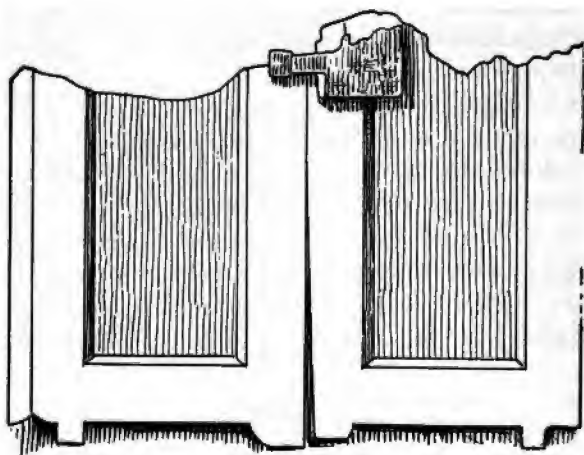
13. gubernātor: cf. gubernāculum. — ipse: *even*.

15. alterum: *one* (of the two).

16. trādenda: sc. esse. — plānē: *full well*.

17. praefectō: dat. case; translate as if a genitive.

19. hominis: in apposition with Verris. — plānē: *utterly*; cf. the rendering in the note on l. 16. — pauca: note the gender.



FORĒS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locīs oppida templa-
que spoliāvit; quī etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pau-
perrimī quidem Siculī bona vidēre posset, quī statim ea
possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suis comitibus est
5 ēlūsus.

Sicut memoriae trāditum est eum ōlim certiōrem factum
cuidam Siculō esse duo pōcula argentea; quō audītō, etsī
aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliātae erant, nūntium
statim mīsīt, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferri iubēret.
10 Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōn-
fēstim cum pōculis ad praetōrem profectus est. Quō ubi
pervēnit, praetor forte iam quīescēbat; sed ante forēs am-
bulābant quidam ex ipsius amicis, hominēs improbī, quōrum
tamen cōnsiliō ille multum ūtī cōnsuēverat: quī Siculō
15 statim, "Ubi sunt pōcula?" inquirunt. Tum homō miser
primō querī coepit bona omnia sibi ēripi, deinde eōs vehe-
menter hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō audītō, illi
"Quantum nobis dabis," inquirunt, "sī pōcula tibi nōn ēri-
pientur?" Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

1. praetor (-ōris, M.): (as)
governor. — templa: see the pic-
ture of a Sicilian temple shown on
p. 96.

2. tantae . . . avāritiae: for
syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — pauper-
rimī: pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*.

3. quī . . . vellet: *without
wishing*, lit. *but that* (quī) *he
wanted*.

4. possidēre: possideō, 2,
-sēdī, -sessus, *possess*. — suis:
note the position of the word. —
est ēlūsus: *was cheated*.

6. memoriae trāditum est: *it
is recorded*, lit. *it is handed down
to remembrance*.

10. malum: as noun, modified
by *maius*.

11. ad praetōrem: *to the gov-
ernor's residence* (cf. l. 1).

12. forte: with the verb, render
"chanced to"; cf. the free treat-
ment of libenter, p. 77, l. 10.

13. ipsius: *i.e. Verris*. — impro-
bī: improbus, -a, -um, *unprincipled*.

14. ūtī: *freely, depend upon*.
— cōnsuēverat: cf. p. 76, l. 21.

16. sibi: dat. of disadvantage;
we would say "*from him*."

17. auxiliō: cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. quantum: as noun.

19. ērēctus (-a, -um, part.):
elated, or inspired.

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum ¹aetus reportāvit comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset, audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāvērunt cōnfirmāre pōcula sibi nōn digna vidērī, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

LESSON 72

Indian Vengeance

5 Indī Americānī nōn solum cum colōnīs saepe bellum gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōsuēvērant ācerimē. Sicut in Britannīā Novā rēx quīdam, nōmine Miantōnimō, diū per insidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam, rēgem finitimū, ut ipse solum duārum nātiōnum rēgnum
10 obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia, subitō magnō cum exercitū in vicinī fīnēs quam celerrimē contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explōrātōribus certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam profectus est.

15 Ubi aciēs duae instrūctae sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs prōgressus, sē velle dixit solum cum Miantōnimōne solum dīmicāre, ut sine dētrimentō cēterōrum rēs diiudicārī posset. Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōsultō in terram prōlapsus est, eiusque militēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. experrēctus esset: experrēcor, 3, -perrēctus sum, *wake up*.

3. mendāciō: mendācium, -ī, N., *lie*. — ūsī: translate as if a present.

4. digna . . . quae: with subjunct., *worthy to* (dignus, -a, -um). — mēnsā: mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*

8. insidiās: see the Vocab.

9. duārum: *the two*

10. fefellissent: from fallō.

12. Uncās: for the declension, cf. the note on Cercās, p. 23, l. 4.

16. velle: *was willing*. — solum: pred. adj. with dīmicāre; what other part of speech has the same form? (cf. l. 5).

17. cēterōrum: we would say "*to the others*." — diiudicārī: *decide*, or *settle*.

18. quod: *this (proposal)*. — ille: Miantonimo

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostīs; quī re-
 pentinā rē perterriti sē cōnfestim in silvās palūdēque con-
 tulērunt. Quā in fugā periērunt multī, rēxque ab Uncā
 ipsō captus est. Ab inimicō salūtem petere dux victus
 5 scilicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō
 quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimicum humī moribun-
 dum vīdisset, eius umerum sicā appetivisse dicitur, frū-
 stumque carnis inde abscīsum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tan-
 10 tae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

LESSON 73

A Tale of Brave Women

10 Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad occi-
 dentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explōrātōrēs quī-
 dam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs Ignōtās
 multa milia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idō-
 neum nactī, prōcul ab amicīs in ripā pulcherrimī flūminis
 15 castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factīs, nūn-
 tiōs mīserunt, quī eōdem mulierēs liberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiīs
 libenter domō ēgressi sunt, et nāvigiīs parvis vectī secundō

1. iacentem: *prostrate*; lit. what? — *repentinā rē*: sc. hāc.

4. ab: *of*.

5. secūrī percussus est: *i.e.* *was executed*; lit. what?

6. quidem: omit in translation.

7. sicā: abl. of means.

8. inde: *i.e. from it*. — vultū laetō: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — dēvorāsse: for the form, cf. nāvīgāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

10. occidentem: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. domō: the acc. and abl. of domus have the construction of town names (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

16. eōdem: bearing the same relation to idem, as eō to is, and quō to quī.

17. omnēs: *i.e.* the women and children.

18. secundō: cf. the force of the prep. secundū, and contrast that of adversō (flūmine).

flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impeditam summō labōre contendērunt. Barbarī interim paene cotidī ē rīpis tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum numerō exitiālī morbō affectī sunt. Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs 5 ē rīpā scaphīs audācter prōgressī, nāvīgium cēpērunt quō aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

Tantīs in periculīs nōn virī solum sed etiam mulierēs virtutem maximam praestitērunt. Sicut, cum scapha quaedam in saxō absconditō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluerunt in aquam frigidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt, cum alterius vir hostēs armīs dēterrēbat. Atque in liburnicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salūtī fuit; cum enim ab Indis tēla conicerentur plūrima, virique sē tegere cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis 15 ad rīpam dēferri animadvertisset, gubernāculis arreptīs nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quīn etiam nētum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdidit, neque ē manibus gubernācula ēlābī passa est.

LESSON 74

The Treasure Seekers

Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs crēdulī cōnsuēverant in 20 cavernīs maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae ōlim gazā

6. aegrī: as noun; cf. *vulnerāti*, etc.

11. alterius: *of one* (of the two). — vir: *husband*.

12. adulta: *adultus*, -a, -um, part., *grown up*.

13. sē tegere: *i.e. get under cover*.

14. virgō (-inis, F.): *maiden*. — cum . . . animadvertisset: translate by a partic. phrase.

15. gubernāculis: cf. p. 64. l. 9

16. in cursū: *i.e. in the channel*.

18. ēlābī: *ēlābor*, 3, -*lapeus sum, slip*; cf. *prōlābor*.

19. et . . . et: cf. p. 7, l. 2. — aetātibus: *i.e. temporibus*. — crēdulī: *crēdulus*, -a, -um, *credulous*.

20. cavernīs: *caverna*, -ae, F., *cavern*.

onustae in mari naufragium fēcisse dicuntur; interdum autem fortunā prōsperiōre ūsi sunt. Sicut abhinc multōs annōs quīdam negōtiātor, ē Britannīā Novā paucis cum comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvigāvit longinquum, ubi 5 gaza maxima multis ante annis naufragiō āmissa esse dicēbātur. Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim excidit scaphamque fēcit, quae ad freta finitima exploranda ūsuī esset.

Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est. Ōlim tamen, cum nautae 10 tōtō diē diligenter labōrāvissent ac spē omni paene sublātā ad nāvem sē dēfessi cōferrent, quīdam ex eis forte submersam animadvertit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilire eamque carpere iussit; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub mari 15 cōfirmāvit sēsē multa arma vidisse. Quō auditō, omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, cum sentirent sē iam dēmum nāvigium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesiverant. Quārē statim in mare exsiluērunt Indi alii; ā quibus brevī ē nāvigio lāminae argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt. Posterō diē 20 nautae, cum eōdem primā lūce cum praefectō redissent, ē mari vim argenti incrēdibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimis facile recēpērunt.

1. naufragium: naufragium, -i, N., *shipwreck* (nāvis + frangō).

2. ūsi sunt: *they have had*.

8. ūsuī esset: see the Vocab.

10. tōtō diē: translate as if acc. — omni: freely, *entirely*.

11. quīdam: as noun (sing.). — forte: cf. the note on p. 85,

l. 12. — submersam: submersus, -a, -um, part., *submerged*, i.e. *under the surface*.

12. algam: alga, -ae, F., *sea-weed*. — fōrmōsam: fōrmōsus, -a,

-um, *graceful*. — pulchritūdine: pulchritūdō, -inis, F., *beauty*.

13. servum: *helper*.

14. sē . . . ēmersit: *emerged*, or *came up* (ēmergō, 3, -mersi -mersus).

15. sēsē: i.e. sē.

19. lāminae: lāmina, -ae, F., *plate*, or *strip*.

20. primā lūce: cf. *vespere primō*, p. 77, l. 1.

21. gem nis: *gemma*. -ae, F., *jewel*

LESSON 75

A Dangerous Conspiracy

Ōlim in finibus Indōrum ab Americānīs cōstitutā est prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc Indiāna appellātur. Prōvinciā cōstitutā rēx Indus, nōmine Tecumsa, quī nē cīvēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dimitterent
 5 timēre coeperat, omnibus locīs palam dicere nōn dubitāvit sine cōsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indīs agrum nūllum vēndendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliis undique convocātis, barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostisque invisōs ē finibus suis expellerent.

10 Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendī causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō ipsi comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedere nōluit: terram enim cōfirmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in eā stāre malle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam
 15 prōgredi coāctus est. Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa vehementer est irā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūris cōnfestim arripuerunt. Sed Americānī paucī, quī adstābant, statim expediērunt arma, militēsque summā celeritāte ad lēgātum dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territi,
 20 Indī nihil tum ausī sunt. At lēgātus, quī plānē sentiēbat cum barbaris sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

4. nē: depending on timēre,

1. 5.—tōtam: translate by an adv.

5. omnibus locīs: cf. p. 82, l.

6.

6. cōsēnsū: cōsēnsus, -ūs, M., concurrence.—Indīs: dat. case.

11. vestibulō: vestibulum, -ī, N., entrance court.

12. ipsi: Tecumseh.—subsellia: subsellium, -ī, N., bench.

17. pauci: the few.

18. expediērunt: i.e. expedivērunt.—ad . . . dēfendendum: cf. the construction with causā, l. 11.

19. adcurrērunt: adcurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est, run up.

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnīs Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs diligenter iam circumibat.

LESSON 76

A Dangerous Conspiracy (Continued)

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociis redire potuit, lēgātus, sibi initium bellī esse faciendum ratus, cōsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs flūmine adversō pauca mīlia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in ripam trānsiit alteram. Putābat enim (id quod factum est) barbarōs insidiās collocātūrōs eā in ripā, in quā primō iter ¹⁰ facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiis igitur flūmen trāductis, sine detrīmentō ūllō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Tecumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium misit, quī diceret posterō diē ⁵ Indōs condiōnēs pācis petītūrōs. Itaque Americānī prope oppidum posuērunt castra, armisque expeditis sē somnō dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō audītus est ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant; quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, militēs ē somnō excitātī ignis

5. *initium*: *initium*, -i, N., *beginning*. The whole phrase may be rendered freely, *thinking that he ought to take the initiative in the war*; lit. what?

8. *id quod factum est*: *as actually proved to be the case*, lit. *the thing which (actually) happened*.

9. *eā*: modifying *ripā*. — in *quā*: *upon* (or *along*) *which*.

10. *flūmen trāductis*: *i.e. trāns*

flūmen ductis (cf. *trādō* for *trānsdō*).

11. *domicilium*: *domicilium*, -i, N., *residence*.

14. *praeerat*: cf. p. 58, l. 12, and the note.

17. *vigiliā . . . quārtā*: *i.e. toward morning*, the night being divided into four equal watches.

19. *quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō*: cf. p. 73, l. 11. — *ignis*: *the (camp) fires*.

cōnfestim extinxērunt, nē ab hostibus cōspici possent. Sic tris ferē hōrās in nocte obscurā ab Americānis fortissimē pugnātum est; tum primā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

- 5 Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōsilia sua perficere nullō modō potuit; paucis autem post mēnsibus, cum Americāni Britannis bellum indixissent, in exercitū Britannicō lēgātus factus est.

LESSON 77

A Quick-Witted Messenger

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciis, quae ad merīdiem spectant, 10 Americāni cum Britannis diū gessissent bellum ac saepe superātī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperātōrem alium litterās mittere volēbat; at primō reperiri poterat nēmō, qui eas dēferre auderet, quod undique hostēs viās obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, “Ego lit- 15 terās adferam,” inquit; “quidvis audere mālō, quam domi animō morārī suspēnsō.”

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōnscendit, ac, cōnfestim profecta, in itinere ab hostibus intercepta est. Quam captam militēs maximā dīligentiā custōdiērunt, dōnec mulier 20 vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, si quae forte nūntiae vestimentis tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

1. possent: subject, militēs (see p. 91, l. 19).

7. cum . . . indixissent: translate by a partic. phrase.—Britannis: translate the dat. “upon.”

8 lēgātus: an officer.

13. auderet: would venture.

15. quam: (rather) than.

17. nūntia (-ae, F.): messenger.

18. captam: i.e. after her capture.

20. posset: could.—si quae: cf. p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpsisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit singula. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit: altera enim mulier, cum postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scilicet invenire potuit; quārē mīlītēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abire 5 passi sunt. Illa autem summā celeritātē ad castra Americāna contendit, imperātōremque certiōrem fēcīt dē rēbus omnibus, quae in litterīs scrīptae erant.

LESSON 78

Fortune favors the Brave

In exercitū Americānō ōlim erat centuriō quīdam, nōmine Iasper, quī semper in periculis maximīs libenter versābatur. Sicut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnārent, vēxillumque Americānum tēlis abreptum in terram extrā mūnitiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima hostēs coniciēbant, ē castris ērūpit ille, vēxillumque arreptum in vāllō rursus posuit.

15 Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā Britannīs capitis damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī, ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe in insidiis latēbat, ut cīvibus suis, sī posset, auxiliō esset. Mox in cōspectum vēnērunt captivī, quōs mīlītēs decem

1. discerpsisset: discerpō, 3, -cerpsi, -cerptus, *tear up*. — frāgmenta: frāgmentum, -ī, N., *bit*. — chartae: charta, -ae, F., *paper*.

2. fuit: *proved to be*.

4. contumēliae: translate the gen. "for" (cf. audāciae, p. 39, l. 2).

6. contendit: *pushed on*.

9. libenter versābatur: freely, *delighted to be*.

11. vēxillum (-ī, N.): *flag*, cf. the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. plūrima: freely, *thick and fast*.

16. capitis: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and the note. — Savannam: see the note on p. 79, l. 21. — ad mortem: *i.e. to execution*.

custodiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armis sub arboribus relictis, aquam haurire properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amicus ērūpērunt ē latebris, duōbusque custōdibus occisis militēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt: 5 deinde cum captivis Britannicis atque cīvibus, quōs servāverant, cōnfēstim ad castra Americāna sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēliciter ēvēnērunt; paucis enim post annis interfectus est, cum summā audaciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vāllō vēxillum 10 dēfixisset Americānum.

LESSON 79

Andrew Jackson

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestis Americāni cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, quī obscurō locō nātus, postremō rei pūblicae princeps factus est. Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod primum Britannī cum Americānis gessērunt, 15 fortiter versātus, unā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbo gravi affectus est. Māter autem brevi efficere potuit ut filii ambō cum captivis Britannis commūtarentur.

Multis post annis, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānis

1. quibus: *i.e.* militibus. — ad: *near*.

2. haurire: hauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *draw*.

3. duōbus: *the two*.

7. Iasperō, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.

8. cum: conjunction.

9. vēxillum: cf. p. 93, l. 11.

12. locō: *station*; for syntax, cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. adhūc: (*while*) *still*. — in bellō, quod primum: *i.e.* in primō bellō, quod.

16. efficere . . . ut: *freely, arrange that*; lit. *what?*

17. captivis: translate as adj. — commūtārentur: commūtō, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, cum may be rendered "for."

19. iterum: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indi, quōdam castellō Americanōrum expugnātō, nōn solum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs liberōsque summā crudelitātē occidērunt. Quā caede nūtiātā, Iacsō, dilēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs coercēret; cumque multa milia passuum iter fēcisset, etsi militēs labōrandō dēfessī semel iterumque negābant sē longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra munitissima, quae in ripā flūminis Tallapūsae posuerant Indi. Ubi ācriter pugnātum est; castra tamen sunt capta, hostēsque paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere coācti sunt. Victōriā potītus Iacsō summā cōmitātē rēgem Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus petītum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs liberōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tolerābant.

LESSON 80

Pirates Ashore

Quondam in mari Atlanticō secundum lītus Americānum ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pirātae, quī omnibus locīs nāvēs vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant; ē quibus ūnus, summae audāciae homō, liburnicīs praeerat complūrībus. Is ōlim oppugnāre cōstituit oppidum longinquum, quod numquam antea spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs esse dicēbantur.

Sine dētrīmentō liburnicae in portum vērunt; tum

4. dilēctū: dilēctus, -ūs, M., *levy*.

5. etsi: modifying the preceding clause.

6. labōrandō: gerund.

11. victōriā: the same construction as with ūtor.

13. petītum: supine; another way of saying ut peteret. — frūmentō: (a contribution of) grain.

14. latentēs: in their hiding places: lit. what?

17. nāvigābant: kept sailing



TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captivus quidam, qui minus diligenter custodiēbatur, in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad litus : qui sine morā oppidānōs dē cōsiliis pirātārum certiōrēs fēcit. Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā diligentīā
 5 bona sua cēlāre coepērunt. Deinde, postquam pirātae ē nāvibus ēgressi militēs paucōs, qui oppidō erant praesidiō relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, cīvēs ipsī, aedibus clausīs, tēla in hostēs primō coniēcērunt plūrima ; sed postrēmō, timōre dētrimenti etiam maiōris coactī, sē maestī dēdidē-
 10 runt. Quōs omnīs pirātae, victoriā potiti, in templa quaedam coēgērunt. Ubi illi fame sunt paene necatī ; victōrēs enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omnino captivōrum miserōrum obliviscerentur.

LESSON 81

Carrying the Tribute

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica va-
 5 lida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Africānō, nē pirātae eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant) nāvēs suās spoliārent. Ōlim, cum praefectus Americānus tribūtī istius ferendī causā ad Africam nāvigāsset, rēx ille, qui forte nūntium cum dōnō Byzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. minus : *not very* ; what use of the compar.?

4. nūntiō : *news*, or *information*.

5. cēlāre : cēlō, 1, *conceal*, or *hide*.

6. paucōs : cf. pauci, p. 90, l.

17. — praesidiō : cf. p. 65, l. 4.

20. quōs omnīs : cf. qui omnēs, p. 57, l. 8.

11. coēgērunt : *crowded*. — victōrēs : victor, -ōris, M., *victor*.

12. tam bene sē habēbant : *were having so good a time*.

15. facta est : *freely, had grown*. — pendere : pendō, 3, *pendi, pēnsus, pay*.

16. nē : *so that . . . not*.

19. Byzantium : see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tribūtum pendere cōgēbātur), ab Americānis postulāvit ut nāve suā hanc rem susciperent. Praefectus scilicet sē nōlle respondit; sed rēx, “Nōne servī estis?” inquit: “nōne tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōnfestim suscipiētis, nāves omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Mediterrāneō nāvigant, ā pirātis statim capientur.” Praefectus igitur animō haud aequō Bȳzantium proficisci coāctus est: ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honōre; cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad lītus Africae rursus appulsa esset, rēx Africānus, quī iam oblītus erat sē pollicitum esse nihil amplius ab Americānis postulātum irī, praefectum iussit iterum Bȳzantium nāvigāre; cumque id recūsāret, etiam mortem praesentem minātus est. Tum praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō visō, tantus timor rēgis animum occupāvit, ut veniā contumeliārum petītā Americānōs sine morā redire domum paterētur.

LESSON 82

A Successful Ambuscade

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbaris incēnsō,

1. rēgem suprēmum: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. pendere: cf. p. 97, l. 15 — ab: *of*.

4. nōne: *i.e.* nōn + ne: this combination assumes the answer “yes.”

5. mehercle: interjection, *by my halidom*; lit. (*so help*) *me, Hercules*.

8. Bȳzantium: translate the acc “for”; cf p 97. l. 19.

10. diplōma: acc. sing. of diplōma, -atis, N., *passport*.

13. postulātum irī: what infn.?

15. recūsāret: *object to*; subject, praefectus. — minātus est: minor, 1, *threaten*.

16. diplōma: cf. l. 10.

17. contumeliārum: cf. p. 93, l. 4, and the note.

19. quō: *when*, lit. *during which*.

magna vīs frūmentī ab eīs integra in agrīs relictā est. Quō cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmenti cōpiam nōn temerē dīmittendam ratus, ab oppidō finitimō lēgātum cum militibus proficisci iussit, ut frūgēs ad belli sēdem reportāret. 5 Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōnfestim in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediēte frūmentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamē cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās veritus (per quās tria milia passuum iter faciendum erat) 10 milites primō armīs expeditīs prōgredi iussit. Cum vērō agmen ē silvā incolume ēvāsisset, omnia pericula suōs iam effūgisse arbitrātus, viā minus diligenter explōrātā, in insidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcērant in palūde quādā, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum 15 ubi perventum est, repente auditus est undique ululātus Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā permōtī milites nūllō modō resistere potuerunt, praesertim cum numerō barbarī multō essent superiōrēs. Quin etiam ē proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē propter clādem ibi acceptam hīc locus postea "rivus cruentus" 20 appellābātur.

LESSON 83

An Intrepid Commander

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphis ōlim eō cōnsiliō profecti sunt, ut cum Indīs finitimīs aut pācem facerent,

3. finitimō: *i.e.* to the burned town.

4. frūgēs: frūx, frūgis, *F.*, fruit (of the earth); pl, *crop.* — belli sēdem: *i.e.* the base of operations.

5. iūmenta: iūmentum, -ī, N., beast of burden. — multōs: see the note on ratī, p. 82, l. 14.

12. arbitrātus, etc.: use but one part. in the English sentence.

13. incidit: incidō, 3, -cidi, fall into (in + cadō).

14. rīvus: brook.

19. octōve: *i.e.* octō + ve

22. eōdem bellō: for syntax cf. primō bellō, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eis indicerent bellum, si Philippum adiuvare perseverarent. E scaphis egressi, per agros contendebant coloni, cum subito ululatus auditus est, et barbari impetu repentino milites ad litus se recipere coegerunt: nam in eo quoque proelio Indi numero erant multo superiores; dux enim colonorum quindecim tantum milites secum tum habebat.

Is autem, vir summae constantiae, locum idoneum nactus, suos hortatus est ne se animo dēmitterent, et ipse 10 acriter dimicavit. Dum res sic geritur, animadvertit forte unum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nullo modo pugnare posset. Quo viso, hominem iussit lapides comportare, qui pro munitione usui essent: quod cum iste faceret, sagitta subito lapidem percussit, quem manibus 15 ferebat; quo miraculo permotus (nam vitam a diis ita servatam esse existimabat), animos homo resumpsit, summaque virtute una cum ceteris pugnavit.

Brevi tela colonorum deficere coeperunt; sed navis adventu opportunō servati sunt. Dux tamen, cum nolle 20 Indos putare se timore discessisse, etiam tum in agris paulum moratus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad fontem paulo ante reliquerat.

1. eis: cf. the note on Britannis, p. 92, l. 7.

4. ad: toward.

8. locum: position.

9. animo: for syntax, cf. the more familiar phrase, animo dēmissus.

11. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

12. quō: neut. — lapidēs: lapis, -idis, M., stone.

13. prō: as, or for. — ūsuī: cf. p. 89, l. 8. — essent: note the

mood. — iste: the soldier.

14. manibus: cf. p. 7, l. 9.

15. mirāculō: mirāculum, -i, N., providence, lit. strange happening.

16. animōs: courage. — resūpsit: resūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, recover.

19. cum nolle: translate by a partic. phrase.

20. timōre: abl. of cause.

21. petasum: petasus, -i, M., broad-brimmed hat.

LESSON 84

Burned at the Stake

Dē crudelitāte Indōrum multa narrantur. Sicut, cum oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallīs barbarisque esset expugnātum, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī essent, hostēs cum captivīs miseris cōnfestim domum cōtendērunt. Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captivīs, homō obēsus, quī onus grave ferre coactus tardius sequēbātur, sē posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēposuit atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hic autem ab Indis brevī repertus, veste detractā per nivem nūdus prōgredi est coactus; quō modō usque ad noctem iter factum est. Tum barbarī, captivō ad arborem religātō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant, quō diūtius cruciārētur. Quīn etiam, nē hōc quidem contentī, frūsta abscidērunt viscerum, ut cruciātū captivī oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent ridentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. *amplius*: *i.e.* *more (than)*; cf. such expressions as "above a thousand."

6. *obēsus* (-a, -um): *stout*. — *tardius*: absol. compar.

7. *onus*: onus, -eris, N., *load*.

9. *hic*: the adv. — *veste*: *i.e.* *vestmentō*.

11. *iter factum est*: translate by an active form.

12. *ignem*: *the fire*. — *admovēbant*: *kept moving up*.

13. *redūcēbant*: *sc. eum (i.e. ignem)* For the force of this imperfect, cf. *rapiebant*, p. 7, l. 17.

14. *quō*: replacing *ut*, as it regularly does when the purpose clause contains a comparative. — *cruciārētur*: *cruciō*, 1, (*keep in*) *torture*. — *hōc*: (neut.) noun.

15. *contentī*: *contentus*, -a, -um, with abl., *content (with)*. — *frūsta*: not *frustrā*. — *viscerum*: *viscus*, -eris, N., (sing. and pl.) *flesh*.

16. *pāscerent*: *pāscō*, 3, *pāvi*, *pāstus*, with abl., *feed . . . (upon)*. Strictly, *cruciātū* is abl. of means.

17. *deesset*: what is the literal force of the word (*dē* + *sum*)?

mortui in favillam residere passi sunt, quō postea maiore amici dolore afficerentur, cum eius cāsum vidērent miserrimum.

LESSON 85

An Early Morning Surprise

Olim Galli Indique castellum quoddam hieme expugnāre
5 cōstituerant. Quārē per nivem altam summō labōre prō-
gressi, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō
castra collocāvērunt; deinde, impedimentis praesidiō pau-
cis relictis, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnitiōnēs pede-
temptim accessērunt. Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam
10 faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnis audirētur;
quam ob rem ab imperātore iussi erant paulum prōgredi,
tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredi, ut strepi-
tus exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventō-
rum vidērētur. At nihil suspicābantur colōnī; quīn etiam
15 custōdēs ipsī somnō gravissimō quiescēbant. Itaque hostēs
facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt; nix enim ūnā ex parte
tam alta fuit, ut mūnitiōnēs vix exstārent. Tum dēmum,
ululātū acrī sublātō, barbarī colōnōs perterritōs cōnfestim dē-
trāxērunt ē lectis, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. mortui: as noun (gen. masc.). — favillam: favilla, -ae, f., embers. — residere: residō, 3, -sēdi, sink down. — quō: cf. p. 101, l.

14. — maiore: (all the) greater.

2. amici: nom. pl.

4. hieme: abl. of time when or within which.

7. paucis: as (masc.) noun.

8. exāctā: from exigō; construe with vigiliā, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. gelū: gelus, -ūs, m., frost. —

rigidam: rigidus, -a, -um, crusted. lit. stiff.

10. nē: note the nature of the governing verb.

13. facientis: modifying exercitūs. — sonus: pred. nom. with vidērētur (sc. esse). — tantum: the adv.

16. ūnā ex parte: cf. omnibus ex partibus, p. 44, l. 6.

17. exstārent: exstō, 1, —, project, or appear (above).

19. caedēs. etc. cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potiti sunt atque ad vesperum, caede incendiisque aliquandō dēfessi, sē ad silvā contulērunt. Victōria tamen nōn incruenta pāta erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra; 5 quōrum ūnum cum barbari expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur, tēlis inde coniectis multi interfecti erant.

LESSON 86

Some Very Distinguished Geese

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Galli antiqui abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs vicissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent. Primō 10 interdiū hostēs adorti sunt, summāque audaciā saxa aspera ascendērunt; sed Rōmāni dēsuper eōrum aciem tam facile tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam postea idem audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum 15 esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibi inopia) sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōstituērunt. Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucis ante diēbus

1. praedā: for syntax, cf. victōriā, p. 95, l. 11. — ad: toward.

2. aliquandō: i.e. dēmum.

3. incruenta: incruentus, -a, -um, lit. bloodless; translate freely. — pāta erat: from pariō.

5. quōrum: neut.

7. Galli: as on p. 52, l. 12. — antiqui: antiquus, -a, -um, ancient.

8. cum: after. — exercitūs: note the ū.

9. ipsam: proper. The Romans were so demoralized that

they made no attempt to hold any part of Rome other than the lofty and isolated Capitol.

10. interdiū: in contrast to noctū, l. 16. — hostēs: subject of the verb.

11. dēsuper: adv., from above.

12. idem audērent: repeated the venture; lit. what?

14. deinde: later.

15. nec: and yet . . . not.

17. sēmitā: abl. of way by which (sēmita, -ae, F., footpath).

Gallus quidam forte animadverterat, tertiā ferē vigiliā ūnus miles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuvābat, illi rursus aliōs. Quō modō Galli complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnerunt, ut custōdēs nihil sentirent; quī etiam nē canēs quidem excitātī sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacri clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānis salūti fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōstantiae, sonō acri audītō, comitēs ad arma vocāns cōnfestim in primum Gallum impetum fēcit ācerrimum, eumque dē saxō prōiecit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētrimentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coāctī, in castra maestī sē recēpērunt.

LESSON 87

An Army of Two

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsi sunt colōnī eis in bellis, quae cum Britannis et Indis gesserunt. Sicut olim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē nāvis Britannica adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in ripā forte stābant liberī duo; quī veritī nē, si agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium

2. inermis (-is, -e): *without (his) arms*, lit. *unarmed*.

3. sequentēs: acc. masc., *those following*. — illi: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. summum: *the top of*; cf. the use of *primā*, p. 22, l. 7.

6. ānserēs: ānser, -eris, M., *goose*. — sacri: sacer, -era, -erum, with gen., *sacred (to)*. — clangōrem: clangor, -ōris, M., *cry*.

7. ēdidērunt: from ēdō (not edō).

8. M.: *i.e.* Mārcus.

11. cāsū: *fall*. — dēturbāvit: dēturbō, 1, *carry off (one's) feet*.

12. cōnātū dēsistere: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. longum est: *'twould be a long (tale)*; cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of *possum*, e.g. p. 41, l. 7.

17. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. exspectāssent: *should wait for*; lit. *should have waited for*.

sērō adferrētur, cōstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsi dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat parva. Itaque liberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrissent, armīs
5 cōnfēstim arreptīs, portā posticā in silvam clam ēgressi sunt; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armīs prope-
rāvērunt. Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britannī, quī cōnspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant, manum magnam in aedēs convēnisse ratī, pedetemptīm
10 tamen prōgredi perseverāvērunt: dum vērō praeter prō-
munturiū nāvigant, subitō alter ex liberis inmisit tēlum ac gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit; quī cum prōlapsus gu-
bernācula ē manibus dīmīssisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine se-
cundō ferri coepta est. Quam ob rem Britannī, sē sic omnis
15 interficī posse arbitrātī, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

LESSON 88

Horatius at the Bridge

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore similī sed maiōre, quod Rōmae antiquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum esse trāditur. Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset
20 Rōmānis indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentinō captum est

1. sērō: adv., *late*; in this context, *too late*.

3. domum: (*their*) *home*. — posita erat: *had been built*.

5. portā: *door*; for syntax, cf. sēmītā, p. 103, l. 17. — posticā: posticus, -a, -um, *back*.

7. idem: note the gender, and cf. p. 103, l. 12. — saepius: *over and over again*; what use of the compar.?

8. quicquam: neut. of quisquam (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

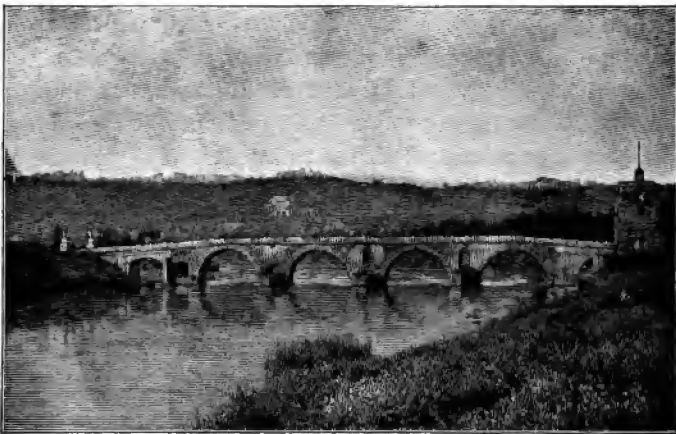
11. alter ex: *one of* (the two)

13. secundō: cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. coepta est: cf. the note on coeptus est, p. 66, l. 12.

18. Rōmae: note that this is a town name.

20. Iāniculum: a hill on the west bank of the Tiber, opposite Rome.



PŌNS

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

lōmānique perterriti trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celerimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, qui sentiēbat hostēs, isi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potitūrōs, ivis suōs hortātus est ut pontem ignī ferrōque perrumpēnt, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amicis fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum ēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad primum aditum pontis fortiter rōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōstitit. Quā audāciā obstupefacti, hostēs primō paulum morātī sunt, deinde impetum criōrem fēcērunt; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque vōciferāns, summā virtūte dimicābat, nec locō cessit priusquam post tergum pōns perruptus est. Tum in Tiberim rēmātus dēsiliit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit, quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amicōs luo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sic memoriae trāditum est; Līvius autem (ā quō haec iarrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam ideī habuisse palam cōfiteōtur.

1. quam celerrimē: translate freely.

3. pōns (pontis, M.): *bridge*. — esset perruptus: cf. *expectās-*ent, p. 104, l. 18; for mood, cf. *moveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

4. ferrō: ferrum, -ī, N., *iron*; *reely, the ax.*

5. cum: *while*.

6. pudor (-ōris, M.): *shame*.

7. patiēbātur: we would say "would not allow"; cf. vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. — aditum: aditus, -ūs, M., *approach*. — pontis: cf. l. 3.

8. obstupefacti: obstupecatus, -a, -um, part., *amazed*.

10. minās: minae, -ārum, F.: *threats*.

11. vōciferāns: vōciferor, 1, *shout out*. — dimicābat: *fought on*. — locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. dēsiliit: dēsiliō, 4, -silui, *leap down*.

14. quō: the adv.; cf. p. 47, l. 2. — exiguā parte, etc.: translate by a "while" clause.

16. memoriae, etc.: cf. p. 85, l. 6, and translate freely. — haec: neuter.

17. apud posterōs: *i.e. in the following generations*; lit. what? — plūs: see multus. — glōriae: partitive gen.

18. cōfiteōtur: cōfiteor, 2, -fessus sum, *admits*.

LESSON 89

A Favor Repaid

Ōlim Indus ignōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus esset, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quīdam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōfectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque pecūniam solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgit pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōditūrum.

Paucis post annis colōnus ipse ab Indis captus est et in Canadam dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe lignātiōnis causā missus est. Ōlim, cum procul ab aedibus laborāret, subitō in cōspectum vēnit Indus quīdam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium venīret. Colōnus haud invitus pollicitus est; tum insidiās veritus cōsiliū mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōstitutum. Paucis post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātum iret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequi iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsi timor eius occupābat animum, finemque itineris omninō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, poststrēmō ad oppidum pervēnērunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, "Ego is sum," inquit, "quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsis cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiām."

1. ēsuriēns (-entis, part.): hungry. — cum: *inasmuch as*.

4. cōfectum: *exhausted*. — caupōnam: caupōna, -ae, F., *mistress of (the) inn*.

8. lignātiōnis: cf. the use of the gerundive with causā to express purpose.

14. Indus: *the Indian*.

15. dēstinātum: dēstinātus, -a, -um, *designated*.

16. sē: obj. of sequi.

17. eius: modifier of animum.

18. finem: contrast finē.

20. ut suum: *as his own*.

21. is: *the man*.

22. grātiām: contrast the meaning of grātiās, l. 5.

LESSON 90

An Earthquake in Colonial Times

Cum iam colōnī plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant, ōlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravi quiēscunt, repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est. Sonō horrendō ad auris adlātō, colōnī graviter permōtī ē lectīs cōnfēstim exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactāri; quī etiam erant quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundī ultima aut certē adesset. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdebantque nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem bovēs, cum mūgītūs maximōs ēderent, omnis in partēs per-
10 territī cucurrērunt.

Quīdam cōnfīrmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur. Diēbus proximīs complūrēs cōnsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs;
15 multique hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, propter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt. Trāditum quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humī dēpressus erat, postea hieme interdum glaciem factam

3. mōtus (-ūs, M.): lit. *movement*.

5. labefactāri: labefactō, 1, *shake down*. — erant quī: *there were (some) who*. The subjunctive is used regularly after any tense of sunt quī or nēmō est quī.

6. mundi: mundus, -ī, M., *the world*.

8. autem: *moreover*.

9. cum . . . ēderent: note the ē, and translate by a partic. phrase. — mūgītūs: mūgītus, -ūs, M., *bel-
lowing*.

11. quīdam: here, noun.—per: *along*.

12. hiātus (-ūs, M.): with gen., *cleft (in)*, lit. *yawning (of)*.

13. levis (-is, -e): *ligh*: (of weight). — efferēbātur: *i.e. kept rising*; lit. *what?*

16. cultum: cultus, -ūs, M., *worship*.

17. humī: *into the ground*: what is the commoner meaning?

18. dēpressus erat: dēprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *sink*. — glaciem factam esse: *i.e. froze solid*.

esse, quamquam antea omni tempore anni uberius fluere consueverat.

LESSON 91

Evils of the Slave Trade

Gentēs, quae Āfricam incolunt, quondam inter sē saepe dīmicābant, captivique ā negōtiātōribus empti, nāvibus in
5 terrās sunt trānsportāti diversās, ubi dominis novis trāditī
summīs labōribus aetātem in agrīs agēbant. Dum autem
nāvigant, condiciō captivōrum miserrima erat; nam trā-
ditum est dominōs, quī quaestum volēbant facere quam
maximum neque aliud cūrābant, valētūdīnī salūtique ser-
10 vōrum operam minimam dedisse.

Quī igitur miseri in locīs angustis foedisque procul ā lūce
caelīque spiritū saepe claudēbantur. Quin etiam interdum,
ut nāvēs quam plūrimōs portārent, inter sē vīculīs iūcti,
supīnī diēs noctēsque iacere coacti sunt, spatiō minimō
15 tantum relictō, ubi pauci vice alternā sē exercere possent:
quōrum cruciātus, tempestāte coortā, maximus erat; tum
enim foris omnibus clausis vix respirāre poterant, multique

1. *quamquam*: *whereas*. —
uberius: adv. (positive not in use),
very freely.

4. *nāvibus*: *by ship*.
6. *labōribus*: translate as sing.
— *aetātem*: cf. *vītam* with the same
verb, p. 61, l. 13. — *dum* . . . *nāvi-*
gant, etc.: *freely, it was, however,*
while they were on shipboard,
that, etc.

9. *aliud*: *anything else*.

11. *quī* . . . *miseri*: *the poor*
wretches. — *locis*: *quarters*. —
foedis: *foedus*, -a, -um, *foul*.

12. *caeli*: (*open*) *air*. — *spiri-*
tū: *spiritus*, -ūs, M., *breath*.

13. *inter sē*: *i.e. to one another*.
— *iūcti*: *iungō*, 3, *iūnxī*, *iūctus*,
bind.

15. *pauci*: *i.e. small groups*. —
vice alternā, abl. phrase, *in turn*.
— *exercere*: *exerceō*, 2, -ui, -itus,
exercise. — *possent*: note the mood.
16. *quōrum*: (*but*) *their*. —
tempestāte coortā: translate by a
“when” clause.

17. *foris*: *forus*, -i, M., *gangway*.
— *respirāre*: *respirō*, 1, *breathe*.

moriēbantur. Quō modō saepe factum est ut vivī, vinculis retentī, inter mortuōs iacere cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

LESSON 92

A Pirate Outdone

Illis temporibus, cum servī plūrimī ex Āfricā in terrās
5 diversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūratiōnem
inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut coniectō in
vincta aut interfectō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō
modō pīrātae factī secundum litus Āfricae ultrō citrōque
nāvigābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

10 Quōrum ē numerō quidam in portum olim vectī longin-
quum, ubi in litore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica,
lēgātum tēla aurumque ē castris ad sē mittere summā
superbiā iussērunt. Ille vērō, vir maximae cōstantiae,
aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter mis-
15 sūrum, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset. Tum pīrātae
īrā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātus Britan-
nicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castris sē recipere coāc-
tus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum
custōdibus cōnfēstim ad ducem misērunt. Iste scilicet

1. moriēbantur: cf. rapiēbant,
p. 7, l. 17.—factum est ut: cf.
p. 74, l. 15.

3. solverent . . . abicerent:
translate both the subjunctives
"should."

5. marī: *the high seas*.

8. pīrātae: predicate nom.

9. nāvēs: *commerce*.

10. ē: *of*.

12. aurum: do not confuse
aurum with auris.

14. libenter: cf. the note on
p. 93, l. 9.

15. accessisset: cf. esset per-
ruptus, p. 107, l. 3.

16. īrā commōtī: *freely, filled
with wrath*.

18. cum custōdibus: *i.e. under
guard*.—ducem: (*their*) chief.

hominem horrendis exsecratiōibus accēpit, quod animō tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecratiōibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs ei salūtī fuit; nam pirātae cēteri, novā rē dēlectāti, cachinnōs sustulērunt maximōs et ultrō vitam hominī concessērunt, quod male dicendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

LESSON 93

Colonization in Africa

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur, colōniās in Āfricam statuērunt dēdūcendās esse, in quās libertinī mitterentur; illisque temporibus erant etiam qui servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sic in patriam reduci posse existimārent.

Colōniae, quae primō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae, et saepe cum incolis Āfricānis pugnandum erat. Sicut olim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō insulāque emptīs

1. exsecratiōibus: exsecratiō, -ōnis, F., curse.

5. novā rē: at the unexpected turn (of events); abl. of cause. — dēlectāti: dēlectātus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted. — cachinnōs: cachinnus, -i, M., roar of laughter.

7. dicendō: abl. of specification.

9. mala: as (neut.) noun; cf. the somewhat similar use of the neut. bona. — emptiōne servōrum: freely, traffic in slaves; lit. what?

— oriuntur: orior, 4, ortus sum, arise (cf. coorior).

10. in Āfricam . . . dēdūcendās esse: freely, ought to be planted in Africa.

11. libertinī: libertinus, -i, M., freedman. — mitterentur: note the mood.

12. patriam: i.e. (their) rightful country. — posse: could.

13. existimārent: cf. the note on erant quī, p. 109, l. 5.

14. eō: the adv.; for meaning, cf. quō, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in litore condidissent, nātiōnēs proximae molestē ferēbant peregrīnōs illic cōnsēdisse; verēbantur enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum (quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) mox tōta reprimētur. Quārē, armātis undique convocātis, in oppidum colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Intrā mūnitiōnēs erant dux aeger et trīgintā quinque tantum hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illi, cum in proeliō quīndecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfectī essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniēcērunt. Paucis autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbaris redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt. Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulātim numerō vīribusque aucta est.

LESSON 94

A Prize Won and Lost

15 Ōlim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrāneum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vidērunt; quō visō, praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus, suōs summā celeritāte insequi iussit. Dum autem vēlis rēmisque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditis
20 adhaesit, neque ūllō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. molestē ferēbant, etc.: *i.e. were much wrought up that*, etc.
— illic: adv., *there*.

4. tōta: translate as if an adv.

6. intrā: *behind*.

8. cum: *after*.

9. ipsōrum: *their*.

10. occupātōs: *busied*.

12. nē . . . quidem: see the Vocab.

13. haec quidem colōnia: *freely*,

this particular colony; lit. *what?* (Do not confuse *quidem* with *quidam*.)

14. vīribus: contrast the meaning of *vis* and *vīrēs* (see the Vocab.).

19. rēmis: *rēmus*, -ī, M., *oar*. Roman ships often had both *sails* and *oars*, and *vēlis rēmisque* came to be a standing phrase for "at full speed."

secundum litus nūtiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique convēnerunt, et Americānī, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coācti sunt.

Quā victoriā partā, rēx pīrātārum, veritus nē aliae nāvēs longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs mūnitiōnēs firmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātis captivī tantā diligentīā custodiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noctēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent.

Eis nautīs, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniā dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perficī; illi autem pecūniā acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbriī per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānis saepe intulērunt. Tum mirīs modis poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehementer ut sanguis exiret. Interdum autem, pecūniā lictōribus datā, storeīs interpositīs nautae verberābantur, cum interim lēgātus huic rei praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdīcābat hominēs cruciātūs patī maximōs.

LESSON 95

A Prize Won and Lost (Continued)

Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs dētrūserant; quam ob rem captivī scilicet etiam molestius

1. oppugnandī causā: freely, to the attack. What part of the verb is oppugnandī?

2. levārent: levō, 1, *lighten*.

10. vellet: *he was anxious (that)*. — mātūrrimē: from mātūrē.

11. prōfūdērunt: prōfundō, 3, fūdī, -fūsus, *squander*. — ēbriī: *drunken*, -ī, -um, *intoxicated*.

13. mirīs modīs: transl. as sing. — hominis: modifying pedum, l. 14.

14. supīnī: (*placed flat*) on his back. — sola: solum, -ī, N., *sole* (of the foot). — verberābantur: verberō, 1, *beat*. — idque: freely, and that too; strictly, id is subject of fiēbat supplied.

15. sanguis (-inis, M.): *blood*. — exiret: freely, *flowed*. — lictōribus: lictor, -ōris, M., *policeman*.

16. storeīs: storea, -ae, F., *mat*.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse: itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam mīsīt, quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, quī eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō veniret praedamque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litteris acceptis, suspiciōnis vitandae causā liburnicam mīsīt; quae nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pirātae quī in eā custodiās agēbant, veritī nē liburnica in nāvem inlīderētur, magnā vōce guber-
 10 nātōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pirātae liburnicam vagantem propius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā armātī gladiīs dēstrictīs in nāvem longam ascendērunt
 15 atque in hostīs perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Pirātae fortissimē dimicāvērunt; brevī autem paene ad ūnum occisī sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent, ignēs multis simul locīs nāvi longae Americānī ipsī admōvērunt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātīs, liburnicā salvā ad
 20 classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsum classe est oppugnātum, atque invitus rēx pirātārum captivōs Americānōs incolumēs abire patī coāctus est.

3. quibus: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. cīvibus auxiliō: cf. the same construction with the verb sum.

6. liburnicam: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. eā: i.e. nāve longā.

9. magnā: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. respōnsō: noun.—dēceptī:

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus, *throw off (one's) guard*.—vagamem: *erratic*; lit. what? (cf. vagantēs, p. 114, l. 12).—propius: absol. compar., *very close*.

14. dēstrictis: dēstrictus, -a, -um, part., *drawn*.

19. quattuor: as noun.—salvā: i.e. incolumī; translate the abl. by "with."

22. invitus: translate by a phrase.—incolumēs: *scot free*.

LESSON 96

A Mysterious Disappearance

Colōniis multis iam in Americam dēductis, Galli etiam in Indōrum finēs sacerdotēs mittere cōsuēverant, nōn solum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed etiam ut illī amicī essent, si quandō cum Britannis dimiscandum esset. Quī hominēs sāncti interdum maximis in periculis versābantur; sicut ōlim in regiōnibus longinquis, quae postea civitātis Noveborācēnsis pars factae sunt, sacerdotēs complūrēs, quī cum negōtiātōribus paucis castellum parvum ibi tenēbant, subitō certiōrēs factī sunt Indōs peregrinos omnīs occidere cōstituisse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdotēs, neque eis ūllae erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadam veherentur. Itaque clam intrā castellum scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde, postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad convivium vocāvērunt. Illi convēnērunt laeti; cumque ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdotēs apposuerant, domum regressi in tabernāculis mox sōpiti iacēbant. Tum Galli silentiō scaphās ad ripam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō ad Canadam versus profecti sunt.

Māne Indi vidērunt castellum clausum; quā rē animadversā, primō sacerdotēs vōta facere crēdebant. Postremō tamen, fenestris ingressi, intus esse nēmīnem

1. colōniis . . . dēductis:
translate by a "when" clause.

4. si quandō: cf. p. 54, l. 4.

5. sāncti: sānctus, -a, -um,
pious.

6. versābantur: freely, *were exposed (to)*.

11. eis: dat. case.

14. omnia: note the gender.

15. convivium: convivium, -i, N., *feast*. Cf. the illustration on the opposite page.

21. vōta facere: *to be at prayers* (vōtum, -i, N., *prayer*).

22. fenestris: cf. the note on p. 76, l. 3.



CONVIVIVM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallīs ūllās esse scaphās, eōsque arte magicā effūgissee iūdicābant.

LESSON 97

Early Days in Liberia

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Liberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis novae civitatī inimicissimī erant. Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfri autem quae-stum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitudō barbarōrum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audita est. Sed in oppidō arma multa apud sacerdotem quendam condita erant; quī, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, quī eisdem in aedibus habitābant, tēla cōnfestim in hostis inmittere coepit, multōsque vulnerāvit. Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comitibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī circum aedēs in terrā dēfixi erant. Illum autem ūnus ex fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarique ceterī, hōc cāsū perterritī, cōnfestim vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in silvam sē contulērunt. At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem mortuum in colōnōrum potestāte relictum, corporis quaerendī

1. timōre maximō: *to their great alarm*; lit. what?

4. Liberia: note the significance of the name (cf. libertās).

6. emptiōnem servōrum: cf. p. 112, l. 9. — reprimendam: translate the gerundive "must."

9. viam: (*their*) way. — rumpere: translate as if a present part. (rumpō, 3, rūpi, ruptus, lit. break).

10. apud: *at the house of*; what are other meanings of this word?

11. fabrīs: *faber, -brī, M., carpenter*.

12. tēla . . . inmittere coepit: *opened fire*.

14. pālōs: *pālus, -ī, M., stake*; pl., *palisade*.

19. in . . . potestāte: *freely, in the hands*. — relictum: *sc. esse*.

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in aedēs fecērunt ācerrimum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dīmīcātum esset, subitō proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in silvam regressī sunt.

LESSON 98

An Experience with Robbers

5 Quondam in ripis illius flūminis, quī linguā Indōrum pater aquarū appellābātur, pīrātae multī in spēluncīs latēbant, ut nāvigia spoliārent, quae illis temporibus mercibus variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvigābant; quīn etiam quōdam locō castra parva fecerant, ibique summā audāciā
10 nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum olim negōtiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum nactus, vēlis passis incolumis est praetervectus; quī autem ad ripam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvigāvit. Interim vērō pīrātae,
15 quī nāvem vīderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam pulchram dimittere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant secūtī, et locō opportūnō in insidiis iam latēbant; quī, nāve

1. identidem: adv., *time and again*.

2. hōram amplius: cf. p. 101, l. 3, and the note.

3. proeliō: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. quī: for gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — linguā: we would say, "*in the language*."

6. spēluncīs: spēlunca, -ae, F., *cave*.

7. mercibus: merx, mercis, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise*.

9. ibi: *at that point*.

10. vel: *even*. — maximās: *of the largest size*.

12. nactus: *freely, with the aid of*; lit. *what?* — passis: see the Vocab. under pandō.

13. duo diēs: *for the space of two days*.

15. praetereuntem: from praetereō.

16. rēctā: rēctus, -a, -um, *straight*, or *direct*. The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.

ad ripam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs ad castra sua nāvem reducere coegērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam simulābat dominum sibi iniuriās intulisse, sēque gau-
 5 dēre eum captum esse: quō modō in amicitiam pīrātārum inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse futūrum. Sed ōlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus repente proximum pīrātā in flūmen prōiēcit; quō signō nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pīrātae ad
 10 ripam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōnfestim solvit ac summā celeritatē domum profectus est.

LESSON 99

The Capture of Stony Point

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellis complūribus, quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, ca-
 15 stella sua magnō esse in periculō ratī, castra statim sibi dēlenda esse existimābant. Quam ad rem cōficiendam dēlēctus est quīdam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī antea facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātis, Americānī, per silvās clam pro-
 20 fectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebris cōn-

1. captōs: translate as if cēpērunt et.

3. coquus (-ī, M.): *cook*. — ūsus est: *put into execution*.

6. inrēpsit: inrēpō, 3, -rēpsī, *worm (one's) way*.

7. omnibus: *i.e. for the whole party*.

8. quō signō: cf. p. 57, l. 16.

10. nandō: cf. p. 12, l. 17

15. magnō: modifier of periculō.

16. dēlenda esse: for the translation, cf. the note on *reprimendam*, p. 118, l. 6.

18. ausus erat: *freely, had performed*.

20. sōlis: sōl, sōlis, M., *sun*. — occāsū: abl. of time when (*occāsus*, -ūs, M., lit. *setting*).

sēderunt, ibique hōrās complūris morātī sunt; tum tertiā ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce ūterentur servō Afrō, quī Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo militēs, quī vestimenta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspicantēs hominēs propius accēdere passi sunt; Pompēius enim erat omnibus nōtus, quod antea ad castra saepe vēnerat ut vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnum eī ā Britannīs interdum datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā militibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et fortissimē dimicāverunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānīs, quī brevī deīēcērunt opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā dīlīgentiā ibi effēcerant.

LESSON 100

Nathan Hale

Postquam Britannī Longā insulā tōtā potītī sunt, Vasingtō tamen Novī Eborāci aliquamdiū morātus est, cum discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliīs hostium certior factus

2. cum . . . ūterentur: translate by a partic. phrase. — duce: (as) *guide*.

3. quī . . . appellābātur: *named*.

4. praegrediēbantur: praegredior, 3, -gressus sum, *go on ahead*.

5. nihil suspicantēs: *i.e. without suspicion*.

6. propius: cf. the force of the word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. omnibus: as (masc.) noun dat. case.

8. sīgnum: *countersign*.

9. datum erat: *had been communicated*. — factum est ut: cf. p. 74, l. 15. — sine strepitū: *without (making any) disturbance*.

12. concurrērunt: sc. Britannī.

18. Novī Eborāci: locative case; cf. domī and humī.

19. factus esset: cf. *expectās* sent, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbat, quī veste mūtātā castra Britannica speculandī causā adire vellet; postremō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns repertus est: quī, vestimentis magistrī puerōrum sūmptis, liburnicā vectus ad insulam incolumis pervēnit. Ubi Britannī, quī nihil suspiciābantur, hominem liberē circum castra omnia ambulāre passi sunt. Ille autem diligenter faciēbat dēscriptiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent dētrimentō, sī in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scrīpsit.
 10 Tum paucīs post diēbus, rē bene cōfectā, ad locum rediit, unde ad continentem trānsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā perfugā quōdam cōspectus est, quī Britannōs sine morā dē eius latebris certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōfē-
 15 stim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet. Scaphā ē nāvi ad litus appulsā, lēgātus scilicet amīcōs adesse crēdēbat; quārē ē latebris palam prōgressus, in litore facile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannis capitis damnātus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam
 20 adesset, aequissimō animō “Hoc solum mē paenitet,” inquit, “quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar.”

1. ille: omit in translating. — qui . . . vellet: *willing*. — veste mūtātā: *i.e. in disguise*.

2. speculandī causā: *i.e. as a spy*; lit. *what?*

4. magistrī puerōrum: *a tutor*.

6. liberē: *adv., freely, or at will*.

8. dēscriptiōnēs: *dēscriptiō, -ōnis, F., (a) drawing (cf. scrībō)*. — commentāriōs: *commentārii, -ōrum, M., notes*.

9. dētrimentō: *dat. of service (cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4); translate freely*. — vēnisset: *cf. factus esset,*

p. 121, l. 19. — *Latīnē: adv., in Latin*.

11. trānsitūrus erat: *was to cross*.

18. is: omit in translating. — capitis damnātus: *cf. the note on p. 47, l. 16*.

19. moriendī: *freely, of execution*.

20. aequissimō: *fully composed*. — mē paenitet: *causes me regret (paenitet, 2, paenituit)*.

21. quod: *that*. — largiar: *subjunctive*. For the phrasing of the whole clause, *cf. p. 39, l. 17*.

STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

Unexpected Trouble

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut vīrēs militum cōservaret, exercitum in hiberna dēdūcēbat: nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperrimum est; quārē ille iūdicābat
5 aestāte sibi cum hostibus esse dimicandum, reliquōs autem annī mēnsēs in hibernis militēs retinendōs esse. Ōlim, cum trānsisset in Britanniam multōsque diēs cum incolis eius insulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentem rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā
10 summam esse frūmentī inopiam. Itaque exercitum in partēs complūrēs dīvisum in dīversis civitātibus hiemandi causā collocāvit.

1. cum: at the time when. — aestātem: not aetātem. The acc. may be rendered "throughout."

2. vīrēs: do not confuse vīs and vir.

3. dēdūcēbat: note the tense. — caelum: climate.

4. asperrimum: i.e. as compared with that of Italy. — ille: omit in translating.

6. Ōlim: freely, one year.

8. aestāte exāctā: freely, at the very end of the season; cf. vigiliā . . . exāctā, p. 102, l. 8.

9. siccitātem: siccitās, -ātis, F., drought.

11. dīvisum: freely, after dividing, etc.; lit. what? — in . . . collocāvit: quartered upon. — dīversis civitātibus: the tribes of

in factō, dux quidam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorix, cum
 tus tot in partēs divisus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēmum
 superārī posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō
 ortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostris,
 quītēs hostium cōnfēstim in fugam dedērunt. Quā
 iecti, Galli clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō au-
 gātī quī illis castris praeerant, extrā mūnitiōnēs nōn
 vērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorige colloquerentur.

LESSON 102

A Parley with the Enemy

colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus,
 Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō
 dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorige ageret.

cum extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressi essent, rēx cōfirmāvit
 ūniversōs cōstituisse eō ipsō diē omnia hiberna
 ris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alteri legiōni

re numerous, and more or
 lependent of one another.
 ling his force for the win-
 vas Caesar's idea, in view
 scanty crops, to distribute
 dely than usual among the
 ribes the burden of supply-
 grain needed by his soldiers.
 um: causal.

nginqua: this particular
 No. 4 on the map) was
 about two hundred miles
 Caesar's headquarters at
 briva.

etrīs: the story being told
 e point of view of the
 ..

5. quā spē: the same con-
 struction as with dēsistō (e.g.
 p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. castris: for syntax, cf.
 p. 58, l. 12.

8. eōs: men.

9. C.: i.e. Cāius (Gaius).—
 eques Rōmānus: a Roman knight,
 i.e. a member of the middle order
 in the Roman state.

10. Q.: i.e. Quintus.

12. rēx: i.e. Ambiorix.

13. ūniversōs: freely, gener-
 ally; lit. what?

14. nē qua: so that no; cf.
 the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.—
 legiō: legion (a body of about

subsidiō venire posset; sē tamen invītum castra oppugnāsse, sed voluntātī cēterōrum Gallōrum civitatem suam resistere nōn potuisse. "Nec tamen," inquit, "Caesaris in mē beneficiōrum immemor sum; itaque vōs magnopere hortor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima hiberna dēducātis. Magna enim manus Germānōrum Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitudīnī nūllō modō resistere poteritis. Quārē salūtī vestrae statim cōsultite." Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per finīs suōs incolumēs iter facere passūrum.

Quā ōratiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorix; nūntiī autem rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis verbis certiōrēs fēcērunt.

LESSON 103

Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp

Q. Sabinus et L. Cotta lēgātī, rē repentinā permōtī, ea verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn negligenda esse existimābant; itaque, cōsiliō convocātō, quid optimum factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūnī centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usually by a small detachment of cavalry, mostly foreign). In the camp attacked, the force amounted to a legion and a half; the other camps were manned by a legion apiece.

1. *subsidiō*: dat. of service.
2. *voluntātī*: voluntās, -ātis, F., wish; for syntax, see the Vocab. under resistō.

3. in mē (acc.): to me.

4. *immemor* (-oris, adj.): unmindful.

5. *vestrum*: vester, -tra, -trum, your.

7. *trānsiit*: has crossed.

12. *lēgātōs*: the commanders.

14. L.: i.e. Lūcius. — *lēgātī*: cf. l. 12.

15. *neglegenda*: negligō, 3, neglēxi, neglēctus, disregard, or ignore.

16. *cōsiliō*: council of war.

17. *factū*: supine, to do.—*eset*: subj. in indirect question.

18. *tribūnī* (sc. militum):

- dum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdicābant; cum enim castra mūnitissima essent, crēdebant sē Germānis facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōnibus subsidiō veniret. Sabinus autem, veritus nē Galli cum
 5 Germānis sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit; sciēbat enim Germānis magnō dolōri fuisse victōriās superiōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, qui tot contumeliās ā Rōmānis accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvis coniungere dubitatūrōs.
- 10 Ōrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta sententiae collēgae suī ācritē resisteret, Sabinus postrēmō irātus “Fiat,” inquit, “ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, qui mortis periculō magnopere terrear.”

LESSON 104

The Advice of the Enemy is Taken

- Quibus verbis commōti, omnēs statim ē cōsiliō surrēxērunt, lēgātōsque vehementer hortāti sunt nē suā pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcerent: neque enim ūllum

(*military*) *tribunes*. Of these there were six for each legion; in rank they stood next to the legion commander. — *centuriōnēs*: *centurions* (subordinate officers, ranking from captain down).

3. *legiōnibus*: *troops*.

6. *dolōri*: dat. of service. — *superiōrēs*: as on p. 79, l. 7.

8. *ā*: *at the hands of*. — *ē*: obj. of *coniungere*, l. 9. — *hoste*: sc. *Rōmānōrum*. — *quōvis*: from *quīvis*.

10. *in utramque partem*: freely, *pro and con*. — *cum* . . . *resisteret*: translate by a partic. phrase. —

sententiae: for syntax, cf. *Germānis*, l. 3.

11. *collēgae*: *collēga*, -ae, M., lit. *colleague*; here, *brother officer* (namely, Sabinus).

12. *fiat*: *let it be*. — *ut* . . . *vidētur*: as (*it*) seems best. — *is* . . . *quī*: cf. *eōs* . . . *quī*, p. 125, l. 8.

16. *rem*: *matters*. — *neque*: in combination with *enim* and other postpositive words, *neque* usually replaces *nōn*. In the translation of this particular clause, combine the negative with *ūllum* (= *nūllum*).

hostem sibi timendum esse, si modo omnēs idem probārent; in dissēsiōne autem nūllam esse spem.

Cum iam ad mediam noctem disputātum esset, tum dē-
 mum Sabinī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum
 5 iri militibus prōnūtiātum est. Cōsūmpta est vigiliis re-
 liqua pars noctis, cum militēs bona colligerent sua, nec
 satis scirent quid in hibernis relinquendum, aut quid sēcum
 portandum esset. Deinde primā lūce ē castris longissimō
 agmine maximisque impedimentis profecti sunt; plērique
 10 enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorigem omnia ea, quae dē
 Germānōrum adventū dixerat, mentitum esse, cum spēraret
 ita sē Rōmānōs ex hibernis ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, quī ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant
 lēgātōs cōstituisse cōnfestim castra movēre, in silvās
 15 paulum sē recēperant insidiisque locō idōneō collocātis
 adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

LESSON 105

The Romans are Ambushed

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum
 in magnam vallem dēscendisset, Galli subitō ē latebris

1. timendum esse: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (*dixerunt*) implied in *hortati sunt*, p. 127, l. 15. — modo: consult the Vocab. under *si*. — idem probārent: *i.e. should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. dissēsiōne: dissēnsiō, -ōnis, F., *disagreement*.

4. mōtum iri: what part of the verb?

5. vigiliis: we would say "*in wakefulness*." What is another meaning of this word?

6. colligerent: colligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctus, *get together*. Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. relinquendum: sc. *esset*; for mood, cf. *esset*, p. 126, l. 17. — aut: we would say "*and*."

8. longissimō: and, therefore, *straggling*.

11. cum spēraret: cf. the cum-clause in l. 6.

- Erumpere, atque iniquissimō nostris locō proelium committeretur. Sabinus, quī adhūc nihil suspicātus erat, ācerimō hostium impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnīs partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est : Cotta
 5 vērō, quī cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hibernīs nōn discēdendum esse, virum magnum interim sē praebēbat ; omnibus enim modis commūnī cōsulēbat salūtī, ac fortissimē officia et īmperātōris et militis simul praestābat.
- 10 Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile prōvidērī poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgātī suis imperāvērunt ut, impedimentis relictīs, in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōnsilium (etsi eōdem imperātōrēs summī īn eius modī cāsū ūtī solent) tum haud fēliciter accidit ; nam
 15 hōstēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedimenta ā Rōmānis relictā esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dimicāvērunt.

1. nostris : dat. case ; construe with iniquissimō. — committeretur : note the termination, which indicates the case of proelium.

3. ācerimō : translate the superlative "exceedingly."

4. cohortēs : ten cohorts constituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14, note).

5. haec : neut. — ob eamque causam : the prep. ob does not combine with -que, which is, therefore, passed on to the following word.

7. virum magnum : pred. acc. — praebēbat : praebē, 2, -ul, -itus, show.

8. commūnī . . . salūtī : for syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8. — et . . . et : correlative.

9. militis : a soldier (in the ranks).

10. longitūdinem : longitūdō, -inis, F., extent (cf. longus).

11. prōvidērī : note the last letter of the word. — quōque : from quisque. — faciendum : cf. the note on p. 128, l. 1.

12. in orbem : i.e. so as to form a circle.

13. eōdem : referring to cōnsilium.

14. modī : sort.

16. etiam ācrius : (all the) more fiercely.

LESSON 106

The Enemy Prevail

Accēdēbat ut militēs multī ab signīs discēderent et bona sua cārissima ab impedimentis arripere cōnārentur : cēteri autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere iussit nec propius accēdere. Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā celeritatē fugiēbant hostēs; cum autem cohors rursus ad
10 aciem sē recipere coeperat, tum Galli, undique coorti, nostrōs ācerimē premēbant.

Cum sic ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset, T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā graviter vulnerātus est; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns,
15 dum circumventō filiō subsidiō venit, est interfectus; ac L. Cotta lēgātus, cum militēs hortārētur, fundā percussus est. Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabīnus, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset, interpretem suum

1. accēdēbat: impersonal use, *it was added (that)*; freely, *matters were made worse by the fact (that)*.
— ab signīs: *i.e.* from their places in the line. Each cohort had its own special standards.

4. quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat: cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on the pluperfect.

5. ab: cf. the use of this prep. in the phrase ā tergō. — cadēbat: note the tense.

7. propius: absol. compar.

8. excesserat: excēdō, 3, -cessī,

-cessum est, *move out*. — orbe: cf. p. 129, l. 12.

10. aciem: *i.e.* orbem. — coorti: freely, *closing in*.

12. hōram octāvam: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. T.: *i.e.* Titus.

15. circumventō: translate by a relative clause.

16. fundā: funda, -ae, *F., sling*; see the illustration on p. 140.

18. suōs: reflexive to Ambiorīgem. — interpretem: *interpreter*, -etis, C., *interpreter*.

Cn. Pompēium ad eum mīsit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parceret.

LESSON 107

Annihilation of the Roman Force

Rēx respondit nihil Rōmānīs timendum esse, sēque Sabīni ipsius salūtem praestāre, si ille ad colloquium venire vellet. Quō audītō, Cotta tamen negāvit ad armātum hostem sē itūrum, atque in eō perseverāvit. Sabīnus autem tribūnōs militum centuriōnēsque quī adstābant sē sequī iussit; cumque propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, pārūt, ac suis ut idem facerent imperāvit. Dum autem ibi dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt, Sabinus paulatim circumventus ā Gallīs occīsus est.

Tum vērō hostēs sustulērunt ululātum, impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbāvērunt. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns periit cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in hiberna recēpērunt, unde erant nūper ēgressī. E quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homō magnārum virium, cum cōfertifsimā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcīt, ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns interceptus est.

Rōmānī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinuerunt;

1. Cn.: *i.e.* Cnaeus (*Gnaeus*).—
rogātum: cf. *petitum*, p. 95, l. 13.

4. *vellet*: cf. the note on *ad-*
moveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. *eō*: (neut.) noun.

8. *propius*: with the force of
a prep., *quite near to*.

9. *idem*: note the gender.

14. *cum*: *i.e.* *ūnā cum*.

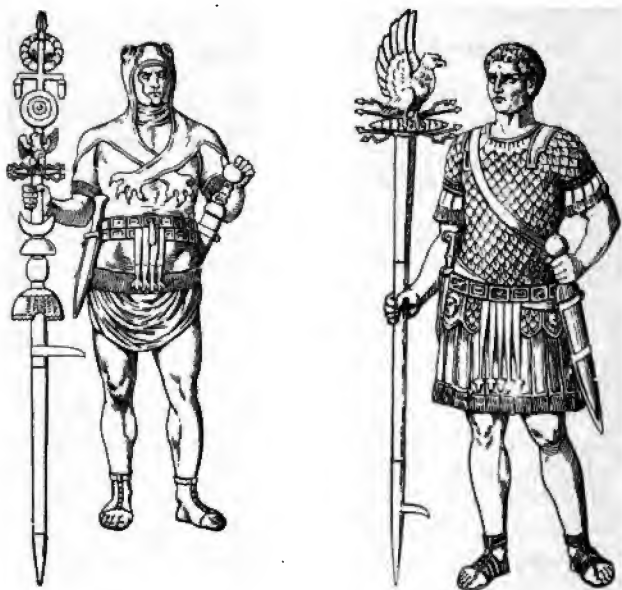
16. *aquilifer* (-erī, m.): *stand-*

ard bearer, lit. *eagle bearer*.—
Aside from the standards of the
cohorts, each legion carried a sil-
ver eagle.—*virium*: from what
nom. sing.? Give some of the
meanings of the singular.

17. *aquilam*: *aquila*, -ae, f.,
eagle.

18. *ipse*: *autem* may be sup-
plied.

FIRST LATIN READER



STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

lēspērātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsi interfēcērunt. qui paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertis bus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna pervēnērunt, eum dē rēbus gestis fēcērunt certiōrem.

LESSON 108

The Gauls attack a Second Camp

: victoriā sublātus, Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in uocōs, qui erant eius rēgnō finitimī, profectus est; noctem neque diem intermisit, peditātumque sē subsequi.

dēmōnstrātā Aduātucisque concitātis, posterō diē in os pervēnit, eosque hortātus est, nē sui in perpetuum adi occāsiōnem dimitterent. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs omānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interisse docuit; nēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum cerōne in finibus eōrum hiemāret. Quā orātiōne Nervii persuāsit.

lēspērātā: dēspērō, 1, *desperat*. — sē ipsi: cf. ipse . . .

, 1. 2. The men probably in one another's swords.

T. Labiēnum: in con- with in hiberna, this phrase conveniently be rendered by a . . . For the location of Labi- camp, see the map on p. 124. **estis:** lit. *done*; translate using a relative clause.

sublātus: from tollō. — in: *territory of*.

aduātucōs: for this and peoples mentioned, see again on p. 124.

intermisit: sc. cursum, *i.e.*

drew rein. — sē: omit in translation.

9. concitātis: concitō, 1, *stir up*.

10. sui: gen. pl.

11. liberandī: gerundive, taking its form from sui. Render the gen. (freely) "to."

13. facillimēque: as governing verb for this clause, dixit may be supplied.

14. Q. Cicerōne: another of Caesar's lieutenants (see the map). — eōrum: *i.e.* Nerviorum. — hiemāret: for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

15. Nervii persuāsit: *won over the Nervii*; lit. what?

Itaque cōnfēstim dimissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, nātiōnēsq̄ aliās, ut quam maximis cōpiis auxiliō statim venirent, repente ad Cicerōnis hiberna hostēs sē ostendērunt; ubi nōnnūlli militēs, morte Sabini Cottaēque nōndum nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnitiōnēs officiis variis operam dabant. Ex hīs quīdam, quī lignātiōnis causā in silvās discesserant, repentinō equitum adventū intercepti sunt. Cēterī autem celeriter concurrerunt ad arma, vāllumque cōnscederunt.

LESSON 109

The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar

- 10 Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōnfēstim ā Cicerōne litterae; obsessis autem omnibus viis, ab hostibus missi intercepti sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitiōnis causā compor-tāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incredibilī celeritātē exstrūxērunt.
- 15 Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis, castra iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt. Eādem ratiōne, quā pridīē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps diēbus factum est. Nulla pars noctis labōribus militum carēbat: nōn aegris, nōn vulnerātis

2. aliās: not reliquās or cēte-rās. — ut: the construction is deter-mined by the idea of urging or commanding implied in the send-ing of messengers. — maximis cōpiis: abl. case; translate "with."

3. ad: in the neighborhood of.

6. lignātiōnis causā: cf. p.

108, l. 8.

7. equitum: i.e. of the enemy.

9. cōnscederunt: manned.

11. missi: part., as (masc.) noun.

12. noctū: during the (follow-ing) night. — māteriā: māteria, -ae, f., timber.

17. quā: freely, as; strictly, abl., in the same construction as eādem ratiōne.

18. reliquis: the following. — deinceps: adv., in turn.

19. labōribus militum: freely, toil for the soldiers. — carēbat: was without, or lacked; cf. the note on mē . . . carēre, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur: nec Cicerō ipse, etsi tenuissimā erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbatur, priusquam militum vōcibus sibi parcere coactus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle nūntiāverunt. Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quae paulō ante Ambiorix cum Sabīnō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte, et cōfirmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hiberna, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlle; quam ob rem 10 Rōmānis licēre incolumibus ex castris discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficisci.

LESSON 110

Heroic Defense of their Camp

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat, Gallis respondit nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem; sī ab armis 15 discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spērāre sē eōs, quae petissent, impetrātūrōs.

1. quiētis: quiēs, -ētis, F., rest. — tenuissimā: tenuis, -is, -e, slight; here, poor.

2. valētūdine: cf. p. 110, l. 9. The abl. phrase expresses quality or characteristic; cf. the similar use of the genitive.

4. causam: i.e. ground.

6. potestāte: i.e. facultāte. — commemorant: i.e. dicunt. In animated narration, the pres. indic. is often thus used for the perfect.

7. cum Sabīnō ēgerat: had treated (in his dealings) with Sabīnus.

9. hanc . . . cōsuētūdinem: i.e. the practice of quartering a division of the army upon them for the winter. — inveterāscere: inveterāscō, 3, -veterāvī, become fixed.

10. incolumibus: pred. dat. — quāscumque: quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whatsoever.

14. ūllam: modifier of condiōnem.

15. lēgātōs: as on p. 48, l. 9.

16. quae: i.e. ea quae, lit. the things which; freely, the concessions which. — petissent: i.e. petivissent; cf. also the note on expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

Hāc spē dēiectī Nervii vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna circumdant. Eis autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsui sunt; gladiis igitur caespitēs circumcidere et manibus sagisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōris ferē tribus decem mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnitiōnem pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs 10 tēla fervefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Tum Galli, victōriam ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vāllum scālis ascendere coepērunt. At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum 15 maximā tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaeque impedimenta omnia igni cōsumī intellexerent, dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō. Hīc diēs nostris longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

1. hāc spē dēiectī: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. circumdant: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — eis: i.e. Nervii.

3. ferramentōrum: ferramentum, -i, N., iron implement. — eam: such. — rem: business. — ūsui sunt: are needed.

4. circumcidere: circumcidō, 3, -cidi, -cīsus, cut out, lit. cut around.

5. exhaurire: exhauriō, 4, -hausi, -haustus, remove, lit. haul out.

7. pedum quīndecim: freely, fifteen-foot (including both vāllum and fossa, as thus far completed).

10. fervefacta: fervefactus, -a, -um, red-hot. — casās: barracks. — quae: feminine.

11. ventī: gen. case. — magnitūdine: abl. of cause (magnitūdō, -inis, F., force, lit. greatness; cf. magnus); translate "by reason of."

12. distulērunt: sc. eam (i.e. ignem).

13. vāllum: i.e. castrōrum; not the vāllum of l. 1. — scālis: scālae, -arum, F., ladder(s).

14. cum: concessive.

15. maximā . . . multitūdine: freely, a perfect storm.

16. dē vāllō: i.e. from (his position upon) the rampart. — dēcēderet: dēcēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, withdraw.

17. nostris: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium
interiret aut vulnerārētur.

LESSON III

A Messenger eludes the Enemy

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs
litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōn-
5 nūllī, in cōspectū nostrōrum militum intercepti, cum cru-
ciātū necātī sunt. Intrā hiberna autem erat Nervius
quidam, nōmine Verticō, qui ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum
primum castra oppugnāta sunt. Hic servō spē libertātis
magnisque persuāsit praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dē-
10 ferret. Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine
ūllā suspiciōne versātus, ad Caesarem incolumis pervēnit.
Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā ferē undecimā diēi, nūntium
cōnfēstim in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius
15 hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum quīque et vīgintī;
iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē
venīre. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, qui eī

1. ut: *that*. — eō diē: *i.e.*
the day referred to on p. 136, l. 17
as hic diēs.

3. quantō . . . tantō: with
the comparatives, *the . . . the*, lit.
by how much . . . by so much. —
erat: *became*. — in diēs: cf. p. 44,
l. 4. — crēbriōrēs: crēber, -bra,
-brum, lit. *frequent*: transl. as adv.

8. servō: sc. suō (*i.e.* "of
his"); dat. case, to be construed
with persuāsit, l. 9.

10. ille: the slave. — Gallus:
(*since he was*) a Gaul. — inter
. . . versātus: freely, *mixing*

with; lit. what? — sine: *without*
(*exciting*).

12. periculis: translate as sing.

13. hōrā . . . undecimā diēi:
cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

14. in: cf. the note on p. 133,
l. 5. — mittit: cf. commemorant, p.
135, l. 6. — ad M. Crassum: see
the map on p. 124.

15. eō: *i.e.* Caesare.

16. iubet: sc. eum (*i.e.* Cras-
sum). — ad: *to (join)*.

17. alterum: sc. nūntium. —
ad C. Fabium: see the map again.
— eī: *i.e.* Fabiō.

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per finēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō ut, si rei pūblicae commodō fieri possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorū veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur expectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximis hibernis cōgit.

LESSON 112

Caesar heads a Relief Force

Hōrā ferē tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē milia passuum viginti prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiōnemque ei trādidit, quod ibi relinquēbat impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat. Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sabīnī et clāde cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiac vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernis fugae similem pro-

1. legiōnem: sc. suam.—in Atrebatēs: *i.e.* F. was to march south to join Caesar, as the latter moved eastward.

2. ut: in this connection, scribit implies *imperat* also; hence the *ut*-clause.

3. rei pūblicae commodō: lit. *with the well-being of the common-wealth*; freely, *without endangering the public weal*.—possit: *it may*.—legiōne: sc. suā.

7. hōrā . . . tertiā: *i.e.* of the day following.—antecursōribus: antecursor, -ōris, M., *courier*.

9. praeposuit: with dat., *left in charge (of)*.

11. civitātum: *i.e.* the Gallic states; translate the gen. "from."—litterās: *documents*.

12. eō: the adv.

13. imperātum erat: note the gender.

14. occurrit: sc. ei (*i.e.* Caesar:).

15. cohortium: freely, *to the cohorts*.—cum: causal.—ad . . . vēnissent: *had marched upon*—Trēverōrum: see the map on p 124.

16. fugae: dat. case; construe with *similem*.

fectionem fecisset, hostium impetus sustineri non posset, litteras Caesaris remisit, quibus ostendit quantum esset periculum docuitque omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum ab suis castris consedissee.

- 5 Caesar, consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, omnem tamen communis salutis spem in celeritate ponebat. Venit igitur magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae in Ciceronis hibernis gerantur, quantumque in periculo res sit.

LESSON 113

The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach

- 10 Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallis Caesar magnis praemiis persuasit, ut ad Ciceronem epistulam deferret. Hanc Graecis litteris scriptam misit, ne Gallorum intercepto nostra consilia ab hostibus cognoscerentur. Homini imperavit ut, si hiberna intrare non posset, trahulam cum epistula ad
15 amentum deligata intra munitiones abiceret. In epistula scripsit se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore; Ciceronem hortatus est ut pristinam virtutem retineret.

1. fecisset: cf. *exspectassent*, p. 104, l. 18.

2. quibus: cf. p. 38, l. 16. — *esset*: why subjunctive?

4. Treverorum: *belonging to the Treveri*. — suis: *his*.

5. opinio: opinio, -onis, F., *expectation*; cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. redierat: *i.e. had been reduced*.

7. venit: what tense? (note the *ē*). — magnis itineribus: *i.e. forced marches*.

8. captivis: *i.e. Gauls whom*

he had arrested as he marched. — quid: neut. interrogative; translate as sing. (*quid*).

10. ex: *of*. — Gallis: with adj. force. The cavalry of the Roman army was recruited largely from foreign nations (cf. the note on *legio*, p. 125, l. 14).

11. epistulam: epistula, -ae, F., *letter*.

12. Gallorum intercepto: translate by a conditional clause.

15. amentum: amentum, -i, N., *strap*. — deligata: deligō, I, *fasten*.

16. adfore: *i.e. adfuturum esse*.



ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very primitive equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the lower picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*amentum*) which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

us, cum ad hiberna vēnisset, periculum veritus, ut imperatum, trāgulam cum litteris mittit. Haec cāsū rim adhaesit, neque ā nostris statim animadversa, liē ā milite quōdam cōspicitur; quī eam sine morā erōnem dēfert. Ille, epistolā perlēctā, militēs laetus Caesarem iam subsidiō venīre. Tum fūmī incendiō rocul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem ūs legiōnum expulit.

LESSON 114

The Enemy raise the Siege

I rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā, sarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Quō animadversō,

Gallum quendam celeriter cum litteris mittit, in quibit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitudinem esarem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā adlātis, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad pum animō cōnfirmat.

terō diē, cum lūce primā mōvisset castra et circiter passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

iculum: *i.e.* of trying to
e camp.

litteris: *i.e.* epistolā. —
e. forte.

l . . . adhaesit: freely,
upon.

lūm: *later*. — fūmī: trans-
ingular.

ernēbantur: cf. the ren-
of vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. —

s: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l.
mnem: *any*. — dubitātiō-

ubitātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, *doubt*.

9. rē: *the situation*. — per:
freely, *from*; lit. *through*.

10. ad: *against*. — omnibus cō-
piis: cum may be supplied with
this abl.

12. omnem . . . multitudinem:
sc. suam. The whole is obj. of con-
vertisse.

14. pugnandum: gerund.

15. animō: lit. *in mind*. — cōn-
firmat: *fortifies*. Render freely.

16. mōvisset: subject, Caesar.

17. magnam: modifying both

gnam et rīvum hostium multitudinem vidit. Erat magni periculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs iniquō locō dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum existimābat: quārē cōnsēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnivit.

LESSON 115

They are Outgeneraled by Caesar

Postridie hostium equitātus primā lūce ad castra accessit, proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commisit. Caesar autem suis imperāvit ut cēderent cōsultō sēque in castra reciperent; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō munīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulatiōne timōris agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invītātī, hostēs cōpiās rīvum trādūxērunt omnis, aciemque iniquō locō cōstituērunt; tum Caesar, omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

vallem and rīvum, and agreeing with the nearer.

2. rēs: *a matter*. — cōpiīs: sc. Gallōrum. — tum: *furthermore*.

3. obsidiōne: translate the abl. "from."

4. aliquid sibi remittendum: *freely, he should relax somewhat*; lit. what?

5. quam: aequissimō locō poterat: *in as favorable a position as he could*. This fuller form helps to show how quam and the superl. came to mean "as . . . as possible." — mūnivit: cf. the part. mūnitus.

6. castra: sc. Caesaris.

8. cōsultō: adv.

9. altiōre vāllō: not a new rampart, but the old built higher.

10. obstruī: obstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up*. — simulatiōne timōris: the purpose of this maneuver is made clear by the following sentence.

12. invītātī: invītātus, -a, -um, part., *invited*; freely, *made bold*. — rīvum trādūxērunt: *i.ē. dūxērunt trāns rīvum*; cf. flūmen trāductis, p. 91, l. 10.

13. omnis: modifier of cōpiās.

14. omnibus portis: for syntax, cf. fenestrā, p. 76, l. 2.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem insequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Turrēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur. Legiōne prōductā,
 5 cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in periculō rēs fuerit. Cicerōne militibusque laudātis, centuriōnēs tribūnōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtutem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cotta
 10 e certius ex captivis cōgnōscit.

LESSON 116

Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter

Dum haec fiunt, ad Labiēnum incēdibili celeritatē dē victoriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quī etiam, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis milia passuum Labiēnus abesset circiter sexāgintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar
 15 pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem subitō ad portās Labiēni castrōrum auditus est eōrum clāmor, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. longius: absol. compar.
2. intercēdebant: intercēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *intervene*. — omnibus suis incolumibus: abl. absol.; translate "with."
4. hostium: freely, *built by the enemy*.
5. nōn decimum, etc.: order of lit. translation: nōn quemque decimum militem esse reliquum.
7. fuerit: perf. subjunctive; why this mood? Note carefully the force of the tense.
8. ēgregiam: pred. adj. (ēgre-gius, -a, -um, *conspicuous*).

9. testimōniō: testimōnium, -ī, N., *report*. The abl. expresses means; we would say "from."
10. certius: as noun (neut. sing.); see the Vocab. under cōgnōscō.
11. haec: *this*. — Labiēnum: cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.
12. fāma (-ae, F.): *report*. — dēfertur: *i.e.* by natives. — cum: concessive.
15. ad: *before*.
16. eōrum: *of those*. — clāmor: translate as pl. — grātulārī: grātulor, 1, *offer congratulation*.

volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēveri, qui posterō diē hiberna Labiēnī oppugnāre cōstituerant, repentinā rē perterriti noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postridiē Caesar cōtiōne habitā militēs cōfirmāvit, 5 eōsque docuit dētrimentum, quod temeritāte lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortalīum et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōservātae essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remisit in hiberna; 10 ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvā hiemāre cōstituit: nam cum animī omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. cōtiōne habitā: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. temeritāte: translate the abl. "through."—lēgātī: *i.e.* Sabīnī. —esset acceptum: for mood, cf. *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

6. aequiōre animō esse ferendum: *i.e.* should be taken the more philosophically; lit. what?

7. immortalīum: immortalis, -is, -e, *immortal*. In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of

the gods with the (earthly) life of men.—eōrum: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. diūtinum: diūtīnus, -a, -um, *long-continued*.—gaudium (-ī, N.): *exultation* (cf. *gaudeō*).

9. Fabium, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. cum: causal.

12. tōtam hiemem: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

LESSON 117

During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.

Caesar lands a Force in Africa

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Āfricā trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longis nāvibus exspectābat; quī autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitudinem
5 veritus, appulsā ad proximum litus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticā praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficiscitur; tridūque iter prō
10 gressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitatū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, quī locus peridōneus castris existimābātur.

1. C. Cūriō: one of Caesar's generals.—D.: the numeral: supply -que or et with this clause.

2. L. Caesar: an officer in Pompey's navy.

5. veritus: *appalled at*.—trirēme: sc. suā (trirēmīs, -is, F., galley).—pedibus: we would say "on foot"; cf. manibus genibusque, p. 59, l. 8.—Hadrūmētum: consult the map on p. 146; for

syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

6. quō: the adv.—fugā: *defection*.

8. Uticā: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

9. proficiscitur: from Anquil-laria.

12. antecēdit: antecēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *push ahead*, lit. *go on ahead*.—quī locus: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l. 13.—peridō-



THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explorātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnitiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimis viis undique portārī agique multa, quae repentinī tumultūs timōre ex agris in urbem cōferēbantur, equitātum misit, ut praedā inspērātā potirētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissi sunt DC equitēs Numidae, qui agricolis fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectis circiter CXX reliqui sē in urbem contulērunt.

LESSON 118

Operations about Utica

- ¹⁰ Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriis, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, qui nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvis trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā,
 5 sine morā sublātis ancoris omnēs reliquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rerum cōpiā exercitum nostrum complēvit.

nōus (-a, -um): *particularly suitable*; cf. the note on *perpaucōs*, p. 25, l. 10.

2. **plēnissimis**: *plēnus*, -a, -um, *congested*. — **viis**: translate the abl. "along"; cf. *sēmitā*, p. 103, l. 17.

3. **portārī agique**: cf. the note on *rapere et agere*, p. 49, l. 8.

4. **timōre**: freely, *in the panic*; strictly, abl. of cause.

5. **inspērātā**: *inspērātus*, -a, -um, *unexpected*.

6. **Numidae**: with adj. force.

7. **neque**: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

10. **Mārcius**: see p. 145, l. 8.

11. **prōnūntiārī**: cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

12. **numerō**: for syntax, cf. *animō*, p. 37, l. 20. — **in hostium locō habitūrum**: *would regard as enemies*; lit. what?

13. **omnēs**: masc.

14. **nāvis**: *i.e.* the *onerariae* of l. 11. — **trādūxissent**: *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — **prōnūntiātiōne**. *prōnūntiātiō*, -ōnis, *F., announcement*.

16. **quō**: the adv.

His rēbus gestis, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagram recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statīōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā rēge Iubā missa Uticam venīre; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et temporis pūctō primum agmen erat in cōspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, quī primum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductis legiōnibus, aciem instruit

LESSON 119

Curio gains an Initial Advantage

- 10 Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commisērunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nullō ordine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per litus in oppidum prope-rāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.
- 15 Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suis duōbus et viginti ad Attium Vārum per-fugiunt; cui cōfirmant tōtius exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse

1. ad Bagram: cf. p. 145, l. 10. In connection with in castra, translate "at the Bagrama"; cf. ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hiberna, p. 133, l. 3.

3. opere: i.e. construction.

4. statīōne: statio, -ōnis, F., outpost.—auxilia: auxiliary forces.

5. Iubā: king of Numidia, friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147, l. 5 ff.).—venīre: i.e. appropinquare ad.—eōdem . . . tempore: i.e. simul.

6. cernēbātur: cf. cernēbantur, p. 141, l. 7.—temporis pūctō: in

a moment (pūctum, -i, N., point).—primum agmen: vanguard; lit. what?

9. opere: (the work of) construction (cf. l. 3).

11. legiōnēs: sc. Cūriōnis.

12. sine metū: evidently they had not heard of Curio's arrival in Africa.

13. oppidum: i.e. Utica.

16. Attium Vārum: commander of the Pompeian forces at Utica.

17. aliēnōs . . . ā; freely, disaffected toward.

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs. Qua ōrātiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex castris ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque unā valle nōn magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās instruit.

- 5 Erat in exercitū Vārī lēgātus quidam, cui nōtī erant multī Cūriōnis milītēs. Hanc ille nactus appellātiōnis causam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit, ut Vārum sequerentur ; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est, sī quī ad eum trānsire voluissent. His verbīs audītis, nūllam
10 in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit significātiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās reducit.

LESSON 120

He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar

At in castris Cūriōnis animī omnium sollicitī erant; quisque enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid suī timōris addēbat.

- 15 Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant quī castra Vārī statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alterī autem

1. *facultāte datā*: translate as a conditional clause. — *esse trānsitūrōs*: *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. *castris*: built just outside the city walls. — *ēdūcit*: *ēdūcō*, 3, *-dūxi*, *-ductus*, *lead out*. — *idem*: note the gender.

4. *uterque*: as noun.

6. *appellātiōnis*: *appellātiō*, *-ōnis*, *F.*, *accosting*; translate here *accosting (them)*. — *causam*: freely, *excuse (for)*.

8. *Vārum sequerentur*: *i.e. join the army of Varus*.

9. *sī quī*: *if any* (noun); cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1. —

eum: *i.e. Vārum*. — *voluissent*: freely, *were willing*; cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — *nūllam in partem*: see the Vocab. under *pars*.

10. *significātiō (-ōnis, F.)*: *sign.* — *ita*: *i.e. with the loyalty of Cūriō's troops still a matter of doubt*.

12. *sollicitī*: *sollicitus*, *-a, -um*, *unsettled*. — *quisque*: noun.

13. *ad id, quod*: freely, *to what*. — *sui*: cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6; for syntax of the gen. phrase, cf. *glōriæ*, p. 107, l. 17.

16. *cēnsērent*: cf. the note on *erant quī*, p. 109, l. 5. — *alterī*: *i.e. the other party*.

optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen “ Neutrum cōnsilium,” inquit, “ probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnita temerē oppugnanda cēseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dimittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror.”

Quārē, dimissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat militum; 10 quōrum animōs verbis cōnfirmit, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarique fidēlēs sint. Quā ōratiōne permōtī milites eum etiam dicentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversi cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque 15 experiri.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar. — mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, 1, *heal*, pass., *become normal*. — simul: *i.e. furthermore*.

4. neutrum: neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15. — neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: *i.e. before giving up hope*. — experienda: *experior*, 4, *expertus sum, try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*. — advocat: *advocō*, 1, *call together*.

10. verbis: sc. suis. — quīl... causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. *sui timōris*, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. eum: *i.e. Cūriōnem*. — etiam dicentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses. — interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, 1). — discēdentem: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*. — ūniversi: *freely, one and all*. — magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2. — nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. *neque* (in sense = nōn + qu.).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. *fidēlēs*, l. 11.

15. experiri: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

LESSON 121

The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōstituit, cum primum esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque militēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōstitierant, in aciē collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prōdūxit, nē, si aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dīmīcandī facultātem dīmīteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque si adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur, expectābat, 10 quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō Vārī equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum primum impetum equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs refugiunt.

15 Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequi iubet Cūriō, et omnibus cum cōpiis in vallem cōnfēstim dēscendit; interim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenirentur, terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritātē sē in castra recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: i.e. should present itself. — dīmīcandī: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: so very. — arduō: arduus, -a, -um, steep. — ascēnsū: ascēnsus, -ūs, m., slope. — hanc: object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque: each (commander).

9. si: in the hope that. — adversāriōrum: adversārii, -i, m., the opposing party. — expectābat: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. hostium: i.e. Varus' party. — admissis: admissus, -a, -um, part., let go, i.e. at full speed.

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen “Neutrum cōnsilium,” inquit, “probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnita temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dimittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror.”

Quārē, dimissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat militum; quōrum animōs verbis cōfirmat, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarique fidēlēs sint. Quā ōratiōne permōti milites eum etiam dicentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversi cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque experiī.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar. — mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, 1, *heal*, pass., *become normal*. — simul: *i.e.* *furthermore*.

4. neutrum: neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15. — neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: *i.e.* before giving up hope. — experienda: experior, 4, expertus sum, *try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*. — advocat: advocō, 1, *call together*.

10. verbis: sc. suis. — quīl... causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. sui timōris, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. eum: *i.e.* Cūriōnem. — etiam dicentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses. — interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, 1). — discēdentem: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*. — ūniversi: freely, *one and all*. — magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2. — nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. neque (in sense = nōn + qu).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. fidēlēs, l. 11.

15. experiī: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

LESSON 121

The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōstituit, cum primum
 esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque
 militēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōstitērant, in aciē
 collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prō-
 dūxit, nē, si aequō locō darētur occāsio, dimicandī facultātem
 dimitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est,
 nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque
 si adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur, exspectābat,
 quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō
 Vārī equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō
 equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum primum impetum
 equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs re-
 fugiunt.

Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequi iubet Cūriō, et
 omnibus cum cōpiis in vallem cōnfēstim dēscendit; in-
 terim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenīrentur,
 terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritātē sē in castra
 recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: i.e. should present itself. — dimicandī: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: so very. — arduō: arduus, -a, -um, steep. — ascēnsū: ascēnsus, -ūs, M., slope. — hanc: object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque: each (commander).

9. si: in the hope that. — adversāriōrum: adversārii, -īrum, M., the opposing party. — exspectābat: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. hostium: i.e. Varus' party. — admissis: admissus, -a, -um, part., let go, i.e. at full speed.

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

LESSON 122

Narrow Escape of their Commander

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, miles quidam ex Cūriōnis exercitū, agmen fugientium cōsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius militibus et velle aliquid dicere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appellātus cōstitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesivit, tum Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille periculum sublātō scūtō vitāvit; Fabius autem ā proximis militibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitudīne portae castrōrum complētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impeditum, ut plūrēs in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interirent; nōnnūllī vērō erant adeō perterritī, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū per castra in oppidum ipsum contenderent. At Cūriōnis milites, ad proelium ēgressī, sēcum nūllam cōpiam portāverant eārum rerum, quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra reducit.

Cuius discessū vulnerātī ē castris hostium in oppidum reducuntur; quō quidem tempore multī praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnere propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

1. in: *during*.
2. fugientium: sc. hostium.
4. saepius: absol. compar.
5. aut: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 7.
6. apertum: *unprotected, i.e. the right*.—ille: Varus.
7. scūtō: scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.
10. iter: *roadway*.
11. sine vulnere: *i.e. wound inflicted by the enemy*.
12. adeō: the adv. — eōdem cursū: *i.e. without stopping*.

13. castra: see again the note on p. 149, l. 3. — ipsum: *proper*.
14. proelium: *a battle (in the open)*. — ēgressī: sc. ex castris; translate the part. by a relative clause.
16. tum: *for the time being*.
17. discessū: abl. of time when; translate "on."
18. quidem: omit in translating. — per: *freely, under*.
19. eōdem: adv., *to the same shelter*.



SCŪTA

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt. Quā rē animadversā exercitūque timōre cōgni
Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculisque paucis in castris
speciem relictis, tertiā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitū
silentiō in oppidum reducit.

LESSON 123

King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus

- 5 Postridiē eius diēi Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit. 5
iam ad urbem perveniunt ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum
esse magnis cum cōpiis dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsi
urbis hortentur. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī.
tamen primō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum exīstimāb
10 sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā mī
quinque et viginti mīlia passuum abesse, relictis mūniti
bus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc comport
coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsui er
Dum haec fiunt, ex oppidānis perfugis audivit Iub
15 aliō bellō esse revocātum, et Saburram, eius praefectū
parvis cum cōpiis Uticae appropinquāre. Quō aud
cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere c

2. būcinātōre: būcinātor, -ōris, M., *trumpeter*. — ad speciem: *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. eius diēi: omit in translating. The gen. depends upon the diē which enters into the composition of postridiē.

6. Iubā: see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. haec eadem: neut.; translate as singular.

10. minus: *less (than)*; cf. the use of *amplius*, p. 101, l. 3.

12. Castra Cornēlia: see at the map on p. 146.

13. omnia: *all sorts of things* — obsidiōnem: of the same derivation as the verb obsidēre, l. 5.

14. perfugis: with adj. *fit deserting*.

15. aliō bellō: abl. of means. Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements deliberately fabricated, the "deceptions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem primā nocte ad castra Saburrae praemittit; quī hostis necopinantēs adortus, magnū eōrum numerum occidit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem Equitēs redeunt captivōsque ad eum reducunt.

LESSON 124

The Numidians resort to Strategy

5 Cūriō, cohortibus quīque castris praesidiō relictis, omnibus cum cōpiis quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum iam ipse prōgressus erat. Quī, victoriā equitātus cōgnitā, etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdebāt longē abesse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse
10 existimābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūntiatum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque
15 cum reliquis cōpiis elephantisque sexāgintā lēnius subsequitur. Suspiciātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque statim instrūxit atque eis imperāvit ut simul atque nostrī in cōspectum vēnissent, simulatiōne timōris paulatim cēderent.

Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

1. ad: *i.e.* to attack.
11. falsō: adv., lit. *falsely*; render the clause freely.

12. quīque: *i.e.* quī + que. — nocturnō proeliō: see l. 1 ff.

14. cōfidēbat: cōfidō, 3, -fusus sum, with dat., *rely (upon)*. — subsidiō: dat. of service.

15. elephantis: elephantus, -i, m., *elephant*.

16. suspiciātus: translate as a present. — ipsum: as contrasted with his cavalry, which had already been in action. — adfore: *i.e.* adfutūrum esse.

18. simul atque: *i.e.* cum primum. — vēnissent: cf. the note on expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

19. simulatiōne: translate the abl. "with."

in plānitie[m] dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgres-
sus, cōfectō iam labōre exercitū, locō iniquō cōstitit.
Tum suis signum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat.
Peditātū primō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem
5 nostram inmittit.

LESSON 125

Curio's Army is Annihilated

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūriō ordinēs circumiit
militesque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūte pōnerent.
Hī primō fortissimē dimicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō
longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam
10 ā tergō adoriri coepērunt. Tum Cūriō, ubi perterritis om-
nibus cohortātiōnēs suās nōn audiri intellēxit, ūnam salūtis
esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere at-
que eō signa ferre iussit. Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat
missus ā Saburrā equitātus.
15 Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt,
et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucīs equitibus
circumsistēns, Cūriōnem ōrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē
ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē,

1. longius: absol. compar.
—inde: *i.e.* from the point where
he had left the hills.

2. cōfectō: construe with
exercitū.

4. primō: the adv.

8. dimicābant: *kept up the
fight.*

9. circumventam: translate as
if circumvērunt eamque.

10. ā tergō: cf. p. 78, l. 18. —
omnibus: noun, forming an abl.
absol. with perterritis.

11. cohortātiōnēs: cohortātiō,
-ōnis, F., *exhortation.*

12. spem: *chance.* — capere:
make for; as subject, suās may
be supplied.

13. eō: the adv. —signa: see
the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131,
l. 16. — hōs: *i.e.* collēs.

15. dēspērātiōnem: dēspērātiō,
-ōnis, F., *despair.*

18. numquam sē, etc.: the in-
direct discourse depends upon cō-
firmat, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōn-
spectum reditūrum cōnfirmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

Ē proeliō equitēs nostrī perpaucī effūgērunt; quibuscum
nōnnūllī, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum
morātī erant, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, in-
columēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs
interfectī sunt.

4. reficiendōrum: reficiō, 3, 6. castra: *i.e.* the camp at
-fēcī, -fectus, *refresh*. Castra Cornēlia.

SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

AN EPISODE FROM THE GALLIC WAR

(Caesar, *De Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctis peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiis Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis castris ā milibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum expectāre cōstituunt,

Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmīcandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. haec: *i.e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. cum: translate "and." — ūnā: *the one*.

4. viā: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — vēnisse: *i.e.* to reēnforce Labienus.

5. missū: *missus*, -ūs, M., lit. *sending*; here, *order*. — cōgnō-

scunt: cf. commemorant, p. 135, l. 6. — ā: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. temeritāte: cf. the adv. temerē.

9. eōrum: *on their part*. — dīmīcandī: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — praesidiō . . . relictō: abl. absol. — quīnque cohortium: (*consisting*) of five cohorts.

- Cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mille passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpisque praeruptis.
- 5 Hoc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs. Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē primā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitātūs numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicis rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

LESSON 127

The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident

Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs militum prīmisque ōrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōnsili, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. *impedimentis*: at this time Labienus had charge of the heavy baggage of Caesar's entire army.

2. *hostem*: sing. for pl., as in English. — *mille*: indeclinable adj., here as genitive.

3. *intermissō*: *i.e.* relictō (namely, between him and the enemy). — *commūnit*: communiō, 4, *intrench*.

4. *trānsitū*: trānsitus, -ūs, M., *passage* (cf. trānsēō). — *praeruptis*: praeruptus, -a, -um, *rugged*.

7. *spēs*: namely, for the Treveri. — *loquitur*: subject, Labienus. — *cōnsiliō*: as on p. 126, l. 16. — *quoniam*: *inasmuch as*.

8. *suās* . . . *fortūnās*: *i.e.*

suam salūtem. — *exercitūsque*: and (that) of the army.

9. *dubium*: *i.e.* periculum; lit. what? — *dēvocātūrum*: dēvocō, 1, *bring*; lit. *call*. — *castra mōtūrum*: *i.e.* he will fall back.

10. *ut*: *inasmuch as*. — *ex*: out of.

11. *Gallōrum*: freely, *recruited from among the Gauls* (cf. the note on p. 139, l. 10). — *Gallicis rēbus*: the Gallic cause.

13. *ordinibus*: *i.e.* centuriōnibus.

14. *quid suī sit cōnsili*: what his plan involves; lit. what? (for cōnsili, cf. Standisi, p. 16, l. 4). — *prōpōnit*: *i.e.* ostendit. — *quō*: see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, maiōre strepitū et tum
quam populī Rōmāni fert cōsuētūdō, castra movērī i
Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec
que per explorātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinqu
5 castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcessu
cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedar
manibus dīmitterent — longum esse, perterritis Rōm
Germānōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam patī c
10 tātem ut tantīs cōpiis tam exiguam manum, praes
fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri nōn audeant — fī
trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubi
Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā fī
ēliceret, eādē ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē pr
15 diēbātur.

1. timōris: namely, on his part.

2. fert: *calls for*.

3. similem: pred. adj. — haec: neut.

4. per: freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9.
— intantā propinquitāte: freely, *on account of the close proximity* (propinquitās, -ātis, F., *nearness*).

6. agmen novissimum: name-
ly, of Labienus' army. With this
phrase cf. primum agmen, p. 148,
l. 6. — prōcesserat: prōcēdō, 3,
-cessi, -cessum est: *advance*.

7. inter sē: freely, *one another*.

8. longum esse: *it was need-
less* (lit. *too long*). The indirect
discourse is due to the idea of say-
ing implied in cohortātī, l. 7. Do
not attempt to translate this paren-

thetical matter (between
dashes) until the rest of the
sentence is clear.

10. ut: *that*; depende
patī. — tantīs cōpiis: see p.
l. 1.

11. fugientem atque i
tam: modifying manum, l.
flūmen: see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. quae: neut., *this*. —
supplying here a future infinitive.
fīō. — ut: depending on
diēbātur, l. 14. — omnēs:
all. — citrā: prep., *to the
side of, i.e. to his side of*.

14. ūsus: *keeping up*.
neris: here, *retreat*. — p
adv., *steadily*. — prōgredi
continued to move on.

LESSON 128

They are Decisively Beaten

Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultō quōdam collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "milītēs, quā petistis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quā saepenumērō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dērigi iubet; paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedimenta dimissis reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pila in hostēs inmittunt. Illi ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdebant, infestis signis ad sē ire vidērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuerunt, ac primō concursū in fugam coniecti proximās silvās petiverunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōsectātus, magnō numerō interceptō, complūribus captis, paucīs post diēbus civitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniebant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēperunt.

1. tumultō: *tumulus*, -ī, M., *hillock*.

2. inquit: subject, Labiēnus. — milītēs: voc. case. — quā petistis facultātem: *i.e.* eam facultātem quā petivistis.

4. nōbīs ducibus: *i.e.* mē duce (abl. absol.). The use of the first Person pl. for the corresponding Sing. is very common. — saepenumērō: *i.e.* saepe; strictly, numerō *is* abl. of specification.

5. imperātōrī: freely, *before the eyes of your commander in chief* (*i.e.* Caesar). — haec: *this action*.

6. cōram: adv., *in person*. — cernere: *i.e.* vidēre. — signa . . .

converti: a signal to change front.

7. dērigi: *i.e.* instrui (dērigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctus).

8. ad: *on*.

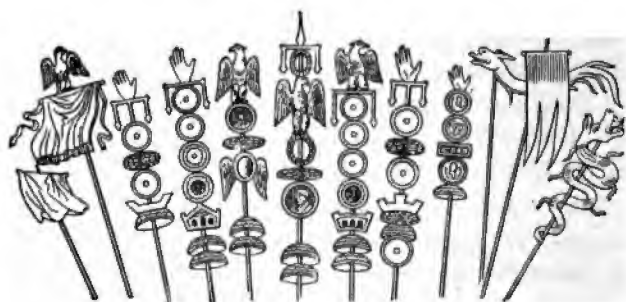
10. praeter: *i.e.* *contrary to*. — spem: *expectation*. — quōs: simply as antecedent, *eōs*, *those* (subject of ire, l. 11).

11. ad . . . Ire: freely, *advancing upon*. — ac: freely, *but*.

12. concursū: *concourse*, -ūs, M., *clash* (cf. concurrō).

13. cōsectātus: *cōsector*, 1, *follow up*.

15. recēpit: sc. in dēditiōnem. — perceptā: *i.e.* cōgnitā (percipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus).



SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vexilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī*, III, 95-98)

LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117-125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis, nūllum spatium perterritis darī oportēre existimāns, militēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatigātī—nam ad 5 meridiem rēs erat perducta—tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pārūrunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant militēs, 10 et animō perterriti et lassitūdine cōfectī, missis plērique

1. vāllum: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. spatium: *respite*.—perterritis: modifying eis, supplied.—darī oportēre: *should be allowed* (oportet, 2, -uit, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. aestū: aestus, -ūs, M., *heat*.—fatigātī: *i.e.* dēfessī (fatigō, 1).

5 meridiem: here, *midday*.—rēs: *engagement*.

6. animō: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. castra: namely, of Pompey.—industriē: adv., *energetically*.

8. multō: construe with ācrius.

9. -que: *and (other)*.—quī . . . militēs: *i.e.* ei militēs, qui.—aciē: *i.e.* proeliō.

10. lassitūdine: lassitūdō, -inis, F., *weariness*.—missis: *discarded* (cf. dīmittō).—plērique: freely,

armis signisque militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōstiterant, multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuerunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquērunt, 5 prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

Caesar, castris potitus, ā militibus contendit nē, in praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dimitterent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre instituit.

LESSON 130

Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians

Pompēiāni, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi ei locō, relictō monte, ūiversi iugis eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās divisit,

in the majority of cases; the word agrees with *militēs*, though in sense it belongs with the abl. absol. Be careful to make the rendering of this sentence idiomatic throughout.

1. *militāribus*: *militāris*, -is, -e, lit. *military*. *signa militāria* is the full expression for "standards"; usually the adj. is omitted.
— *dē reliquā fugā*: *i.e. about resuming their flight*.

2. *diūtius*: absol. compar.

3. *in vāllō*: *i.e. to defend it*.

4. *locum*: (*their*) *posts*.

5. *ducibus ūsi*: lit. *having* (as) *leaders*; translate freely.

6. *altissimōs*: absol. superl.

7. *cōnfūgērunt*: *cōnfugiō*, 3,

-fūgi, with in and the acc., *take refuge (upon)*.

8. *contendit*: *i.e. petivit*.

10. *montem*: *i.e. the particular height upon which the Pompeians had finally assembled*. — *circummūnīre*: *circummūniō*, 4, *girdle*.

11. *instituit*: *i.e. coepit* (*instituiō*, 3, *-stitui*, *-stitūtus*).

12. *diffisi*: *diffidō*, 3, *-fissus sum*, with dat., *lack confidence (in)*.

13. *iugis*: *iugum*, -ī, N., *ridge*; translate the abl. "along" (way by which). — *eius*: *i.e. montis*. — *Lārisam*: a town some miles north, toward which Pompey had already fled, making for the sea. — *versus*: translate as if *ad* . . . *versus* (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānis occurrere coepit, et prōgressus milia passuum VI, aciem instrūxit. Quā rē
 5 animadversā, Pompēiāni in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar militēs cohortātus, etsi tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiāni possent.

Quō perfectō opere, illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātis agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōrii, quī sē cum his coniūn_xerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locis in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit.
 10 Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passisque palmis prōiecti ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvīt.

1. Pompēi: cf. the note on Standisi, p. 16, l. 4. — remanēre: remaneō, 2, -mānsi, -māsum est, remain.

2. sua: note the position.

3. commodiōre: i.e. than the route taken by the enemy.

6. subluēbat: subluō, 3, —, —, wash the base of.

7. continentī: as adj. (abl. case), unbroken.

8. suberat: i.e. aderat (subsum, -esse, -fui). — sēclūsit: sēclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off.

9. aquārī: aquor, 1, get water.

10. opere: i.e. the mūnitiō of l. 8. — dē dēditiōne: construe with agere.

11. senātōrii: senātōrius, -a,

-um, senatorial; the highest order in the Roman state (cf. the note on p. 125, l. 9). — his: i.e. the Pompeian forces.

12. nocte: i.e. noctū.

15. recūsātiōne: recūsātiō, -ōnis, F., protest (cf. recūsō). — palmis: i.e. manibus (palma, -ae, F.) — prōiecti: freely, falling forward.

16. salūtem: i.e. (their) lives. — cōnsōlātus: sc. eōs.

17. cōnsurgere: i.e. surgere (cōnsurgō, 3, -surrēxi, -surrēctum est). — apud eōs: in their hearing, i.e. to them. — lēnitāte: lēnitās, -ātis, F., humaneness.

18. quō: note the compar. in the clause. — minōre . . . timōre: abl. of characteristic.

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iūlius*, 81, 82)

LESSON 131

As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on that fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy; but he did not stop to examine it.

Plūribus hostiis caesis, cum litāre nōn posset, intē cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irridēns et ut fallacius arguēns, quod sine ullā suā noxā Idūs Mārtiae adesset, quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās diceret, sed nōn praesens isse. Assidentem cōspiratī specie officiū circumstetēr illicōque Cimber Tillius, quī primās partēs susceperat, q

1. plūribus: *i.e.* complūribus.
— hostiis: *hostia*, -ae, F., *sacrificial victim*. — caesis: *caedō*, 3, *cecidi*, *caesus*, *slay*. — cum: *concessive*. — litāre: *litō*, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, *secure favorable omens*; the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse. — introiit: *introeō*, -ire, -ii, -itus, *enter*.

2. cūriam: *cūria*, -ae, F., *senate house*. — sprētā: from *spernō*. — Spurinnam: a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (Idūs Mārtiae, l. 3).

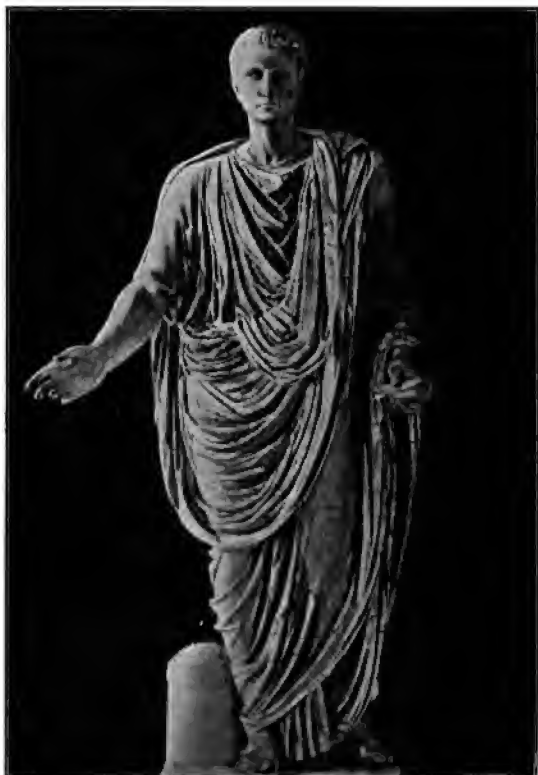
— irridēns (-entis, part.): *a* *ing.* — ut falsum: *as* (a) (*prophet*).

3. arguēns (-entis, part.) *sailing*. — quod: as on p. 55, — suā noxā (noxā, -ae, F.): *to him* (Caesar).

4. is: *i.e.* Spurinna.

5. assidentem: sc. *Caes* (*assidō*, 3, -sēdi, -sessum est, *one's seat*). — cōspiratī (-i M.): *the conspirators*. — of (*showing*) *respect*.

6. illicō (adv.): *i.e.* *statim* primās partēs: *i.e.* *the leading rôle*.



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors
the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit, renuentique et gestū in aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vis est," alter ē Cascis āversum vulnerat, paulum infrā iugulum.

- 5 Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit, cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque animadvertit undique sē strictis pūgiōnibus peti, togā caput obvolvit, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad ima crūra dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam inferiōre corporis
10 parte vėlātā. Atque ita tribus et viginti plāgis cōnfossus est, ūnō modo ad primum ictum gemitū sine vōce ēditō; etsi trādidērunt quidam Mārcō Brūtō inruenti dīxisse, "Kal

1. aliquid rogātūrus: *intending to make some request*; lit. what? — renuenti: sc. Caesarī (renuō, 3, -nui, *shake (one's) head*); translate by a clause introduced by "as"; the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for." — gestū: gestus, -ūs, M., *gesture*.

2. differentī: sc. eum, lit. *putting (him) off*. — ab: *at*; cf. the use of *ex* in phrases like *omnibus ex partibus*. — togam: toga, -ae, F., *robe*. — apprehendit: apprehendō, 3, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, *lay hold of*.

3. clāmantem: sc. Caesarem. — ista: for istud (subject of est); cf. the agreement of quod, p. 30, l. 6. — vis: (*downright*) *violence*. — Cascis: the two were brothers (nom. Casca).

4. āversum: *from behind*, lit. *turned away*. — infrā: prep., *below*. — iugulum: iugulum, -ī, N., *neck*.

5. brachium: brachium, -ī, N., *arm*. — graphiō: graphium, -ī, N., *stylus*. — trāiēcit: trāiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, *pierce*.

6. prōsilire: prōsiliō, 4, -ui, *leap forward*. — tardātus est: tardō, 1, *stop*. — ut: *i.e. ubi*.

7. strictis: strictus, -a, -um, part., *drawn*. — pūgiōnibus: *i.e. siccis* (pūgiō, -ōnis, M.). — togā: cf. l. 2.

8. obvolvit: obvolvō, 3, -volvi, -volūtus, *shroud*. — sinistrā: sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*. — sinum: sinus, -ūs, M., *fold*; translate here as pl., (*its*) *folds*. — ad ima crūra: *i.e. to his ankles* (crūs, crūris, N., *leg*).

9. honestius: honestē (adv.), *in seemly fashion*.

10. vėlātā: *i.e. tēctā* (vėlō, 1). — plāgis: *i.e. vulneribus* (plāga, -ae, F.).

11. ūnō: construe with gemitū. — modo: *i.e. tantum*. — ad: *at*. — ictum: ictus, -ūs, M., *blow*. — vōce: *articulation*.

12. inruenti: inruēns, -entis, part., *pressing forward*. — dīxisse: sc. eum (*i.e. Caesarem*). — Kal σὺ τέκνον: *you too, my boy?*

σὺ τέκνον;" Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctis, aliquamdiū iacuit, dōnec lecticae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs servolī domum rettulērunt. Nec in tot vulneribus, ut Antistius medicus existimābat, lētāle ūllum repertum est, nisi quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13)

LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans. The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the war under more favorable conditions; and so they desired to arrest and hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāmininum cōsulārem

1. exanimis (-is, -e): *lifeless*. — diffugientibus: diffugiō, 3, -fūgi, *scatter*. — cūnctis: *i.e.* omnibus, as noun (cūncti, -ae, -a).

2. lecticae: lectica, -ae, F., *litter*. — dēpendente: dēpendēs, -entis, part., *hanging down*. — bracchiō: cf. p. 168, l. 5.

3. servolī: servulus, -ī, M., *young slave*; cf. servus. — rettulērunt: sc. eum. — in: *among*. — ut: *as*.

4. medicus (-ī, M.): *physician*. — lētāle: *i.e.* exitiāle (lētālis, -is,

-e). — nisi quod: *excepting (one) which*.

5. secundō: *i.e.* *especially vulnerable*; lit. *favorable*. — pectore: pectus, -oris, N., *chest*.

6. quae: *i.e.* events narrated in previous chapters. — Asiā: *i.e.* Asia Minor. — accidit: impersonal expression. — cāsū: *i.e.* *forte*. — Prūsiae (nom. in -a, or -ās): king of Bithynia (cf. p. 170, l. 5). The gen. may be rendered "from."

7. cōsulārem: cōsulāris, -is, M., *ex-consul*.

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminius senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōscripti, qui Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam misērunt (in eis Flāminius), qui ab rēge peterent, nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibi dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

LESSON 133

Death rather than Captivity

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat, ut in omnibus

1. mentiōne: mentiō, -ōnis, F., mention.

2. diceret: in the same construction as cēnārent, l. 1. — eum: Hannibal.

3. patrēs cōscripti: i.e. the senators (cōscriptus, -a, -um, lit. enrolled). — Hannibale vivō: abl. absol.; translate by a clause introduced by "as long as."

4. existimārent: subjunctive in a causal relative clause.

5. in eis: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

6. inimicissimum suum: their deadly foe. — sēcum habēret: i.e. harbor.

7. sibi dēderet: i.e. eumque ut sibi dēderet. — his: i.e. lēgātis. — illud . . . nē: this . . . that.

8. id: a thing; antecedent of quod. — adversus (prep.): i.e. contrā.

9. hospitii: hospitium, -i, N., hospitality. — ipsi . . . comprehenderent: sc. eum, i.e. let them arrest him themselves.

10. inventūrōs: sc. eōs (subject). The indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying underlying recūsāvit, l. 8; cf. longum esse, etc., p. 160, l. 8.

11. enim: referring to what is said in the last clause of Lesson 132. — in: namely, in.

12. rēge: i.e. Prūsā. — mūneri: i.e. dōnō, dat. of service (mūneris, N.). — aedificārat: i.e. aedificāverat.

partibus aedificiū exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū veniret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānī vēnissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūris praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnis foris circumiret ac properē sibi nūntiaret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vidisset renūntiasset, omnisque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsīmō.

1. aedificiū: aedificium, -ī, N., structure. — verēns: i.e. veritus. — ūsū veniret: sc. id (subject), i.e. that (thing) would happen.

2. quod accidit: which (actually) did come to pass (namely, the discovery by the Romans of his hiding place). — hūc: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. puer: i.e. servus. — iānuā: iānuā, -ae, F., door.

4. plūris: modifying armātōs, l. 5. — praeter cōsuētūdinem: than usual; lit. beyond the ordinary.

5. appārēre: i.e. in cōspectū esse (appārēre, 2, -ui). — quī: i.e. Hannibal. — eī: i.e. puerō. — foris: i.e. exitūs (cf. l. 1).

6. properē (adv.): i.e. celeriter. — num: conjunction, whether.

7. puer cum: i.e. cum puer. — renūntiasset: renūntiō, 1, re-
port.

8. sēnsit: subject, Hannibal. — fortuitō (adv.): i.e. cāsū.

9. factum: sc. esse. — retinendam: render the gerundive by "could."

10. quam: i.e. vitam. — nē: freely, to avoid (with part. in -ing). — arbitriō: arbitrium, -ī, N., bidding.

11. virtūtum: freely, career of valor.

12. cōsuērat: i.e. cōsuēverat.

13. perfūctus: perfungor, 3, -fūctus sum, experience. This verb takes the same construction as ūtor and potior. — acquiēvit: acquiēscō, 3, -quiēvi, rest, i.e. die.

CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae*, 40, 41, 60)

LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, uti lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, si possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, existimāns publicē privātimque aere aliēnō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūci posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque principibus civitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. P.: *i.e.* Pūbliō.—dat: subject, Lentulus. — uti: *i.e.* ut.

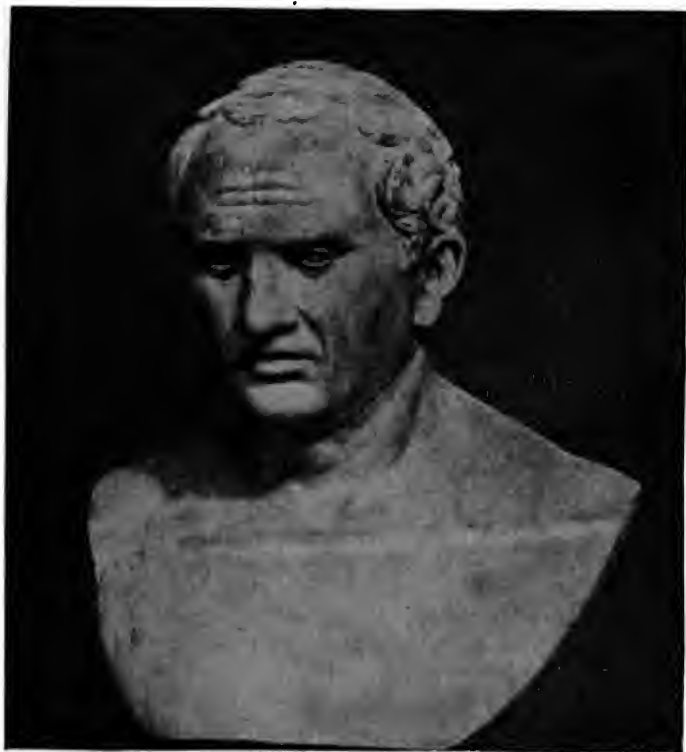
2. Allobrogum: a tribe of southeast Gaul. — requīrat: requirō, 3, -quisivī, -quisitus, *seek out*. — impellat: impellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, *incite*. — societātem: societas, -ātis, F., with gen., *partnership (in)*.

3. publicē privātimque: advs., *as a people and as individuals*.

4. oppressōs: modifying eōs (*i.e.* Allobrogēs) supplied. — bellicōsa: bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.

5. esset: for mood, cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. — tāle: tālis, -is, -e, *such a*.

7. civitātium: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. — nōverat: nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus: *become acquainted with*.



MĀRCUS TULLIUS CICERŌ

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline ; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation ; and his writings are a priceless possession.

sine morā, ubi primum lēgātōs in forō cōspēxit, percontātus pauca dē statū civitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum, requirere coepit, quem exitum tantis malis spērarent. Postquam illōs videt queri dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsāre senātum quod in eō auxiliū nihil esset, miseriis suis remedium mortem expectāre, “at ego,” inquit, “vōbīs, sī modo viri esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis.”

LESSON 135

The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy

Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adducti,
 10 Umbrēnum orāre ut suū miseretur: nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī essent, dum ea rēs civitatem aere aliēnō liberāret. Ille eōs in domum D. Brūtī perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. percontātus: percontor, 1, ask.

2. statū: status, -ūs, M., with gen., situation (in). — civitātis: sc. eōrum. — quasi: cf. p. 166, l. 6. — dolēns: doleō, 2, -uī, be concerned about.

3. requirere: inquire (cf. p. 172, l. 2). — exitum: solution, lit., way out (cf. p. 171, l. 1). — tantis malis: dat. case.

4. magistrātuum: magistrātus, -ūs, M., official. — accūsāre: accūsō, 1, rail at.

5. quod: cf. the note on p. 62, l. 13. — eō: i.e. senātū. — miseriis: miseriae, -ārum, F., troubles. — remedium: (as) a solution (remedium, -i, N.).

7. viri esse: i.e. play the part

of men. — tanta: freely, overwhelming. — ista: those . . . of yours.

10. orāre: for orāvērunt. — suū: gen. pl. — miseretur: miseror, 2, miseritus sum, with gen., take pity (on). — nihil, etc.: the indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying underlying orāre.

11. neque: translate “or.” — quod nōn . . . factūrī essent: that they would not undertake it; a relative clause of result.

12. dum: provided only. — ea: rēs: it. — aere aliēnō: translate the abl. “from” or “of.” — ille: Umbrenus.

13. in domum: cf. the note on p. 16, l. 11. — D.: i.e. Decimī.

neque aliēna cōnsili propter Semprōniam : nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabīnium arcēssit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūratiōnem aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis innoxios, quō lēgātis animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dimittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōnsili caperent : in alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium belli, magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illis volventibus, tandem vicit fortūna rei pūblīcae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō civitās plūrimum ūtēbatur, rem omnem, uti cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. aliēna : with gen., *unfriendly (to)*. — Semprōniam : wife of Brutus, who was himself not a party to the conspiracy.

2. quō : note the compar. in the clause. Umbrenus was a freedman, hence the need of calling in a conspirator of better social standing.

3. sermōnī : sermō, -ōnis, M., *interview*. — inesset : insum, inesse, inful, with dat., lit. *be (in)* ; translate the phrase freely. — eō : i.e. Gabiniō.

4. nōminat : nōminō, I, *name*. — praetereā : (*and*) *in addition*.

5. innoxios : pred. adj. (innoxius, -a, -um, *innocent*). — amplior : amplius, -a, -um, *great* (cf. the adv. *amplius*).

6. suam : modifier of operam. — domum : i.e. to their temporary quarters in Rome.

7. in incertō habuēre (for

habuērunt) : freely, *were undecided*. — quidnam : *what . . . really*, -nam being an intensive particle. — cōnsili : for syntax, cf. quid . . . causae, p. 150, l. 10.

8. alterā . . . alterā (l. 9) : *the one . . . the other*. — studium (-ī, N.) : with gen., *liking (for)*.

9. mercēs (-ēdis, F.) : *inducement*. — opēs : namely, those of the government (ops, opis, F., *help* ; pl., *resources*).

10. illis : i.e. Allobrogibus.

11. volventibus : volvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *turn over in (one's) mind* ; cf. the note on dēfēdente, p. 44, l. 17. — tandem : adv., *at length*. — rei pūblīcae : sc. Rōmānae.

12. patrōciniō : patrōcinium, -ī, N., *legal services*. — plūrimum : see multum.

13. uti (i.e. ut) : *as*. — cōgnōverant : sc. eam. — Cicerō : see the note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātīs praecepit, ut studium iūratiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, polliceantur, dentque operam uti eōs quam maximē ī fēstōs habeant.

LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the prison. Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of C (see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a day which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran named Petreius.

- 5 Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātīs, Petrēius tubā sīg dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hoc exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] feren proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum īn signīs concurrunt: pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur.

1. praecepit (for praecipit): *i.e.* imperat (praecipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus). — studium: cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. cēterōs: *i.e.* the other conspirators in Rome.

3. uti: *that*. — maximē: cf. the note on p. 44, l. 11. — manifestōs: manifestus, -a, -um, *obviously guilty*; translate the phrase freely.

5. sed: *now*. — explōrātīs: *inspected*. — tubā: tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet*. See the second illustration on p. 60.

6. dat: if rendered as a past,

use the pluperfect. — cohortī suās. — incēdere: incēdō, 3, -cessum est, *advance*. — hoc *i.e.* Catiline and his follower

7. eō . . . unde: *to a where* (lit. *whence*). — ferriis: ferentārii, -ōrum, M., *armed troops* (*e.g.* slingers the top illustration on p. 140)

9. omittunt: *make no use* lit. *omit* (omittō, 3, -misi, -mi Contrast the regular procedure beginning battle, p. 161, —rēs: *the fighting*. — veti *i.e.* of the government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter Instāre, illi haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditis in primā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciis arcēssere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī militis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātur. Petrēius, ubi videt Catilinam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostis indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibi resistentis interficit, deinde utrimque ex lateribus ceterōs adgreditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in primis pugnantes cadunt. Catilīna, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucis

1. *comminus*: adv., at close quarters. — *Instāre*: instō, 1, -stiti, press the fight. Here, and several times below, the pres. infin. replaces a third person of the perf. or imperf. indic.

2. *illi*: i.e. their opponents. — *haud timidē*: i.e. boldly (timidē, adv., with fear). — *certātur*: i.e. dimicātur (certō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est).

3. *primā*: the front of; cf. the use of *summum*, p. 104, l. 4.

4. *labōrantibus*: part. (sc. eis), those hard pressed. — *succurrere*: i.e. auxiliō venire (succurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum est). — *prō*: freely, so replace. — *sauciis*: i.e. vulnerātis (saucius, -a, -um).

5. *ferire*: i.e. percutere (feriō, 4, —, —). — *exsequēbātur*: i.e. praestābat (exsequor, 3, -secūtus sum); cf. p. 129, l. 9.

6. *contrā*: adv., lit. differently. — *ac*: than, lit. as. The whole phrase = praeter spem, p. 161, l. 10.

7. *tendere*: tendō, 3, tetendī,

tentus, stretch; here, exert (one's self). — *mediōs*: who occupy the center.

8. *indūcit*: indūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lit. lead (against). — *atque*: connecting the two participles. — *aliōs alibi*: some in one place, some in another; cf. *alii in aliam*, p. 80, l. 5.

9. *utrimque*: adv., on either side. — *lateribus*: cf. *latera*, p. 161, l. 8, and (for the form of phrase) *omnibus ex partibus*, etc. — *adgreditur*: i.e. adoritur (adgredior, 3, -gressus sum). Petreius first broke through the center, and then to the right and left made a flank attack upon the remnants of the enemy's line.

10. *Mānlius et Faesulānus*: Manlius and the citizen of Faesulae (a town of Etruria), Catiline's chief lieutenants. — *in primis*: i.e. in the front rank.

11. *fūsās*: fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, scatter. — *paucis*: i.e. (but) a handful.

relictum videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae tātis, in cōnfertissimōs hostīs incurrit, ibique pug cōnfoditur.

ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

LESSON 137

About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of C Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his experiences as a provincial officer.

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et pr 5 annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōnfestim esse eu vidērem, biduum Lāodicēae fuī, deinde Apamēae quiduum, trīduum Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēlii. Quod in oppidīs cum magni conventūs fuissent, multās civ acerbissimis tribūtīs et gravissimīs ūsūrīs et falsō

1. generis . . . dignitātis: for his was an ancient and noble family, and he had himself held high offices.

2. hostīs: *i.e.* the government forces. — incurrit: incurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum est: *plunge (in among)*.

4. cum, etc.: translate by a partic. clause. — pr. K. Sext.: *i.e.* pridie Kalendās Sextilis, the day before the first of August (Sextilis, -is, -e), namely, July 31, in the year 51 B.C.

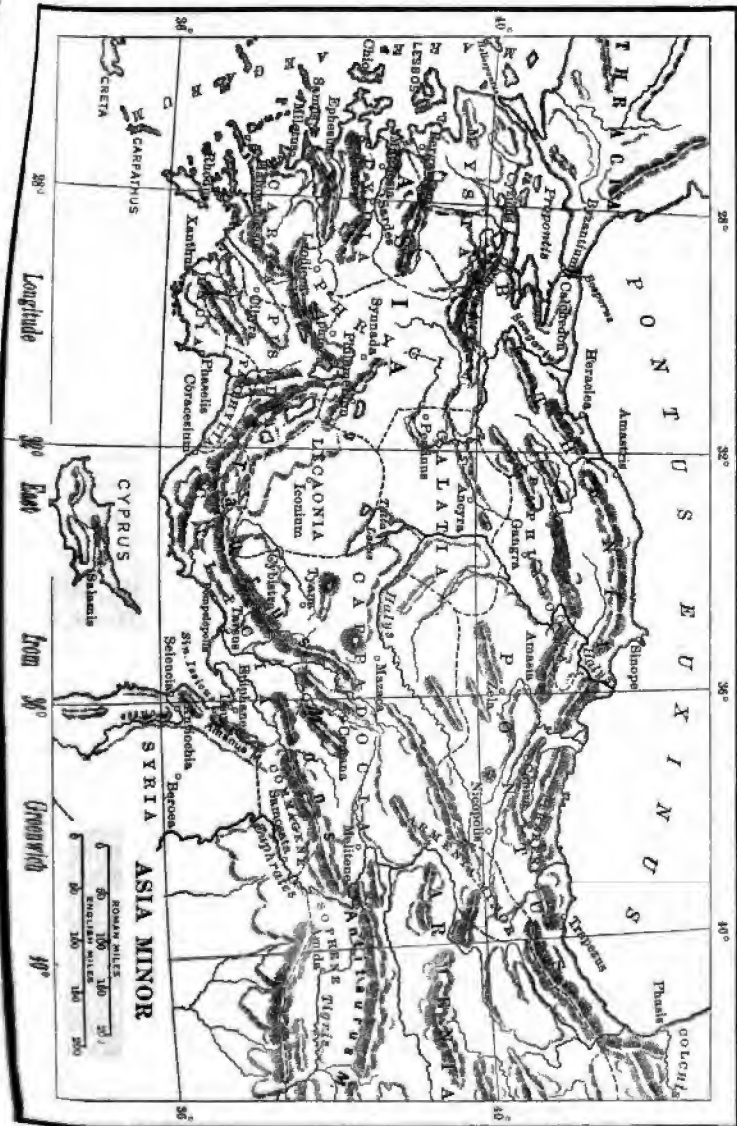
5. cōnfestim: for the winter would now soon come on (cf. p. 123, l. 1 ff.). — eundum: not eundem.

6. biduum: cf. bidui, p. 1. 4. — Lāodicēae: see the v end of the map on p. 179. — stopped.

7. Synnadīs: pl. city have the same form for loc. abl. — totidem: indeclinabl the same number of. — mēlii: for case, cf. domi.

8. conventūs: conventu M., circuit court. — fui freely, had been held.

9. acerbissimis tribūtīs, for syntax, cf. aere aliēnō, p. 1. 12. — ūsūrīs: ūsūra, -ae, f of interest.



aliēnō liberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditione quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quinque cohortēs sine lēgātō, sine tribūnō militum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus 5 esset in Lycāoniā, M. Annēiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās quinque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coactōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud Īconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō diligenter esset factum, ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiō- 10 ribus diēbus ex senātūs cōsultō et ēvocātōrum firmam manum et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum liberōrum rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissē.

LESSON 138

A War Scare

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere coepissem, K. Sept. lēgātī ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. cumque: *and inasmuch as*. — sēditione: sēditio, -ōnis, f., *mutiny*.

2. quādam: *a sort of*. — esset dissipātus: dissipō, i, *disrupt*. Supply et after this verb, and after cōnsēdissent, l. 4.

4. apud: *i.e. ad*; so also in l. 7.

8. quod: *relative*.

9. a. d. vii K. Sept.: *i.e. ante diem septimum Kalendās Septembrēs, the seventh (we would say, sixth) day before the first of September, namely, August 24, as the calendar was then arranged*. — cum, etc.: *translate by a participle phrase*. — superiōribus: *the preceding*.

10. ex: *in accordance with*. — cōsultō: cōsultum, -i, n., *decree*. — et . . . et . . . et: *both . . . and . . . and*. — ēvocātōrum: ēvocātus, -i, m., *recruited man*.

11. sānē: *adv., quite*. — liberōrum: liber, -era, -erum, *independent, or free*. The genitives may be rendered freely "supplied by"; cf. Gallōrum, p. 159, l. 11.

12. sociōrum: *as adj., allied*. — voluntāria: voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer*. — comparāvissē: comparō, i, *get together*.

13. lūstrātō: lūstrō, i, *review*.

14. K. Sept.: *i.e. Kalendās Septembribus (abl. of time when)*. — Commāgēnō: *an adj.*

umultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam se nūntiāverunt; quō auditō, vehementer sum com- cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā e Asiā.

ue in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud m Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappa- tenēns nova finitimōrum cōnsilia impedīrem.

reā cōgnōvī multōrum litteris atque nūntiis magnās rum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēam sse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam set, ab equitum meōrum turmīs et ā cohorte prae- quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occidiōne occi- Quārē, cū vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās s, nōn longē ā finibus esse Ciliciae, quam potui maxi- meribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēnī,

ssī: not mīsi. — tumul- dv., in great alarm. — nōn rely, without foundation in rē, adv., lit. truthfully). — : two years before, the Ro- d suffered crushing defeat nds of this warlike people. m . . . tum: not only also. — dē: with reference ā: note the position of the

siā: as on p. 169, l. 6. ppadociā: see the map on — extrēmā: extrēmus, -a, farthest; translate freely rendering of primus, sum-)--apud: as on p. 180, l. 4. ybistra: in apposition with ; render, however, as if a . — tuērer: tueor, 2, —,

7. tenēns: while occupying. Cicero anticipated that the Parthian invaders would take this more northern route. — nova . . . cōnsilia: cf. rēs novās, p. 28, l. 10. — finitimōrum: translate the gen. "on the part of."

10. eōrum: of theirs.

11. turmīs: cf. p. 161, l. 7. The forces here mentioned Cicero had sent south at a venture (cf. the note on l. 7).

12. occidiōne occisum: had been annihilated (occidiō, -ōnis, F., utter destruction).

14. quam potui maximis: i.e. the longest possible; cf. the note on p. 142, l. 5.

15. Amānum: a mountain range near the eastern border of Cilicia. — ut: i.e. ubi.

hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse cōgnōvī. Dēiotarum cōnfestim iam ad mē venientem cum magnō et firmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suis cōpiis certiōrem fēcī nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā
 5 rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

LESSON 139

Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita tempus ferret, subvenīrem, tum id, quod iam antē statueram vehementer interesse utrīusque prōvinciae, pācāre
 10 Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere perrēxī. Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. ab: *from the neighborhood* of (the town name without the prep. would mean rather "from"; cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). — recessisse: recēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *fall back*. — Bibulum: the (Roman) governor of Syria. Supply -que with this clause.

2. Dēiotarum: a friendly native king, whose offer of aid Cicerō had been glad to accept. — ad: *i.e. to join*. — venientem: translate by a relative clause.

3. et . . . et . . . et: the first of these conjunctions connects the two adjs.; the remaining two may be rendered *and . . . and in fact*. — suis cōpiis: *his following*.

4. nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset: *there did not seem to be (any) occasion for him to absent himself*; lit. what?

5. mē: subject of a new main clause in the indirect discourse. — sī quid: *if anything*. — novī: as (neut.) noun. — forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

7. cum: causal. — animō: *purpose*. — utrīque prōvinciae: *i.e. Cilicia and Syria*. — ita tempus ferret: *i.e. I should have opportunity*.

8. subvenīrem: *i.e. auxiliō essem* (subveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est). — tum: *now*. — id . . . agere perrēxī (l. 11): *I proceeded to carry out a project* (pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum est, *proceed*).

9. interesse: *interest, -esse, -fuit*, with gen., *be to the interest (of)*. — pācāre: namely, *(the project of) reducing to order*.

10. perpetuum hostem: namely, some troublesome robber hordes

11. -que: translate as if itaque —

et aliās partīs Ciliciae petere, abessemque ab Amānō iter ūnius diēi et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcissem, a. d. iiii Id. Oct., cum advesperāsceret, expeditō exercitū ita noctū iter fēcī, ut a. d. iiii Id. Oct., cum lūcisceret, in Amānum ascenderem; distribūtisque cohortibus et auxiliis (cum aliis Quīntus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliis C. Pomptīnus lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praeessent), plērōsque necopīnantīs oppressimus: qui occīsī capti que sunt, interclūsī fugā. Eranam autem (quae fuit nōn vicī instar sed urbis, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque Sepyram et Commorim, ācritē et diū repugnantibus, Pompīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore usque ad hōram diēi X, magnā multitūdine hostium occīsā, cēpimus, castellaque vī capta complūra incendimus. Hīs

2. Epiphanēam: see the map on p. 179. — a. d. iiii Id. Oct.: *i.e.* ante diem quārtum Idūs Octōbrēs, *on the fourth (we would say, third) day before the Ides of October, namely, Oct. 12.*

3. expeditō: as adj.; cf. the noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — ita: *i.e.* at such speed.

4. a. d. iiii Id. Oct.: Oct. 13 (cf. the note on l. 2). — lūcisceret: lūcīscit, 3, —, —, grow light.

5. distribūtis: distribuō, 3, —, —, ūtus, divide up, or make a division of. — cum aliis Quīntus frāter . . . praessent: my brother Quintus . . . being in command of some, etc. (cf. aliī . . . aliī, p. 20, l. 15).

6. lēgātus: (as) lieutenant; cf. Quīntus' similar relation to Caesar in the Gallic war. — simul: with mēcum.

8. plērōsque: sc. hostēs.

9. -que: we would say "or." — interclūsī: interclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, cut off. — fugā: translate the abl. "from." — Eranam: (along with the town names of l. 11), object of cēpimus, l. 14

10. instar: the size (of); cf. p. 32, l. 5. — quod: (and) which; for the gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — item: adv., likewise.

11. repugnantibus: *i.e.* resistentibus (repugnō, 1); abl. absol. with iis (*i.e.* incolis) supplied. The two following clauses also are abl. absolutes.

12. tenente: *i.e.* keeping to. — antelūcānō: antelūcānus, -a, -um, preceding dawn.

13. X: *i.e.* decimam, ordinal and cardinal having the same sign; cf. the dates above.

14. vī capta: *i.e.* expugnata

rēbus ita gestis, castra in rādīcibus Amānī habuimus apud
 Arās Alexandrī quadriduum, et in reliquiis Amānī delenda
 agrisque vāstandis, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae
 est, id tempus omne cōsumpsimus.

LESSON 140

Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds

5 Cōfectis hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eleutherocilicum Pindenis-
 sum exercitum addūxī. Quod cum esset altissimō
 mūnitissimō locō, ab iisque incoletur, quī nē rēgibus qu-
 dem umquam pāruiissent, cum et fugitivōs reciperent, et
 Parthōrum adventum ācerimē expectārent, ad existimatiōnem
 imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimere eōrum
 audāciam, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī ali-
 eni essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vallō et fossā circumdedi, sex castellis castrisque ma-
 ximis saepsi, aggere, vniis, turribus oppugnāvi, ūsusque to-

1. rādīcibus: *foothills* (rādix, -icis, F., lit. *root*).

2. reliquiis: *i.e. the remain-
 ing landmarks*; cf. reliquiās, p. 36,
 l. 15.

3. vāstandis: vāstō, I, *lay
 waste*. — quae pars eius montis:
i.e. in ea montis parte, quae. —
 meae prōvinciae est: *belongs to*
 (lit. *is of*) *my province*.

5. Pindenissum: in apposition
 with oppidum. The exact location
 of this town is not known.

6. quod cum esset: *since this
 was (located)*.

7. mūnitissimō: transl. the superl.
 "strongly." — iis . . . quī:
 with subjunctive, *such (people) as*;

for the position of -que, cf. ob-
 eamque causam, p. 129, l. 5.

rēgibus: namely, of their own.

8. cum: (*and*) *since*. — fu-
 tivōs: fugitivus, -i, M., *runaway
 slave*.

9. existimatiōnem: existimati-
 tiō, -ōnis, F., *prestige*.

10. imperī: (*our*) *government*.
 — comprimere: comprimō,
 -pressi, -pressus, *put a stop to*.

11. quō: note the compar.
 the clause. — aliēni . . . ab:
disposed toward; cf. p. 148, l. 7

12. imperiō: *rule*.

13. circumdedi: sc. oppidum

14. saepsi: saepiō, 4, *saepi*
 saeptus, *surround*. — aggere: *aggere*

mentis multis, multis sagittariis, magnō labōre meō, sine ullā molestiā sūmptūve sociōrum, septimō quinquāgēsimo diē rem cōnfēci, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbātis aut incēnsis, compulsī in potestātem meam pervenirent.

His erant finitimī parī scelere et audāciā Tebarānī. Ab iis, Pindenissō captō, obsidēs accēpī; exercitum in hiberna dīmisi; Quīntum frātre negōtiō praeposuī, ut in vicis aut captis aut male pācātis exercitus collocārētur.

ger, -eris, M., *mound* (of earth or other material). — viniis: *vinia*, -ae, F., *penthouse*. — tormentis: tormentum, -i, N., *catapult*. Cf. the ballista shown on p. 29.

1. sagittariis: sagittarius, -i, M., *bowman*. — meō: *on my part*.

2. molestiā: molestia, -ae, F., *inconvenience*. — sūmptū: sūmptus, -ūs, M., *expense*. — sociōrum: *to* (lit. *of*) *the friendly natives* (from whom a Roman governor usually felt at liberty to extort any service he desired).

3. ut: *introducing a result*

clause. — disturbātis: disturbō, 1, *wreck*.

4. compulsī: *freely, in despair*, lit. *forced (to it)*; sc. hostēs.

5. his: the people just subdued. — parī: pār, paris, adj., *equal*. — scelere: scelus, -eris, N., *guilt*, lit. *crime*; the whole abl. phrase expresses quality. — Tebarānī: subject of erant.

7. negōtiō . . . ut . . . exercitus collocārētur: *freely, the business of quartering the army*; lit. *what?* — aut captis, etc.: *translate by a relative clause*.

WORD LIST

The following list shows the new words introduced into each successive reading lesson. Aside from numerals, words found in but one lesson are treated in the notes on that lesson, and do not appear here. For proper names, the general vocabulary should be consulted.

The designation (*) indicates that the word so marked occurs in four or more lessons.

English words in italics are derived from, or otherwise related to, the Latin words opposite to which they stand. They may be found useful in helping to recall the meaning of the Latin words as given in the general vocabulary.¹

¹ Many Latin words are formed with the help of a prefix. Though the force of this prefix does not stand out clearly in every case, it is worth while to become familiar with the general meanings of the following:—

ā-, *ab-*: *away, aside, off.*

ad-: *to, into, near, by, at.*

circum-: *around.*

con-: *with, together* (*con-* being a form of *cum*). Often denotes completion (e.g. *cōficiō* [*faciō*]), or energy of action (e.g. *contendō*).

dē-: *from, down.*

dī-: *from, away, separately.*

ē-, *ex-*: *forth, out, from, up.* Often denotes success (e.g. *expugnō*), or energy of action (e.g. *excipiō* [*capiō*]).

in-: *upon, on, in.*

in-: *not, or un-*.

inter-: *between.*

ob-: *before, against.*

per-: *through, across.* Often intensive. *very, exceedingly.*

prae-: *before, in advance, over.*

praeter-: *by, past.*

prō-: *before, forth, forward, out, fore-*.

re-: *back, again.*

sub-: *under.*

trans-: *across, over.*

Some of the above prefixes take different forms according to the first letter of the word with which they are combined. The following alternative forms should in particular be noted: *ā-*, *ab-* (*abs-*); *ad-* (*ac-*, *af-*, *al-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *a[s]-*, *at-*); *con-* (*col-*, *com-*, *co-*); *dis-* (*dif-*, *di-*); *ē-*, *ex-* (*ec-*, *ef-*, *e[x]-*); *in-* (*ig-*, *il-*, *im-*); *inter-* (*intel-*); *ob-* (*oc-*, *op-*); *re-* (*red-*); *sub-* (*sus-*, *su[s]-*); *trans-* (*trā-*).

In some words united with these prefixes a vowel is regularly altered, e.g.:

a or *e* becomes *i*: *as-ficiō* (for *faciō*) and *-tineō* (for *teneō*).

ae becomes *i*: *as-cidō* (for *caedō*; cf. *caedēs*) and *-iquus* (for *aequus* in *iniquus*).

	neque, nec*	advena* (ad + veniō)
	nūllus, * nulli-fy	aperiō, * aper-ture
* (-āre), appella-	olim*	audiō, * audi-torium
	oppidum*	avis, avi-ation
* circum-ference	pator, * pater-nal	bellum, * re-bell-ion.
creed	pecūnia, * pecuniary	cantus, chant
conj.)	perveniō*	cōgnōscō, * re-cognize
	portus*	cōnsequor, * consequence
	possum, * poss-ibility	cōnsilium, * counsel
	postea, * post-pone	cum* (prep.)
	prōgredior*	dīcō, * dic-tation
n, * diverse	prope* (adv.)	diēs, * di-urnal
	prope* (prep.)	dō, * do-nation
	puer, * puer-ile	faciō, * fac-tor
rb)	-que*	fortiter, * forti-tude
	quī* (relative)	gerō, * belli-gerent
	quidam*	ibi*
xit	quod* (conj.)	igitur*
	rēx, * reg-al	ignōtus, * contrast noted
homi-cide	saepe*	insula, insulate
	secundum* (prep.)	interim*
	sed*	is*
ō, * intelligent	spērō, * de-sperate	itaque*
m*	sui, * sui-cide	iter, * itin-er-ant
ad*	sum, * essence	laetus*
* inven-tion	suspīcor*	libenter*
	tam*	mōns, * mount
	tempus, * tempor-al	morior, * mori-bund
* juvenile	teneō, * re-ten-tive	nōlō*
	terra, * terr-estrial	nūntius, * e-nunci-ate
	timeō, * tim-id	obtinēō, cf. teneō
	trānseō, * transit	omnis, * omni-potent
	tum*	paene, * pen-insula
l, * magni-tude	usque*	parō*
marine	ut, uti*	parvus*
* multi-tude	via, * imper-vi-ous	pauci, * pauci-ty
' nat-al	videō, * e-vident	per, * per-forate
nauti-cal	volō, * vol-untary	periculum*
* naviga-tion		petō, * pet-ition
nav-al		postrēmō*
	2	proficiscor*
	ad . . . versus*	

pulcher*
 quaerō,* *re-quire*
 quisquam*
 redeō* (red + eō)
 rēgina, cf. rēx
 rēgnū,* *regn-ant*
 rēs,* *rebus*
 suus,* cf. sui
 tamen*
 trēs,* *tri-nity*
 ubi* (adv.)
 ubi* (conj.)
 validus,* *valid*
 vereor,* *re-verent*

3

ā, ab*
 adeō* (verb), cf. eō
 alius,* *ali-bi*
 animus,* *anim-ated*
 appropinquō*
 atque, ac*
 bāca
 dē*
 domus,* *dom-estic*
 dux,* *duke*
 ēgredior,* *egress*
 gaudeō,* *gaudy*
 gaza
 harēna, *arena*
 ignis,* *ignite*
 incola*
 inde*
 irātus,* *irate*
 iaciō,* *e-ject*
 māne*
 mille,* *mile*
 moror*
 mox*
 natō
 noctū,* *noct-urnal*

nōn*
 numquam*
 passus*
 post* (adv.), cf. postea
 primō,* *prim-acy*
 putō,* *com-pute*
 quārē*
 quoque*
 rāmus, *rami-fy*
 sentiō,* *senti-ment*
 statim*
 ūllus,* cf. nūllus
 vehementer,* *vehement*

4

amō,* *am-iable*
 brevī,* *brevis-ty*
 certus*
 cīvīs,* *civil*
 colōnia*
 colōnus*
 compleō,* *comple-ment*
 condō*
 coorior*
 fēliciter,* *felici-ty*
 ferō,* *re-fer*
 fiō,* *fiat*
 fluctus, *fluctu-ate*
 haud*
 incolūmis*
 iniūria*
 interficiō*
 iterum,* *iter-ate*
 littera*
 pars*
 praefectus,* *prefect*
 properō*
 relinquō,* *relinquish*
 scribō,* *scribe*
 semel
 spēs,* cf. spērō

subitō*
 sustineō,* cf. teneō
 tempestās,* *tempest*
 ūnus,* *uni-ty*
 ventus,* *venti-late*

5

adeō (adv.)
 amīcus,* *amic-able*
 capiō,* *cap-acity*
 cōnor*
 dōnum,* cf. dō
 filiū,* *fili-al*
 forte,* *fort-uitous*
 idem,* *iden-tical*
 mīrus, *mīr-acle*
 nārō,* *narra-tion*
 nōmen,* *nomin-al*
 nōtus,* cf. ignōtus
 nunc*
 piscis, *Pisces*
 quīn* etiam
 rapiō,* *rapine*
 semper*
 senex, *sen-ility*
 solum,* *sole-ly*
 vir,* *vir-ile*

6

adorior*
 adversus,* *adverse*
 argentum,* *Argentius*
 aurum, *auri-ferous*
 castra,* *Chester*
 celeriter,* *celeri-ty*
 cibus*
 cogō,* *cogent*
 cōsumō,* *consum-ex*
 dēdūcō,* *deduct*
 flūmen*
 fortis,* cf. fortiter
 frumentum*

hostile
* cf. mittō (be-

milit-ary
re-mit

(sui) cide
post-pone
-o (and con,
pugna-cious
* receipt
ipa-rian
* Sagittarius

silvan

veh-icle

7
aqua-tic
arbor

* cf. locus (below)
frig-id
fugi-tive
* ex-hume
e,* insidi-ous
ad-jacent

loco-motive
* manu-al

itus,* cf. terreo
ow)
pri-ority

* reduce
ob-solete
* sono-rous
* terr-or
* con-vene

8

accipio,* accept
captivus*
clam*
complārē,* cf. plur-al
cōnacendō,* (a)scend
cōpia,* copi-ous
dēmum*
dōnec*
dum*
emō,* red-emption
habitō,* habita-tion
hic* (pron.)
idōneus*
miser,* misery
necio,* contrast science
novus,* nov-el
quō* (adv.)
reportō,* report
sacerdō,* sacerdot-al
sequor,* con-sequence
servō,* con-serve
suprā*
tractō,* tract-able
vëndō,* vend-er

9

dūcō,* pro-duce
effugiō,* cf. fugiō
frangō,* frag-ile
frustrā,* frustrate
longus*
mālō*
paulō*
pirāta*
poena,* penal
praeda,* preda-tory
sēdecim
vēlum,* veil
vetus, veter-an

10

carb,* carn-al
certē
corpus,* corpor-eal
edō,* ed-ible
equus,* equ-estrian
famē,* fam-ine
filia,* cf. filius
impetus,* impetu-ous
iuvō,* coad-ju-tor
mātrimōnium, matri-
mony
mēnsis*
mentior
oboes*
oppidānī,* cf. oppidum
pereō,* cf. eō (verb)
puella*
quamquam*
quondam,* quondam
(adj.)
trādō,* tradition
uxor,* uxor-ious

11

cōspectus,* conspectus
deinde*
duo,* du-al
explōrō*
ferē*
fretum, frith (?)
hic* (adv.)
lēniter,* leni-ty
lūna, lunar
nō*

12

altus,* alti-tude
āmittō,* cf. mittō
angustus
annus,* annu-al

conveniō,* *convene*
 excipiō*
 hiemō*
 magister, *magistr-ate*
 negotior, *negotiate*
 (posterus)*
 scelerātus
 sub,* *sub-tract*

13

agō,* *ag-itate*
 ante* (adv.), *anti-cipate*
 apud*
 clāmor,* *clamor*
 cōstituō,* *constitu-tion*
 currō,* *in-cursion*
 deus,* *dei-ty*
 ēmigrō
 ērumpō,* *eruption*
 grātia,* *grace*
 interdiū
 lēgātus,* *de-legate*
 liberī*
 morbus,* *cholera morbus*
 nox,* *equi-nox*
 reliquus,* *cf. relinquo*
 saxum*
 tūtus, *tute-lage*
 undique*
 vulnerō,* *vulner-able*

14

acerbus, *acerbi-ty*
 ambulō,* *per-ambulate*
 asper,* *asperi-ty*
 aut*
 cadō,* *de-cadence*
 commoveō,* *commotion*
 dēsum
 hiems,* *cf. hiemō*
 inquam*

loquor,* *loqu-acity*
 maestus*
 -ne
 numerus,* *numer-al*
 prōpōnō, *propose*
 proximus,* *proximi-ty*
 rideō, *ridi-culous*
 sūmō,* *re-sume*
 tacitus,* *tacit*
 tū*
 verbum,* *verb-al*
 virtūs,* *cf. vir*
 vōx,* *voc-al*

15

alter,* *alter-ation*
 ambō,* *ambi-guous*
 arbitror,* *arbitra-tion*
 caedēs,* *sui-cide*
 cōgitō,* *cogitate*
 comes,* *con-comit-ant*
 concilium*
 contumēlia,* *contumely*
 convocō,* *convoca-tion*
 crudēlis
 cūrō,* *mani-cure*
 facile,* *facili-ty*
 incendō,* *incend-iary*
 inimicus,* *inimic-al*
 ostendō,* *osten-tation*
 recūsō*
 sīca*
 signum*
 simul,* *simul-taneously*
 umquam*
 vincō,* *con-vince*
 vulnus,* *cf. vulnerō*

16

afficiō*
 amplector (com)*plexus*

bene,* *bene-fit*
 dīmittō,* *cf. mittō*
 frāter,* *frater-nal*
 gravis,* *grave*
 polliceor*
 religiō*
 secūris*
 venēnum, *venom*
 vērō,* *veri-ly*

17

admoveō*
 animadvertō*
 ardēns, *ardent*
 audeō,* *aud-acious*
 bōs, *bov-ine*
 castellum,* *castle*
 cōnātus, *cf. cōnor*
 dēfendō*
 dēpōnō, *depose*
 dēsisitō*
 extingūō
 hōra*
 moneō, *moni-tor*
 oppugnō,* *(ob + pugn)*
 prōdō*
 salūs,* *salut-ary*
 tantum,* *tant-amount*
 tēctum, *pro-lect*
 villa,* *village*
 vocō,* *in-voke*

18

aciēs*
 adiuvō,* *co-adju-tor*
 adsum*
 aedēs,* *edi-fice*
 ager,* *agri-culture*
 auxilium,* *auxili-ary*
 caelum,* *cel-estial*
 fenestra

* cf. fugiō
rātor,* *imperial-ive*
rao,* cf. lateō (be-
)

* *latent*

uam,* cf. post

v.)
iciō, *prospect*

et*

lum*

cf. tūtus

19

r,* *acri-monious*

nentum,* *detri-*

itus*

nō*

* *gent-ile*

iquus,* cf. longus

s,* *mode*

ccupō, *preoccupy*

n

is* *prime*

science

li,* *singul-ar*

20

cf. ācritēr

uas,* cf. arma

ō

ō,* *exul-tation*

* *fin-al*

, *herbage*

i,* *minus*

*

lō,* *perfect*

persuādēō*
sedēō, *sedent-ary*
socius*, *soci-al*

21

abscidō, cf. occidō

caput,* *capit-al* (adj.)

cōnsōlor, *consola-tion*

dēdō*

instruō,* *instruction*

intercipiō*

mora*

pāx,* *pac-ific*

perfugiō

porta,* *portal*

sine,* *sine-cure*

vallēs*

22

ante,* (prep.) *ante-*

chamber

audācter,* *audaci-ty*

cēna

cēnō

cōnficiō*

perpauci, cf. pauci

pēs,* *ped-al*

silentium*

sōpītus,* *sop-orific*

surgō, *in-surgent*

vigilō, *vigil*

23

aes*

aliēnus,* *alien*

clārus,* *clari-fy*

cōmitās, *comity*

cōmitter

grātus*

praemittō,* *premise*

propter*

prōvincia*

solvō,* *dis-solve*

urbs,* *urb-an*

vīvō,* *re-vive*

24

agricola,* cf. ager

assēnsus, *assent*

coerceō, *coercion*

cruciātus,* *cruci-fixion*

iniussū,* cf. iubeō

maneō*

ōrō, *ad-ora-tion*

primū,* cf. primō

quaestus,* *quest*

superior*

25

adhūc*

ballista

cārus,* *chari-ty*

custōdia*

custōdiō*

mūrus, *mur-al*

nūntiō,* cf. nūntius

obsideō,* *obsess*

opus,* *oper-ate*

praedium*

26

ancora*

antequam,* cf. ante

(adv.)

cōsistō*

ignōminia, *ignominy*

labor*

malus,* *male-factor*

paulātīm*

propinquus, *propinqui-ty*

revocō, *revoke*

27

abeō,* cf. eō (verb)
 aliquamdiū,* cf. diū
 appellō* (-ere)
 ars, *art-ist*
 conducō
 discō, *disc-iple*
 lūdō, *col-lusion*
 māter,* *mater-nal*
 post,* (prep.) *post-pone*
 sexāgintā*
 simulō,* *simulate*
 tribūnus*

28

arceō
 at*
 casa*
 cōnsidō,* (sub)*side*
 instar
 lectus*
 mōs, *mor-al*
 regiō*
 rīvus,* *de-riv-ation*
 tōtus*
 undēvigintī

29

advesperāscit, cf. *vespers*
 dēligō*
 difficilis*
 discēdō,* (re)*cede*
 impedimenta,* *impedi-ment*
 nisi*
 patior,* *patient*
 periculōsus, cf. *periculum*
 respondeō,* *respond*
 sī*
 tollō,* *ex-tol*

30

frigidus, *frigid*
 glaciēs,* *glacier*
 illūcēscō,* (trans)*lucent*
 magis*
 mātūrē
 molestē*
 occupō,* *occupa-tion*
 pertinācia, cf. teneō
 satīs,* *satis-factory*
 trāns,* *trans-it*
 ūnā,* *uni-ty*

31

condiciō*
 expellō,* *expel*
 explorātor*
 invītus*
 legiō*
 nē . . . quidem*
 opera,* *opera-tives*
 ultrō*
 unde*

32

admoneō,* cf. moneō
 cēdō,* *re-cede*
 centuriō*
 cohortor*
 compellō, *compulsion*
 incommodum, *incom-mode*
 inrumpō,* cf. *crumpō*
 lacus*
 proelium*
 reliquiae, cf. *reliquus*
 statuō,* *statute*
 temerē,* *temeri-ty*
 ululātus*

33

alibi, cf. *alins*
 dēmittō*
 etsi*
 inferō,* *infer*
 laudō, *laud*
 mātōna, *matron*
 ōtiōsus, *otiose*
 tantus,* cf. *tantum*
 victōria *

34

audācia,* cf. *audācter*
 commūnis, *communi-ty*
 concēdō*
 exigō, *exact* (verb)
 iūs,* *jus-tice*
 licet, *license*
 memoria*
 postulō,* *postulate*
 repetō, cf. *petō*
 senātus*
 sex,* *sex-tant*
 videor,* cf. *videō*

35

celeritās,* cf. *celeriter*
 collis*
 contineō, cf. teneō
 cotidiē,* cf. *diēs*
 exstruō, cf. *structure*
 intrā,* *intrans*
 largior, *larg-ess*
 libertās
 meus,* *meum* (an-
 tuum)
 mūnitiō,* *munitions*
 publicus*
 quantus,* *quanti-ty*
 vāllum*

, cf. *vetus*
tal

36

aliquis)*

*
* *hibern*-ate
r*
ihil-ist
um, *stipend*

37

eniō,* *circum*-

ō,* cf. *servō*
devious
o-tism
elude
(vain)*glori*-ous
*setus**

cf. *pugnō*

is*

* *tergi*-version
cf. *advesperāscit*

38

tō,* cf. *reportō*
cf. *dēdō*
dubious
tō
v.)
even-tuate
l, *event*
l, cf. *puer*

39

*
*, cf. *circum*

cruentus
dēficiō,* *deficit*
inferior
inopia,* contrast *op*-ulent
multō,* cf. *multus*
necessārius
*nix**
nūdus, de-*nude*
*quīque**
sagum
vestigium, *vestige*

40

*classis**
coniungō,* *conjunction*
fallō,* *fall*-ible
meridiēs,* *meridian*
occāsiō, *occasion*
potestās,* cf. *possum*
rārus, *rare*
*rursus**
servus,* *serv*-ile
spectō,* *specta*-cle

41

audāx, cf. *audācter*
*causa**
contrā, *contra*-dict
damnō,* con-*demn*
dēleō,* *dele*-terious
*impetrō**
*invisus**
mūniō,* cf. *mūnitiō*
nātūra
*nō**
perfidia, *perfidy*
*quam**
strēnuus, *strenuous*

42

antēā,* cf. *ante* (adv.)
exsilium

graviter,* cf. *gravis*
indicō,* (e)*dict*
permōtus,* cf. *com*-
moveō
saltem

43

*aeger**
aegrē
*fortūna**
oculus, *ocul*-ist
eppugnātiō,* cf. *op*-
pugnō
tabernāculum,* *taber*-
nacle
*varius**

44

contendō,* cf. *tend*
dexter, *dexter*-ous
expectō,* *expect*
fleō
flos, *flor*-ist
imperium,* *empire*
inter,* *inter*-sect
lacrima, *lachrym*-ose
multitūdō,* *multitude*
octō,* *oct*-agon
patria,* *patri*-ot
*praesidiūm**
*sic**

45

*abhinc**
antiquitus, *antique*
honor
hortor,* cf. *cohortor*

46

cavus, *cavi*-ty
committō,* *commis*
*muller**

priusquam,* cf. prius
quandō
reperiō*
vicus,* War-wick

47

abripio, cf. rapio
diligentia,* diligence
dominus,* domin-ate
evadō, evade
facinus*
fidelis,* fidelity
moribundus, cf. morior
quis* (indef.)
stō,* stationary
superbia, superb
-ve*
vix*

48

barbarus*
expediō,* expedite
firmō, confirm
incitō, incite
intrō,* cf. intrā
praesum*
saltō

49

ceteri*
circumstō, circumstance
extrā,* extra-ordinary
intervallum,* interval
negōtiator,* cf. negō-
tior
patefaciō
plānō,* plain-ly
porrigō*
tegō,* cf. tectum
vestimentum,* vestiment
vultus

50

adventus,* advent
effero,* elation
faveō, fav-or

51

absum,* absent
arripio,* cf. rapio
canō, cf. cantus
memorabilis, memorable
navigium,* cf. nāvis

52

admīror, admire
ēdō,* edit
fortitudō, cf. fortiter
gemitus
sōlus,* cf. solum
superō,* in-super-able
vestis, cf. vestimentum

53

carrus, carr-iage
crūdēlitas,* cf. crūdēlis
fluō, flu-id
hortus, horti-culture
impōnō, impose
multum,* cf. multo
paulum*
suspēnsus, suspense

54

citrō*
cuneus, cunei-form
dēferō*
gubernāculum, guberna-
torial
moveō,* cf. commoveō
pandō, ex-pand

sententia,* cf. sentiō
ulterior,* ulterior

55

impediō,* cf. impedi-
menta
liburnica*
occidēna, occident
onerāria, oner-ous
onustus*
tardō, tardy

56

abiciō,* cf. iaciō
inlidō (col)lision
obstinātus, obstinate
prōiciō,* cf. iaciō
resistō*
responsum, cf. respon-
dēō
retineō,* cf. teneō
saevitia
super, super-impose
viginti*

57

commemorō
dēfigō (pre)fix
necō,* inter-nec-ine
prōlābor (re)lapsa
religō, cf. liga-ture
supīnus, supine
tenebrae

58

careō
coniciō,* cf. iaciō
exitiālis
finitimus*
frequēna, frequent

is
 *
 ' ap-proba-tion
 pulver-ize

59

or
 us, cf. circum
 * dubitate
 or*
 i*
 :grō (dis)inte-
 ine-vit-able

60

cf. clāmor
 },* conference
 is

61

,* accede
 * bonny
 us, quotient

62

error
 , foli-age
 },* quiescent
 s,* somno-lent

63

aur-ist
 tus
 glory
 ulāris
 cf. morior
 ūnus

tantopere, cf. tantum
 ūtor,* ut-ensil

64

adulēscēns, adolescent
 canis, canine
 dēfessus*
 exiguus*
 quārtus,* quarter

65

aedificō, cf. aedēs
 caespes
 cōnsuēscō,* (de) suctude
 cōnsultō
 ducentī
 ēliciō, elicit
 excidō, cf. occidō
 fera, fero-cious
 frūstum,* frustum
 sēdēs, cf. sedē
 timor,* cf. timeō
 ūsus,* cf. ūtor
 vēnor, ven-ison
 vicīnus, vicini-ty

66

dēnique
 diligenter,* cf. diligen-
 tia
 incendium, cf. incendō
 misceō, pro-misc-uous
 nātiō,* nation
 praeter,* preter-natural
 praetervēhor, cf. vēhō
 reor,* rate (verb)

67

dividō
 intus, cf. intrā
 mūtō,* per-mula-tion

perrumpō, cf. ērumpō
 repentinus*

68

callidus
 dēvorō
 excitō,* excite
 lingua, lingu-ist
 nūper*
 praetereō, cf. eō

69

aetās, et-ernal
 carpō, ex-cerpt
 prōsper(-erus),
 prosperi-ty
 septem

70

accidō,* accident
 argenteus, cf. argentum
 cōnfestim*
 duodecim, duodecim-al
 gubernātor, cf gubernā-
 culum
 pōculum
 spoliō*
 vis*

71

avāritia, avarice
 cōfirmō,* cf. affirm
 foris, per-for-ate
 praemium,* premium
 queror, quer-ulous

72

appetō, cf. petō
 dimicō*
 percutiō, percussion
 umorus

73
absconditus, cf. condō
adhaerēscō, *adhere*
dēsterēō, *deter*
dētrūdō, * (in) *trusion*
eōdem*
praestō*
secundus, * cf. secundum

74
incrēdibilis, *incredible*
lūx, * cf. illucēscō

75
adstō, cf. stō
circumēō, * cf. eō
colloquium, * cf. loquor
colloquor, cf. loquor
ira, cf. irātus

76
cōspiciō, * cf. cōnspēc-
tus
ēruptiō, cf. ērumpō
obscurus, *obscuri-ty*
trādūcō, cf. dūcō
vigilia, * cf. vigilō

77
addūcō, * *adduce*
perlegō, cf. *lectern*
quīvis, cf. volō
venia, *venial*

78
custōs, * cf. custōdiō
decem, *decim-al*
fōns, *fount*
prēcurre
versor*, *con-versant*

79
carcer, in-carcer-ate
efficiō, *effect*
negō, *negat-ion*
potior*
princeps, *princip-al*
tolerō, *tolerate*

80
claudō, * *se-clude*
oblīvīscor, *obliv-ion*
omnīnō, cf. omnia
vel

81
amplius, *ample*
auscipiō
tribūtum

82
clādēs
integer, *integer*
praesertim
repente, * cf. repentinus

83
cōstantia, *constancy*
existimō, * cf. *estimate*
perseverō, *persevere*
quīndecim

84
cāsus, * *casu-al*
dētrahō, *detract*
dolor, *dolor-ous*
pedetemptim
quīnquāgintā
quō* (conj.)

85
eb*

86
ascendō, * *ascend*
dēiciō, * cf. iaciō
tertius, * *terti-ary*

87
aequus*, *equ-able*
prōmunturium

88
dēserō
fidēs, cf. fidēlis
similis*

89
beneficium, * (bene —
faciō)
dēversōrium
lignātiō
referō, *refer*

90
convertō*
fūmus, *fume*
horrendus, *horr-or*
incolō, cf. incola
apernō, *spurn*

91
portō, * *port-er*
spatium, * *spaci-ous*
transportō, * *transpor.*
valētūdō, *valetudin-ari-*
vinculum
vivus, cf. vivō

92
coniārātiō
male, cf. malus

93
augeō, *aug-ment*
emptiō, cf. emō

rinus
nō, *repress*
itā

94

ō, * *judic-iary*
pōnō, *preposition*
r, *vaga-bond*

95

ius, * *gladi-ator*
rō, * *cf. imperātor*
tus, *cf. certus*
adior, *ingress*
urbō, *perturb*
tuor
uāgintā
iciō

96

ōnō (*ad + pōnō*)
tās, * *cf. civis*
redior

97

tō, *cf. convertō*

98

icitia, *cf. amicus*

99

acurrō, * *concourse*

100

ntinēns, *continent*
rfuga, *cf. perfugiō*
eculor, *specula-tor*

101

ques, * *cf. equus*
oster *

premo, * *cf. reprimō*
tot

102

cōnsulō, *consult*
magnopere, *cf. magnus*
ōrātiō, * *oration*
subsidiū, * *subsidy*
ūniversi, * *universal*

103

cōnseō
disputō, *disputa-tion*
quis* (*interrog.*)
uterque*

104

cupidō, *cupidi-ty*
medius, * *medio-crity*
nocturnus, *cf. nox and*
noctū
plērique*
prōnūtiō, *pronounce*

105

cohors*
dēscendō, *cf. ascendō*
dispōnō, *dispose*
iniquus, * *cf. aequus*
officiū, * *office*
orbis, *orbit*
prōvideō, *provide*
quisque*

106

auctōritās, *authority*
octāvus, *octave*
parcō, *parsi-mony*
rogō, *inter-rega-tion*
trāgula

107

pāreō

108

dēmōnstrō, *demonstra-tion*
doceō, * *doc-tor*
equitātus, * *cf. eque*
intereō, *cf. pereō*
intermittō, *intermission*
liberō, * *cf. libertās*
nōndum
nōnnūlli* (*nōn + nūlli*)
opprimō, * *oppress*
peditātus, * *cf. pēs*
perpetuus, *perpetu-al*
subsequor, *subsequent*

109

addō, *add-ition*
cōnsuētūdō, * *cf. cōn-suēscō*
fossa, *foss-il (adj.)*
prīdiō, *cf. diēs*
ratiō, *ration-al*
turris, * *turr-et*

110

circumdō
comprehendō, *compre-hend*
differō (*dis + ferō*)
populus, *popul-ar*
septimus

111

commodus, *cf. incem-modum*
undecimus

112
occurro, *occur*
profectiō, cf. proficiscor
remittō,* *remit*

113
cernō, dis-*cern*
pristinus, *pristine*

114
obsidiō; cf. obsideō
quoniam

115
decimus, *decim-al*
ēmittō, *emit*
postridiē,* cf. pridie
prōdūcō, *produce*
simulātiō,* cf. simulō

116
cōntiō
nōnus
temeritās, cf. temerē

117
trīduum, cf. trēs and diēs
tumultus, *tumult*

118
pedes,* cf. pēs and pedi-
tātus

119
explicō, (im)*plicate*
metus

120
cūr

121
refugiō, *refuge*

122
disceesus, cf. discēdō
praetereā, cf. praeter
prōtinus
speciēs, *speci-ous*

123
dēfēnsiō, cf. dēfendō
hūc
necopināns, cf. *opin-ion*

124
plānitiēs

125
circumsistō, cf. cōnsistō

126
bīduum, cf. trīduum

127
dignitās, *dignity*

128
infestus
latus, *later-al*
pilum
turma

129
negōtium, cf. negōtior
and ōtiōsus (neg-
= nec, i.e. "not")
perducō
pertineō, *pertain*

131
āvertō, *avert*
cōnfodiō, cf. fossa
īdūs
quasi, *quasi* (adj.)

133
exitus, cf. exeō
memor, cf. memoria
septuāgēsimus

134
forum

135
arcēsō
genus, *genus*

136
expeditus, cf. exped
praetōrius

137
firmus, cf. firmō
intereā, cf. interim
Kalendae, *calendar*
quadriūm, *quadr-*
nium

139
pācō, cf. pāx

140
quīnquāgēsimus

ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

EXERCISE I

(1-2)¹

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN AND WITHIN WHICH — REL- ATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE — I-STEMS

MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar aestate bellum gerēbat, Caesar used to wage war in the summer time.

Quinque diēbus imperātor captus est, Within five days the general was captured.

RULE. Time When and Time Within Which are regularly expressed by the ablative case, without a preposition.

NOTE 1. The ablative of Time When has various translations; thus, in addition to "in" (first) model sentence we may have **diē vicesimō**, "*on the twentieth day*," **hōrā decimā**, "*at the tenth hour*," etc.

NOTE 2. The ablative of Time Within Which must be distinguished carefully from the already familiar *accusative* of Extent of Time (*e.g.* **quinque diēs imperātōrem secūtī sunt**, "*For five days they followed their commander*").

MODEL SENTENCES

Miles missus est, qui Caesarem monēret, A soldier was sent to warn Caesar (*lit.* who should warn Caesar).

¹ These numbers indicate the Reading Lessons to which an Exercise corresponds.

Equōs emimus, quōs mittāmus, We are buying horses to send (*lit.* which we may send).

Sagittās dabō, quibus ursa occidātur, I shall provide arrows with which to kill the bear (*lit.* with which the bear may be killed).

RULE. *Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause with its verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive.*

NOTE. Observe the similarity between *ut*-clauses of purpose and relative clauses of purpose, noting particularly that, in both, the *tense* of the subjunctive is determined in exactly the same way.

REMARK. In expressions of purpose, the relative is preferred when the governing clause contains a more or less indefinite expression (*e.g.* "a soldier," "arrows," etc.) to serve as antecedent. The relative construction should be written as often as possible, until it is thoroughly familiar.

VOCABULARY¹

aestās, -ātis, F., <i>summer, summer time.</i>	ignōtus, -a, -um, <i>unknown.</i>
carrus, -i, M., <i>wagon.</i>	ītalīa, -ae, F., <i>Italy.</i>
certē, adv., <i>certainly, at any rate.</i>	legō, 3, lēgi, lēctus, <i>read;</i> may be construed with indirect discourse.
dux, ducis, M., <i>leader, commander, guide.</i>	mōns, montis, M., <i>mountain.</i>
fābula, -ae, F., <i>story.</i>	moveō, 2, mōvi, mōtus, <i>move.</i>
hiems, hīemis, F., <i>winter, winter time.</i>	castra movēre, <i>to break camp.</i>
Hispanīa, -ae, F., <i>Spain.</i>	tempus, -oris, N., <i>time, season.</i>

NOTE. While *imperātor* is a strictly military term, *dux* may be used of a leader of any kind.

¹ In these Exercises a knowledge of the words used in the Primer is, in general assumed. For words that are forgotten, see the English-Latin Vocabulary at the end of this volume.

I-STEMS

It will be recalled that third declension nouns fall into two classes, (1) Consonant Stems, and (2) I-Stems. The I-Stems include

- a) Masculines and feminines in **-is** which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*e.g.* **nāvis**, gen. **nāvis**).
- b) Feminines in **-ēs** which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*e.g.* **vallēs**, gen. **vallis**).
- c) Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**.

Furthermore, the *plural* of

- d) Masculines and feminines terminating in **-ns** or **-rs**, or consisting of a single syllable ending in either **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant.

NOTE. Memorize the above statement just as it stands ; and find, in the Vocabulary of this Exercise, a word which falls under (d).

REMARK 1. To become thoroughly familiar with the I-Stem endings, it is necessary to write them frequently, even when optional (*e.g.* **-is** for the accusative plural of masculines and feminines). And, in this connection, the inflection of I-Stem *adjectives* (*e.g.* **omnis**) must not be forgotten.

REMARK 2. As indicated in the Primer, the ablative singular of masculine and feminine I-Stems varies too much to allow of formulating a general rule. Of the words used in the Primer, **collis**, **hostis**, **nūbēs**, **ovis**, **piscis**, and **vallēs** have **-e** in the ablative ; **avis** has either **-e** or **-i** ; **ignis** and **nāvis** have either **-i** or **-e** ; and **secūris** has **-i**.

TRANSLATION

1.* 1. The king is sending sailors to discover the hiding place of the enemy.¹ 2. In winter there are no roads by which to take² wagons to the city; but at this season of the year horses can very easily make their way over³ the mountains. 3. Do not think⁴ that the king is willing to give us money with⁵ which to buy ships. 4. For two years the soldiers had been detained⁶ in the town; but on that day⁷ the general had ordered the army to break camp so as to march into Italy.

2.* "Let's go into the tent, Quintus, and read our book," said Marcus. "Claudia says that in it is a splendid⁸ story about three little ships." "Who was the commander?" asked Quintus. "Columbus was the commander," replied Marcus. "He set out from Spain to look for unknown lands, and his little ships were almost broken by the force of the waves. Some people⁹ thought him deluded,¹⁰ but certainly he was a very brave man. Come,¹¹ let's read the book."

1. Use the pl., as usual.

2. Turn the phrase into the passive. The verb *possum* need not be supplied.

3. *make (one's) way over: superō, I.*

4. Note that this phrase expresses Prohibition.

5. Describe two different ways of rendering "with" into Latin. Which is required here?

6. Use *moror*.

7. Review the gender of the Latin word.

8. Superl. of *pulcher*.

9. *some people: quidam* (pl., as noun). This use of the masculine of adjectives and pronouns is very common in Latin; e.g. *multī*, "many people," *bonī*, "good men," etc.

10. *Lit., thought him to be deluded; (be deluded: errō, I).*

11. *age* (imperative sing.).

* These numbers indicate the Reading Lessons to which the Exercises correspond.

EXERCISE II

(3-4)

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE—DOUBLE
ACCUSATIVE—FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

MODEL SENTENCE

Paucis post diēbus ad urbem rediit, He returned to the city a few days later, *or*, after a few days (*lit.* afterward by a few days).

RULE. *Degree of Difference is expressed by the ablative case.*

REMARK. The ablative of Degree of Difference has many applications in Latin, *e.g.* **multō maior**, "much greater" (*lit.* "greater by much"); but for the present the discussion is limited to *time* expressions.

MODEL SENTENCE

Agricolam rēgem fēcērunt, They made a farmer king.

RULE. *Verbs of Making, Appointing, Naming, etc., may take a predicate accusative along with their direct object.*

NOTE. In the corresponding passive construction, the direct object, of course, appears as subject of the verb, and the predicate noun too stands in the nominative; *e.g.* **Mārcus rēx puerōrum appellātus est**, "Marcus was called king of the boys" (cf. the familiar predicate nominative with forms of the verb **sum**).

VOCABULARY

alter, -era, -erum, <i>the other</i>	appropinquō, I, -āvi, -ātum
(of two).	<i>est, draw near, approach;</i>
amō, I, love, like.	<i>construed with the dative,</i>
appellō, I, call, name.	<i>or with ad and acc.</i>

Eurōpa , -ae, F., <i>Europe</i> .	labōrō , 1, -āvi, -ātum est, <i>work, labor</i> .
homō , -inis, C., <i>man</i> .	pars , partis, F., <i>part</i> .
incola , -ae, M., <i>inhabitant, native</i> .	post , adv., <i>afterward, after, later</i> .
incolumis , -is, -e, <i>safe</i> ; often rendered by an adverb, <i>safely</i> .	sentiō , 4, sēnsi, sēnsus, <i>realize</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.
interficiō , 3, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>kill</i> .	trāns , prep., with acc., <i>across</i> .

NOTE 1. Remember that *alter* belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular; (consult, if necessary, the Note on p. 352). With regard to the inflection of *pars*, see the statement on p. 201.

NOTE 2. *Homō* is the general term for "man" in the sense of "individual," or "human being." *Vir*, on the other hand, is a proper designation for a warrior or hero; or it may be used to contrast "man" with "woman," "child," or the like.

NOTE 3. While both *tūtus* and *incolumis* signify "safe," the former properly means "sheltered," and the latter "unharméd"; e.g. *locus tūtus*, "a safe (sheltered) spot," but *imperātor incolumis est*, "the general is safe (unharméd)."

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle of any verb may be formed by changing the ending of the perfect passive participle to -ūrus, e.g. *amātus*, *amātūrus*, -a, -um; *habitus*, *habītūrus*, -a, -um; etc. Turning to the Summary of Forms, note particularly that deponents, as well as other verbs, form this participle; and observe also that *sum* has the form *futūrus*, though (by reason of its meaning) it is a verb that lacks the perfect passive participle.

REMARK. *Fugīō*, too, though lacking the perfect passive participle, yet has the future active form *fugītūrus*, -a, -um.

Used in connection with various forms of the verb *sum*, the future active participle designates an action as *about to* take place at the time indicated by the form of *sum*; *e.g.*:

Exercitus castra mōtū- rus EST,	{ The army <i>is</i> about to break camp, The army <i>is</i> on the point of break- ing camp, The army <i>is</i> ready to break camp, etc.
Exercitūs castra mōtūri ERANT,	{ The armies <i>were</i> about to break camp, The armies <i>were</i> on the point of breaking camp, The armies <i>were</i> ready to break camp, etc.

TRANSLATION

3. 1. The king was on the point of sending a part of the other¹ army to² capture the unknown commander; but after a few hours he set out across the mountains, and on the fifth day arrived home. 2. The settlers,³ who were now⁴ ready to cross the larger river, made a sailor their⁵ leader; and when at the third hour of the day they had brought⁶ the wagons by ship⁷ to the other bank, they marched quickly to the smaller hill. 3. They are about to send men⁸ to give axes to the soldiers whom the general has allowed to break camp. 4. In summer, small towns are often destroyed⁹ with fire by the Indians; for then the settlers are working in the fields. 5. The inhabitants of all¹⁰ these cities¹¹ were called¹² Indians by Columbus.

4. "Sit down¹³ in the shade, boys," said Claudia. "Did you read that story about the ships of Columbus?" "We have read two thirds¹⁴ of it,"¹⁵ answered Quintus.

"I like Columbus, but I do not like his sailors, who were very bad men; for they even¹⁶ wanted to kill their¹⁷ commander." "But," said Marcus, "when they saw¹⁸ berries in the water and realized that the ship was drawing near to some¹⁹ shore,¹⁹ then at any rate they were glad,²⁰ I guess,²¹ and praised²² their²³ brave leader." "Did Columbus get back²³ to Europe safely?" asked Quintus. "Columbus returned to Spain safely himself,"²⁴ replied Claudia; "but all the settlers he²⁵ had left on an²⁶ island, the Indians killed."

1. See the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

2. In choosing the relative, note that "a part" is the antecedent.

3. *colōnus*.

4. *nunc* or *iam*?

5. Omit.

6. *vehō*.

7. Use the pl. Name two ways of rendering "by" into Latin; which is called for here?

8. Pl. of *is*.

9. *dēlēō*, 2, *-ēvi*, *-ētus*.

10. Place this modifier after the noun.

11. Note that *urbs* is a word of one syllable ending in *-s* preceded by a consonant.

12. What is the gender of the subject?

13. *sit down*: *sedeō*.

14. *Lit.*, two parts. Cf. note 11 above.

15. *of it*: omit.

16. *etiam* (adv.). Put immediately before the word meaning "to kill."

17. *sum*, *-a*, *-um*, placed after the noun (like *meus*, *tuus*, etc.). Until the function of this reflexive possessive adjective is later explained, the word should not be used at all, except when suggested in a footnote, as here. For the present, avoid also the reflexive pronoun *sui* apart from its familiar use in indirect discourse.

18. Imperfect or pluperfect tense?

19. If the accusative is used, remember that the Latin word is neuter.

20. *laetus*.

21. *opinor*, 1. Here *parem*—thetical, as in the English.

22. *laudō*, 1.

23. *get back*: *redeō*.

24. *himself*: intensive pronoun (*ipse*).

25. *i.e.* all the settlers *who* *he*, etc. In a Latin sentence relative cannot be suppressed.

26. *quidam*.

EXERCISE III

(5-6)

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Using **vocō** as a type, the six infinitives of a Latin verb are as follows :

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	vocāre	vocārī
Perfect	vocāvisse	vocātus (-a, -um) esse
Future	vocātūrus (-a, -um) esse	vocātum iri

NOTE. The new forms in this list can, for the most part, be learned very readily ; for the perfect infinitive active is found by dropping the final **-m** of **vocāvissem**, the perfect passive is formed by adding **esse** to **vocātus**, and the future active by adding **esse** to **vocātūrus**. The future passive infinitive is a peculiar and little-used formation ; its first element is the accusative of a verbal noun of the same derivation as the perfect passive participle.

Of the three infinitives of deponent verbs, the future needs to be made a subject of special study. In Exercise II it was pointed out that deponents have a future *active* participle ; and it now remains to note that, utilizing this participle, they make a future infinitive that is *active* (not passive) in form. Thus, the three infinitives of **moror** are : present, **morārī** ; perfect, **morātus (-a, -um) esse** ; but future, **morātūrus (-a, -um) esse**.

With the verbs here cited as models, form all the infinitives of **habēō**, **mittō**, **rapīō**, and **audiō** ; also of **polliceor**, **proficiā**, **patior**, and **adorior**. Aside from **fiō**, irregular verbs call for little attention in this connection.

RULE. *In Indirect Discourse the various tenses of the infinitive designate action as present, past, or future FROM THE POINT OF VIEW of the subject of the governing verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc.*

Thus, to choose the tense of the infinitive correctly in indirect discourse, only one thing is necessary ; namely, to put one's self in the position of the person who says, thinks, or hears, and thus discover whether he regards something as *in progress* (present infinitive), or as already *accomplished* (perfect infinitive), or as *yet to be* (future infinitive).

MODEL SENTENCES

Colōnus dicit, The settler says

- (1) **nautam vocāre**, that the sailor *is* calling.
- (2) **nautam vocāvisse**, that the sailor *has* called.
- (3) **nautam vocātūrum esse**, that the sailor *will* call (*is going to* call, etc.).

Colōnus dixit, The settler said

- (1) **nautās vocārī**, that the sailors *were being* called.
- (2) **nautās vocātōs esse**, that the sailors *had been* called.
- (3) **nautās vocātūm irī**, that the sailors *would be* called.

REMARK. Note that in the perfect passive and the future active infinitives the participles agree with the accusative subject ; whereas the verbal *noun* of the future infinitive passive suffers no change.

It is only when the governing verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc. is in a *past* tense that there is likely to be any difficulty in determining how the subject of that verb views the action of the indirect discourse. If doubt arises in such a case, recast the sentence in the Latin form, *e.g.* :

The soldier said

- (1) that the sailors were on the way =
the sailors *to be* on the way (IN PROGRESS).
- (2) that they had met the general =
them *to have met* the general (ACCOMPLISHED).
- (3) that they would arrive tired out =
them *to be going to arrive* tired out (YET TO BE).

MARK. Observe sentence (2) with special care, noting how English is obliged to use the *pluperfect* tense ("had met") in order to show clearly that the meeting is *past* from the point of view of the soldier; and remember that it is only when the person speaks, thinks, hears, etc. so regards an action that the present infinitive is to be used. If this fact is firmly fixed in the mind there will be little danger of confusing the types of sentence treated by (1) and (2).

EX. The *present* infinitive found with verbs like *volō* (e.g., "I want to go") is known as the *Complementary Infinitive* because it "fills out" a phrase. The complementary infinitive on occasion, may have a subject accusative (e.g. *iubeō tē ire*, "I order you to go").

In contrast with this, the infinitive in indirect discourse should never have a subject accusative, and *any one* of the three tenses may be called for. Hence, to write correctly, it is absolutely essential to know whether a given verb governs the complementary infinitive or whether it is construed with indirect discourse.

Among the words used in the Primer, the following verbs governing the complementary infinitive have already been introduced: *agō, cōnor, iubeō, mālō, nōlō, parō, patior, possum*, and *volō*. Verbs governing indirect discourse are: *audiō, cōgnōscō, dicō, doceō, placeor, putō*, and *sentiō*. In case of doubt, consult the List of Constructions at the end of the book.

VOCABULARY

-a, -ud, <i>another</i> ; pl.,	<i>crēdō</i> , 3, <i>crēdidī</i> , <i>crēditus</i> ,
r.	<i>believe, think</i> ; may be
adv., <i>before, earlier</i> ;	construed with indirect
n accompanied by an	discourse.
of Degree of Differ-	<i>Faber, -brī</i> , m., <i>Smith</i> .
e.	<i>nōdō</i> , adv., <i>just now</i> .
-otis, m., <i>Cabot</i> .	<i>narrō</i> , 1, <i>narrate, tell</i> (with

dat. of the person spoken to); may be construed with indirect discourse.	and abl. are supplied nūllius and nūllō.
nāvigō, I, -āvi, -ātum est, sail.	nōmen, -inis, N., name.
nēmō, defective noun (dat. nēminī; acc. nēminem), M., nobody, no one. The gen.	novus, -a, -um, new.
	pōns, pontis, M., bridge.
	spērō, I, hope; may be construed with indirect course.

NOTE. For the declension of *alius* consult, if necessary, Note on p. 352. Then, turning back to the Vocabulary of Exercise II, compare the meaning of this word with that of *al*. Above all, do not confuse either *alter* or *alius* with the *pl* *cēteri*, -ae, -a.

REMARK. The plural *alii*, as contrasted with *cēteri*, signify "(some) other": i.e. *alii militēs*, "(some) other soldiers"; *cēteri militēs*, "(all) the other soldiers."

TRANSLATION

5. 1. I was on the point of saying that I¹ had seen him a few days before. 2. Did you think that they would make Marcus teacher of the boys? 3. At that time there was nobody to send² with³ us to the other river; but a man named⁴ Smith told⁵ us that there were bridges so far away. 4. We hope that the inhabitants of the mountains are good people,⁶ and⁷ that they⁸ will not⁷ kill with their⁹ axes the settlers, who with the greatest bravery are ready to cross the river without the army. 5. After marching¹¹ a few miles, the soldiers¹² left a part of the wagons in a safer hiding place, which the settlers said had been discovered many years before by the wife of the commander.

6. "Did you say that you liked Columbus, boys?" asked Claudia. "Do you want me to tell you another story about him?" "I said that I liked Columbus," answered Marcus; "but to-day we prefer to hear the¹³ story you¹⁴ were just now reading." "I was reading about a man who was called¹⁵ Cabot," said Claudia. "He sailed with his⁹ son across the sea to unknown shores, hoping¹⁶ that he would thus reach¹⁷ Asia. A new part of America at any rate was discovered by him; but he¹⁸ believed that he had seen the coast of Asia. Don't tear¹⁹ the book, Quintus; to-morrow I will tell you another story."

1. Do not forget that, in indirect discourse, the subject must be expressed.

2. Turn into the passive (cf. the second group of model sentences in Exercise I).

3. The preposition *cum* is postpositive with the following pronouns: *ego* and *tū* (personal), *qui* (relative), and *suī* (third person reflexive).

4. *Lit., by name.*

5. Use *dīcō* (with dat.).

6. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I; and remember that a predicate noun stands in the same case as the subject.

7. *and . . . not: nec.*

8. The subject of the indirect discourse need not be repeated by inserting a pronoun at this point.

9. Omit.

10. *Lit., most bravely.*

11. Translate by a *cum*-clause, taking care to select the proper tense of the subjunctive.

12. As the *cum*-clause and the main clause have a common subject (*militēs*), that subject should be placed first in the sentence.

13. *is.*

14. Express the subject. See also footnote 25 on Exercise II.

15. Not *vocō*.

16. Use again a *cum*-clause; for Latin employs very sparingly the nominative of the present participle. Here *cum* would mean, literally, "since."

17. *pervenīō ad.*

18. *ille.* The noun use of this word is common.

19. *discerpō, 3, -cerpsi, -cerptus*

EXERCISE IV

(7-9)

DUM WITH THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

MODEL SENTENCE

Dum haec fiunt, hostēs subitō castra adorti sunt, While this was happening, the enemy suddenly attacked the camp.

RULE. **Dum** ("while") is used with the **PRESENT indicative** to describe a **PAST action** that was in progress when something else took place.

NOTE. It will be observed that **dum** with the present indicative performs almost the same function as does **cum** with the imperfect subjunctive. But there is a slight difference which must be noted; *e.g.*:

Cum in hortō essem, laetus eram, "While I was in the garden, I was happy."

Dum haec domi fiunt, Caesar oppidum hostium cēpit, "While this was happening at home, Caesar took a town of the enemy."

In the first of the above sentences, the **cum**-clause indicates, not *time* merely, but *circumstance* as well, *i.e.* it implies that being in the garden was the *cause* of the speaker's pleasant frame of mind; in the other sentence, the **dum**-clause shows that the two events there mentioned were contemporaneous, but does not necessarily hint at any other connection between them. Watch carefully for opportunities to use the **dum**-construction.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, n., arms.

dum, conj., while.

ē, ex, prep., with abl., of.

Galli, -ōrum, m., Frenchmen.

maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsūm

est, remain, stay.

semper, adv., always.

soleō, 2, solitus sum, lit., be

accustomed; may be construed with the complementary infinitive.

NOTE 1. *Ē, ex* in the sense of "of" is found with numerals (particularly *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs*), and with the pronoun *quidam*; e.g. *ūnus ē pueris*, "one of the boys"; *quidam ē militibus*, "(a certain) one of the soldiers."

NOTE 2. For *soleō* the translation "be accustomed" is rather formal; but it gives the key to all other renderings of the word; e.g. *ire solēbat*, "he usually went," "it was his custom to go," "he used to go," etc. In learning the principal parts of this verb, observe that it is a semi-deponent; i.e. its meaning is active throughout, but in the perfect tenses only passive forms are found. The full list of such semi-deponents is: *audeō*, *fidēō*, *gaudeō*, and *soleō*.

TRANSLATION

7. 1. Let us hope that one of the soldiers will take the other¹ boy to his² mother. 2. While this³ was being said to the general, the braver settlers were on the point of breaking down⁴ the bridge with huge rocks. 3. Come, boys, into the fields. Don't think that I am going to allow you to dally⁵ at home. 4. A few hours afterward horses were given to one of the sailors to⁶ take home. 5. Had you realized that there was no one to call the boys?

8. 1. In those days⁷ the settlers usually took⁸ their⁹ arms with them⁹ into the fields; for they were always in fear of¹⁰ an attack from¹¹ bitter¹² enemies. They¹³ certainly were brave men.¹⁴ Their² leader was named¹⁵ Smith. 2. Marcus says that America was discovered by Columbus; but many people¹⁴ think that another¹ man² discovered it many years before. 3. I believe that the king's son used to make one of the settlers leader against¹⁸ the Indians.

9. "I have come to tell you¹⁷ another story, Marcus," said Claudia. "Is your brother at home to-day?"

"Quintus has gone to the shore to see a great ship that has been broken¹⁸ by the waves," replied Marcus; "but I¹⁹ want to hear the story. About whom have you been reading?"²⁰ "I was just now reading about a man named Smith,"²¹ said Claudia. "He sailed often from Europe to America, and once was captured by Frenchmen, who compelled him to remain with them⁹ many days; however,²² he at length²³ reached²⁴ home safely. But look!²⁵ I think I see Quintus coming."

1. Cf. the latter part of the Note on p. 210.

2. Omit.

3. Neut. pl. of *hic*.

4. *break down*: *frangō*.

5. *moror*.

6. See the second group of model sentences in Exercise I.

7. Pl. of *tempus*.

8. *ferō*.

9. *sēcum*.

10. *be in fear of*: *timeō*.

11. *Lit., of*.

12. *ācer*.

13. *ille*; cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.

14. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.

15. Imperfect tense.

16. *contrā*, prep., with acc.

17. How many persons has the speaker in mind?

18. *a . . . ship that has been*

broken: *lit., a . . . ship broken* (perf. pass. partic.).

19. When the subject is emphasized, as here, the pronoun must be written in the Latin sentence.

20. Perfect tense.

21. *named Smith*: *lit., Smith by name*. The word for "Smith" should be in the same case as that for "man." An amplifying or explanatory noun may thus stand "in apposition" with any of the cases; but examples of the nominative are, of course, most frequent (*e.g.* "Ferdinand, King of Spain").

22. Be careful of the order of words.

23. *at length*: *i.e. at last*.

24. Use *redeō*.

25. *aspiciō*, 3, *aspēxi*, *aspectus*.

EXERCISE V

(10-12)

THE GERUND — DATIVE OF POSSESSION

Unlike the gerundive, which is an *adjective*, the gerund is a (verbal) *noun*, and is found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular; *e.g.*:

Gen.	vocandi
Dat.	vocandō
Acc.	vocandum
Abl.	vocandō

With **vocō** as a model, construct the gerund of one regular verb of each conjugation. Deponents form their gerund in the usual way. Among the irregular verbs, note that the gerund of **eō** is **eundi**, **eundō**, etc., and that **fiō** has no gerund forms.

MODEL SENTENCE

Pugnandō urbem cēpērunt, By fighting they got possession of the city.

NOTE. For the present, the discussion is limited to the ablative case of the gerund. In the model sentence, observe how **pugnandō** expresses Means, just as the ablative of any other noun might do.

REMARK. An English word like "fighting" may be either a verbal noun or a present participle. In dealing with such forms, therefore, care must be taken to determine whether they are nouns or participles before attempting to translate them into Latin.

MODEL SENTENCE

Colōni filiō equus pulcher est, The settler's son has a fine horse.

RULE. *The fact of possession may be indicated by the use of the dative case in connection with a form of the verb sum.*

REMARK. This method of indicating possession should be employed in preference to the use of *habeō* until it is thoroughly familiar.

VOCABULARY

adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, <i>bring, carry (to).</i>	morior, 3, mortuus sum (future partic. moritūrus, -a -um), <i>die.</i>
atque, ac, conj., <i>and.</i>	
Britannia, -ae, F., <i>England.</i>	Novum (-i) Eborācum, -i, N. <i>New York (city).</i>
Caesar, -aris, M., <i>Caesar.</i>	
cibus, -i, M., <i>food.</i>	scapha, -ae, F., <i>skiff, open boat.</i>
cōpiae, -ārum, F., <i>troops, forces.</i>	scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptus <i>write; may be construed with indirect discourse.</i>
ēvādō, 3, -vāsi, -vāsum est, <i>escape.</i>	
Hudsō, -ōnis, M., <i>Hudson.</i>	ubi, relative adv., <i>where.</i>

NOTE 1. Of the forms *atque* and *ac*, the former should be used when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*.

NOTE 2. The relative use of *ubi* may be seen in a sentence like *hic est locus, ubi ursae latent*, "This is the place where (*i.e.* in which) the bears hide."

TRANSLATION

10. 1. Did you think that all the Indians would escape by running? 2. The king has many children, but I be

lieve that he has found no one to teach¹ them. 3. The natives called the island Cuba, and that² name has remained these many years. 4. While³ the horses were being taken⁴ across the river on⁵ a ship, two of the soldiers quickly seized⁶ an open boat, and another⁷ brought the arms. 5. Either⁸ at that time or⁸ a few days earlier, the troops of our general, much disturbed by this happening,⁹ were on the point of attacking the town.

11. 1. Don't fear the smaller waves. 2. We had axes and daggers;¹⁰ but¹¹ while the Indians were crossing the hill, we were marching to the river, that there might be some one¹² there to guard the longer bridge. 3. The boys were busy¹³ reading and writing;¹⁴ but one of the girls told us a story about a man named Caesar,¹⁵ who once sailed to England and captured a part of that island. 4. In the winter time Caesar used to stay in camp,¹⁶ but in summer he always would¹⁷ march many miles across mountains and rivers to attack the towns of the enemy.¹⁸

12. "I hope that Claudia will come to-day," said Quintus to Marcus. "For I was not at home yesterday, and so I did not hear the story about the man named Smith."¹⁹ "I²⁰ have heard a new story," replied Marcus. "My father told me that a man called Hudson²¹ set out from Europe, and that the island, where New York now is, was discovered by him. A²² little later Hudson came again²³ to America, and there found a great unknown²⁴ sea; but when the sailors²⁵ realized²⁶ that they had used up nearly²⁷ all the food, they deserted²⁸ their²⁹ commander, and many people believe that he died in a skiff on the open³⁰ sea."³⁰

1. Usually an infinitive has no effect upon the tense of the subjunctive in a clause dependent upon it. But the perfect infinitive restricts the subjunctive in such clauses to the imperfect and plu-

perfect. Express purpose here by means of a relative clause.

2. *is*.

3. *dum*.

4. *vehō*.

5. *Lit., by*.

6. *capiō*.

7. Cf. the latter part of the Note on p. 210.

8. *either . . . or: aut . . . aut*.

9. *i.e. circumstance, or thing*.

10. *sica, -ae, F.*

11. In connection with the conjunctions *cum* and *dum*, *autem* is preferred to *sed*; *e.g. cum autem, dum autem*, etc.

12. Use the pl. of *is*.

13. *occupātus, -a, -um*.

14. *i.e. with reading and writing*.

15. Cf. footnote 21 on Exercise IV.

16. Use the idiom: *ad castris tenere*.

17. Translate by the choice of tense.

18. Pl., as usual.

19. *i.e. who was called Smith*. Use the imperfect tense (and cf. footnote 15 on Exercise III).

20. Cf. footnote 19 on Exercise IV.

21. Not indirect discourse.

22. *came again: i.e. returned*.

23. Place this second modifier after the noun.

24. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

25. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise II.

26. *i.e. almost*.

27. *relinquō*.

28. Omit.

29. *apertus, -a, -um*.

30. Be careful of the spelling.

EXERCISE VI

(13-15)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES I TO V—SEQUENCE OF TENSES

VOCABULARY

arbitror, 1, *think, suppose*; may be construed with indirect discourse.

cum, causal conj., *since, as*.

Cūrīō, -ōnis, M., *Curio*.

incendō, 3, *-cendi, -cēsus*, *burn, set on fire, fire*.

lēgātus, -i, M., *captain*.

mēnsis, -is (abl. *-e*), M., *month*.

- 4, -scīvi, *not know*; **quamquam**, conj., *although*,
 be construed with *though*.
 direct discourse. **Standisius**, -si, m., *Standish*.
 (-ae) **Britannia**, -ae, f., **tamen**, adv. and conj., *still*,
England. *yet, nevertheless*.
la, -ae, f., *Priscilla*.

E 1. When **cum** develops the full causal sense "since," it is no longer restricted to the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, but may be followed by *any* tense of that mood.

E 2. On the genitive (and vocative) form **Standisi**, see E 1 and 2 on pp. 345-346. The other cases of the name, of course, proceed regularly (**Standisiō**, **Standisium**, etc.).

E 3. **Tamen** should not be placed first in a *sentence*; but it stands first in its *clause*, when balancing a word like **quamquam** in a preceding clause; e.g. **Agricola, quamquam irātus est filium vocāre nōn vult**, "Although the farmer is angry, he is not willing to call his son." In no case should **tamen** be placed later than second in its sentence or clause.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

In the constructions already familiar, the purpose clause clearly illustrates a fundamental law running through Latin sentence-structure, namely, that the tense of the active in subordinate clauses is influenced by the tense of the verb of the governing clause. This fundamental principle is known as the Law of Sequence of Tenses. It may be summarized as follows:

Æ. *In dependent subjunctive clauses, the present or perfect tense is required when the verb of the governing clause is a Present, Future, or Future Perfect (Primary Sequence); the imperfect or pluperfect is required when the verb of the governing clause is an Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect (Secondary Sequence).*

NOTE. With rare exceptions, the above rule holds good whatever the mood of the governing verb may be (for we often have, for example, subjunctive dependent upon subjunctive). It is the *tense* of the governing verb that is the decisive thing.

The following table illustrates the Law of Sequence of Tenses as applied to clauses introduced by *cum* in the causal sense :

Primary	{ Cum viri vocent, Since the men are calling,	} ego vocāre nōlō, I do not care to call.
	{ Cum viri vocāverint, Since the men have called,	
Secondary	{ Cum viri vocārent, Since the men were calling,	} ego vocāre nōlui, I did not care to call.
	{ Cum viri vocāvissent, Since the men had called,	

NOTE 1. While the general principle illustrated above accounts equally well for the *tense* of the subjunctive in *cum*-clauses and in purpose clauses, it is well to note here, at the very outset, that the force of the present and imperfect subjunctive in purpose clauses is somewhat peculiar. In *cum*-clauses (see above) the present and imperfect subjunctive denote action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb ; but, since a purpose is something *looked forward to* (e.g. *vēnit, ut emeret*, "He came that he *might buy*"), the present and imperfect subjunctive in purpose clauses necessarily have to do with action that is *future* from the point of view of the governing verb.

NOTE 2. The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive (not employed in purpose clauses) designate an action as *antecedent* to that of the governing verb ; see the second and fourth of the sentences in the table above. If the forms of the perfect subjunctive are not thoroughly familiar, they should be reviewed at this point.

TRANSLATION

13. 1. Since this skiff is usually left¹ on the shore, let's call a sailor to² take us to the island. 2. I can³ see one of our sailors; but I think that the other skiff has already⁴ crossed the river. 3. While⁵ the forces of the enemy were firing the town, some⁶ settlers were bringing food in⁷ wagons to the fort. 4. By lying⁸ on the ground, the sailors thought that they would deceive⁹ the enemy. 5. Although no farmer had¹⁰ a horse, do you yet believe that the Indians will not capture¹¹ their wives?

14. 1. A few days before, the same soldiers were on the point of crossing the mountains; but do not imagine¹² that the army wanted to desert its¹³ leader. 2. Although a man named Curio had been appointed¹⁴ commander, still at that time there was no one to provide¹⁵ grain for the army¹⁶ which had escaped across the river. 3. Since you have made a boy your³ guide,¹⁷ guard your horses well.¹⁸ *We* prefer another leader. 4. On all sides the Indians, who had arms, now came together more readily to attack the fort.

15. "Come into the garden," said Marcus; "to-day I will tell you a story." "Good,"¹⁹ said Claudia and Quintus; "let's hear it."⁸ "Once," said Marcus, "there was a very brave captain named Standish. He had sailed from Europe to New England along with a few settlers, and²⁰ during the following²¹ winter his wife died. A few months later he thought that he was going to marry²² a⁶ pretty²³ girl, but she²⁴ preferred another man."³ "What was the girl's name?"²⁵ inquired Quintus. "I don't know," answered Marcus. "Do *you*,²⁶ Claudia?" "I think that her²⁷ name was Priscilla," replied Claudia.

1. *is . . . left*: do not mistake the tense.
2. Relative clause.
3. Omit.
4. *iam*.
5. *dum*.
6. *quidam*.
7. *Lit., by*.
8. Cf. Exercise V.
9. *elūdō*, 3, -lūsī, -lūsus.
10. Not *habēō*.
11. The future active infinitive is often written without *esse*.
12. *putō*.
13. *suus*, -a, -um; cf. footnote 17 on Exercise II.
14. Pass. of *faciō*.
15. *dō*.
16. Dative case.
17. *dux*.
18. *diligenter*.
19. *optimē* (adv.).
20. Use *atque* (*ac*) *occasio* ally, in order to become familiar with this conjunction.
21. *proximus*, -a, -um. Note that this phrase does *not* express Extent of Time.
22. *in mātrimonium dūcō*.
23. Place this second modifier after the noun.
24. *ille*; cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.
25. *Lit., by what (quī) name was the girl called?* Interrogative words, when possible, should be placed first in the sentence.
26. *i.e. do YOU know* (*sciō*, 4, *scīvī*, *scītus*). The particle -ne may be attached to a pronoun.
27. Recast the clause, and use a dative of possession.

EXERCISE VII

(16-18)

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

MODEL SENTENCES

Colōnis interfectis, Indi villās statim incendērunt, After killing the settlers (the settlers having been killed), the Indians at once fired the farmhouses.

Vēnātōre duce militēs flūmen trānsērunt, With a hunter as guide (a hunter [being] guide), the soldiers crossed the river.

The above sentences illustrate the two most important varieties of the ablative absolute construction. The first

type, consisting of a noun and the perfect passive participle, is already very familiar ; in the other, two nouns in the ablative case are simply placed side by side, without any verbal form to connect them.

REMARK 1. In ablative absolutes of the first type, the *present* participle is occasionally used, with or without an object ; e.g. **Indiis urbem incendentibus, nāvēs ad litus appropinquābant**, "As the Indians were firing the town, the ships were approaching the shore." And an occasional variant on the second type is afforded by ablative absolutes made up of a noun and an *adjective* ; e.g. **Nautis incolumibus nāvēs rediērunt**, "With sailors unharmed (the sailors [being] safe) the ships returned."

REMARK 2. Since the literal renderings of the ablative absolute are so crude, it is almost always necessary to represent this construction in some other way in English ; see the examples above.

VOCABULARY

audeō, 2, ausus sum, dare, <i>venture</i> ; may be construed with the complementary infinitive.	construed with indirect discourse.
auxilium, -ii, N., aid, help.	oppidāni, -ōrum, M., townspeople.
bōs, bovis, M. and F., ox, cow ; pl. M., cattle. See the Summary of Forms, p. 348.	Pollūx, -ūcis, M., Pollux.
Castor, -oris, M., Castor.	Rōmānus, -i, M., a Roman ; pl., the Romans.
cōnscendō, 3, -scendi, -scēsus, climb, scale, board (a ship).	sis, please ; pl., sultis.
longinquus, -a, -um, distant.	tēlum, -i, N., weapon. tēlum (tēla) mittere, to shoot, to fire.
annūtiō, 1, announce ; with dat., inform, tell. May be	vincō, 3, vici, victus, win ; with acc., overcome, subdue, defeat, beat.

NOTE 1. Observe that *audeō* is a semi-deponent (cf. the latter part of Note 2 on p. 213).

NOTE 2. On the declension of *auxilium*, see Note 2 on p. 219.

NOTE 3. *Sis* and *sultis* are short for *sī vis* and *sī vultis* (*si* "if you will").

TRANSLATION

16. 1. With Marcus for teacher, the boys are usually tired with play,¹ and² not with reading or writing. 2. Since the son of one settler had promised that he would send better horses, we stopped³ a few hours in the shade, and sent two of the boys into the town. 3. While⁴ the cattle were crossing the field, the sailors whom you saw on the ship were hiding along⁵ the shore, and⁶ did not⁶ dare to shoot at⁷ the soldiers. 4. The hunters who were on the point of boarding the ship had a bear and four monkeys. 5. Are there more waves to-day?

17. 1. After throwing⁸ the food into the water, Marcus escaped into the tent, and the other⁹ boy ran home. 2. With Caesar for general, I hope that we shall overcome the enemy.¹⁰ 3. We did not know that the captain had died a few months before. 4. Although we hear that arms are usually brought by the settlers from all¹¹ parts of the mountains, still we do not dare at this time to set out with the cattle. 5. Send forces¹² to guard¹³ the wives and children of all the settlers. 6. Have you heard about these more important¹⁴ matters?¹⁵

18. "Tell me a story to-day about the Romans,¹⁶ please," said Quintus to Claudia. "We were just now reading about Castor and Pollux," said Claudia. "The Romans think that these gods once rushed¹⁷ suddenly into the fight,¹⁸ and that by their aid the enemy were beaten. Some¹⁹

say too²⁰ that a few hours later the same gods met a¹⁸ Roman on a distant road, and bade him announce²¹ to his²² townspeople that the Romans had won." "I don't believe that²³ story," remarked Quintus. "What do you think of it,²⁴ Marcus?"

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Lit., with playing.</i> | this second modifier after the noun ; |
| 2. Omit. | and place the whole prepositional |
| 3. <i>moror.</i> | phrase first in the sentence, omit- |
| 4. <i>dum.</i> | ting -ne. |
| 5. <i>per.</i> | 15. <i>i.e. circumstances, or</i> |
| 6. <i>and . . . not : neque.</i> | <i>things.</i> |
| 7. <i>in.</i> | 16. <i>about the Romans : put</i> |
| 8. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise | first in the sentence. |
| III ; or use an abl. absol. | 17. <i>currō.</i> |
| 9. Cf. the latter part of the | 18. <i>pugna.</i> |
| Note on p. 210. | 19. <i>quidam.</i> |
| 10. Pl. ; and cf. Remark 1 on | 20. <i>etiam</i> (adv.) ; place before |
| p. 201. | the verb of saying. |
| 11. Place this modifier before | 21. <i>i.e. ordered him to an-</i> |
| the preposition. | <i>nounce.</i> |
| 12. See the Vocabulary of Ex- | 22. <i>suus, -a, -um ; cf. again</i> |
| ercise V. | footnote 17 on Exercise II. |
| 13. Use a relative clause. | 23. <i>hic.</i> |
| 14. <i>important : magnus.</i> Put | 24. <i>of it : i.e. about it.</i> |

EXERCISE VIII

(19-21)

ABLATIVE OF MANNER—REVIEW OF THE GERUNDIVE

MODEL SENTENCES

Maximā celeritatē hostēs fugērunt, The enemy fled at top speed (with the greatest swiftmess).

Omnibus modis montem capere cōnāti sunt, They strove by every means (in every way) to take the mountain.

RULE. *Manner may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case with an adjective modifier.*

THE GERUNDIVE

Remember that, in distinction from the gerund (verbal noun), the gerundive is an *adjective*, e.g. **vocandus, -a, -um, habendus, -a, -um**, etc.; also that, in connection with forms of the verb **sum**, the gerundive indicates that a thing *must, ought, should, or needs to be done*, e.g.:

Mulier vocanda est, The woman must be called.

Putō mulierem vocandam esse, I think that the woman ought to be called.

Caesar sequendus est, Caesar should be followed.

Note particularly the last of the above examples, observing that the gerundive of a deponent has the regular *passive* force. For the verb **eō**, see the Summary of Forms, p. 374; and note that **fiō** has no gerundive.

REMARK. Deponent verbs have peculiarities that demand very careful study. It has already been pointed out that for their future infinitive they choose the *active* form (e.g. **secūtūrus esse**); and to this is now added the interesting observation that their gerundive is *passive* in meaning as well as in form.

VOCABULARY

celeritās, -ātis , F., <i>speed, swift- ness</i> .	nē . . . quidem , adverbial phrase, <i>not even</i> .
cēnō , 1, -āvi, (-ātus), <i>dine</i> .	Pompēius, -ēi , M., <i>Pompey</i> .
dēdō , 3, -didi, -ditus, <i>surren- der</i> (something); con- strued in the same way as the verb dō .	prōgredior , 3, -gressus sum, <i>advance</i> .
Hispāni, -ōrum , M., <i>the Span- iards</i> .	quondam , adv., <i>formerly, once</i> .
modus, -i , M., <i>way, means, fashion</i> .	senātus, -ūs , M., <i>senate</i> .
	Sertōrius, -ri , M., <i>Sertorius</i> .
	virtūs, -ūtis , F., <i>bravery, valor, courage</i> .

NOTE 1. The phrase *nē . . . quidem* is always divided, the word or words to be emphasized standing between the two parts, e.g. *nē Caesar quidem hoc facere potest*, "Not even Caesar can do this."

NOTE 2. On the declension of *Pompēius* and *Sertōrius*, cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

19. 1. Do not advance to the river, soldiers; for the camp needs to be guarded in every way.¹ 2. After calling² the settlers, the general appointed³ a sailor to be⁴ the guide of the hunters, and sent them to give aid⁵ to the soldiers, who were now weary with fighting.⁶ 3. A way⁷ must be made by the sword; for the guide is now informing⁸ the general that the enemy have captured our ships. 4. Since we have in no way been able to take that town, let us break camp, seize the cattle, and⁹ destroy¹⁰ the ships with fire. 5. Did he say¹¹ this to the brother of any¹² praetor¹³ in the senate yesterday? Did he think that my father ought to be warned?

20. 1. I think that the townspeople, who have¹⁴ weapons, should be seized; but¹⁵ since our commander hopes that in a few days they will surrender their¹⁶ leader to us, I suppose that we shall not kill them. 2. While our forces were fighting with great bravery, one of the Indians set out to burn some¹⁷ distant farmhouses. 3. We are about to send a sailor to board the vessel and get¹⁸ the boy whom you heard had escaped from the fort. 4. Have they learned the cause¹⁹ of all²⁰ these things? 5. All those¹⁶ who had dared to advance into the valleys were overcome by our men,²¹ and within a few days we shall attack the towns.

21. *Sertorius*

A ¹⁷ leader named ²² Sertorius, who had crossed over to ²³ Spain, was loved by the Spaniards most devotedly.²⁴ For many years the Romans tried to capture him,²⁵ but not even Pompey could subdue his armies. But¹⁸ when the war had been waged for a long time, the Romans won in an inglorious²⁶ fashion. For one day,²⁷ as²⁸ he was dining, Sertorius²⁹ was assassinated³⁰ by one³¹ of his own³² captains.

1. *every way*: use the pl.
2. Cf. footnotes 11 and 12 on Exercise III.
3. *faciō*.
4. *to be*: omit.
5. *Lit., to bring (ferō) aid.*
This idiom governs the dative case.
6. See Exercise V.
7. *i.e. road.*
8. *Lit., is . . . announcing to.*
9. *-que.*
10. *dēleō*, 2, *-ēvi, -ētus*.
11. Neut. pl. of *hic*.
12. *ūllus*.
13. *praetor, -ōris, m.*
14. Not *habeō*.
15. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise V.
16. Omit.
17. *quidam*.
18. *petō*.
19. *causa, -ae, f.*
20. Place this modifier after the noun.
21. *nostrī, -ōrum, m.* (cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I).
22. Translate in two ways.
23. *trānseō in.*
24. *most devotedly: ūnicē* (adv.).
25. Use a relative, placing it first in the sentence.
26. *haud illūstris, -is, -e*. Place after the noun, and be careful of the spelling.
27. *ōlim*.
28. *cum*.
29. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.
30. *i.e. was killed.*
31. *quidam* (cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise IV).
32. *his own: suus, -a, -um*, placed *before* the noun, thus marking the emphasis.

EXERCISE IX

(22-24)

THE INDIRECT OBJECT WITH CERTAIN VERBS

It is a fact already familiar that, in addition to an accusative, verbs of giving, saying, and the like may govern also a dative of the indirect object; *e.g.* **canem puerō dat**, "He is giving a dog to the boy."

Somewhat different, however, is another important class of verbs, which, while lacking a direct object, yet govern a dative of the indirect object. It happens, unfortunately, that verbs of this latter class are generally most conveniently represented in English by expressions that suggest the use of a direct object or of some other substitute for the dative which the Latin words require; and it therefore becomes necessary to memorize a selected list of these Latin verbs, and to fix firmly in mind the fact that they govern the dative case.

RULE. **Crēdō, faveō, fidō, ignōscō, imperō, invidē, irāscor, minor, noceō, opitutor, parcō, pāreō, persuādeō, placeō, resistō, serviō, and suscēnseō** govern a dative of the indirect object.

NOTE. Taking these verbs in the above order, they may be rendered conventionally: "trust,* favor, confide, pardon, command, envy, be angry, threaten, injure, aid, spare, obey, persuade, please, resist, serve, be offended." As intimated above, hardly any of these renderings suggest an indirect object, the reason being (at least in great part) that they are not exact equivalents for the Latin verbs; thus, **noceō**, which is commonly translated "injure," really signifies "be injurious," "work injury," or the like — meanings which obviously call for the dative case. For the

* When **crēdō** means "believe (a thing)," it takes a direct object.

present, only the Latin verbs should be memorized. The English meanings are best taken up as the verbs are introduced into the Exercise Vocabularies.

REMARK. For the class of verbs here under discussion, the passive construction (including the gerundive) is peculiar, and should not be attempted until it has been explained in a later Exercise.

VOCABULARY

Cicerō, -ōnis, M., <i>Cicero</i> .	with a purpose clause introduced by <i>ut</i> or <i>nē</i> .
amicitiās, -iās, F., <i>kindliness</i> .	
cōsul, -ulis, M., <i>consul</i> .	proelium, -i, N., <i>battle</i> .
nō, I, -āvi, -ātum est, <i>swim</i> .	quod, conj., <i>because</i> .
persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum	summus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i> .
est, <i>persuade</i> ; governs the dative case, often along	ter, adv., <i>three times</i> .

NOTE 1. *Persuādeō* strictly means something like "make (it) agreeable," hence its construction with the dative case.

NOTE 2. Strictly, *summus* is the superlative of *superior*, -ior, -ius, "higher," "superior."

TRANSLATION

22. 1. Did you dare¹ to persuade them to set out at this time of day? 2. We thought that the children ought to be addressed² with the greatest kindliness. 3. With Cicero for consul, the Romans will in every way give aid³ to those most wretched⁴ settlers. 4. Since the enemy were trying to escape by running away, we sent men⁵ to all parts of the city to warn the soldiers. 5. They think that not even the son of this man⁶ can persuade the senate. 6. Although nobody believed that the valor of our forces was great, still only a few of⁷ the enemy escaped from the battle

23. 1. Not even Curio was able to persuade the other⁸ regiment not to advance against⁹ the fort. 2. Formerly the farmers used to guard their¹⁰ cattle with weapons at night; but now they do not fear fierce attacks of the enemy. 3. After¹¹ the general had dined, he was surrendered to the soldiers whom the enemy had sent. 4. While¹² *you* were returning with all¹³ speed from the ship, *we* were persuading the hunters to bring weapons. 5. I did not know that one of the generals had¹⁴ a son.

24. *A Wreck* *

Formerly ships used frequently to be broken on¹⁵ the rocks, because there were no lights¹⁶ to warn the sailors. Once when a great ship had been carried¹⁷ by the winds¹⁸ against a¹⁹ reef,²⁰ and men²¹ were being swept overboard²² by the waves, a certain man,²¹ mounted on²³ a very fine²⁴ horse, rushed²⁵ into the water with a rope,²⁶ which with the greatest difficulty²⁷ he carried to the ship. A few sailors seized the rope, and the powerful horse very readily swam with them²⁸ to the shore. This²⁹ was done three times. But then the brave animal³⁰ suddenly fell to the ground, and a little later died.

1. The particle *-ne* divides even a verbal phrase; e.g. *occisusne est*?

2. *appellō*.

3. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise VIII.

4. Place this second modifier after the noun.

5. Pl. of *is*.

6. In this phrase "this" is the emphatic word.

7. *only a few of*: *pauci*.

Place after the noun.

8. Be careful to choose the right word.

9. *ad*.

10. Omit.

11. Use *cum*; and cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

12. Do not forget to use *dum*, as occasion offers.

* It is not expected that the headings of stories will be translated.

13. *Lit., the greatest.* Translate "greatest" in two ways.
14. Is this *past* or *present* from the point of view of the subject of the governing verb? Choose the tense of the infinitive accordingly.
15. *in* (with acc.).
16. *lūmen, -inis, N.*
17. *adferō.*
18. *ventus, -i, M.*
19. *quidam.*
20. *saxum longum.*
21. *vir* or *homō*?
22. *sweep overboard: in mare prōiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.*
23. *Lit., carried (vehō) by.*
24. *fine: pulcher.*
25. *Lit., ran.*
26. *fūnia, -is, M.*
27. *labor, -ōris, M.*
28. *Lit., by swimming carried (vehō) them.*
29. Use a relative.
30. *Lit., horse.*

EXERCISE X

(25-27)

NEGATIVE CONNECTIVE

MODEL SENTENCES

Indi miserunt tēla, nec fugerunt, The Indians fired, and did not run.

Nauta ad litus fugit, nec quisquam eum vidit, The sailor sped to the shore, and no one saw him.

Vēnī, neque umquam redibō, I have come, and shall never return.

RULE. *When two connected phrases are coördinate and the second contains a negative, the negative element should be united, if possible, with the conjunction.*

REMARK. Clauses are called coördinate when they are of equal rank; e.g. "I came *and* I saw" (as contrasted with "I came *that* I might see.").

Applying the rule to the model sentences above, observe that Latin makes the following combinations:

for	"and not"	"nor" (nec)
for	"and no one"	"nor any one" (nec quisquam)
for	"and never"	"nor ever" (neque umquam)

NOTE. Of the forms *neque* and *nec*, the former should be used when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*.

VOCABULARY

Carthagō, -inis, F., <i>Carthage</i> .	opperior, 4, oppertus sum, wait for.
Hamilcar, -aris, M., <i>Hamilcar</i> .	quisquam, —, quidquam, any one, anything; used mostly in negative clauses.
Hannibal, -alis, M., <i>Hannibal</i> .	See the Summary of Forms, p. 359, Note 2.
iterum, adv., <i>again</i> .	umquam, adv., <i>ever</i> ; used mostly in negative clauses.
loquor, 3, locutus sum, <i>talk</i> ; construed with <i>cum</i> and the ablative.	

TRANSLATION

25. 1. The other sailors have not come, and we do not think that they should be waited for. 2. Do you think that you saw the settler following¹ the Indians? 3. Try,² soldiers, by running and fighting to make a way by which to take³ the horses to the fort. 4. The man says that the kings of these cities⁴ are already⁵ in the tent, and that⁶ nobody is going to talk with them. 5. They are trying to persuade the general not to wait for larger forces, and they never will persuade him.

26. 1. Three times, by his⁷ kindness, Cicero has very easily persuaded one of the men to talk. 2. Follow quickly, Marcus, and, with me for leader, try to scale⁸ this mountain. 3. While the settlers were swimming to the other bank, *we* could in no way reach the hill, and did not see the Indians advancing. 4. Since the consul had

escaped a few days later, not even his⁹ wife thought that the enemy should be attacked.¹⁰ 5. Upon¹¹ that fort many assaults were made very fiercely by the enemy.

27. *Hannibal*

A great¹² general, named Hamilcar, had a small son who was called Hannibal. For a few years Hannibal lived in Africa; but his⁹ father was always waging war,¹³ and the boy could not see¹⁴ him often. One time,¹⁵ when Hamilcar was about to cross over to¹⁶ Spain, Hannibal wanted to sail with him.¹⁷ This¹⁸ Hamilcar allowed, but he made¹⁹ his⁹ son promise that he²⁰ never would love the Romans; for he feared²¹ that nation, and thought²² that it would at some time²³ again send armies into Africa to attack²³ Carthage.

1. Review, at this point, the participles of deponent verbs. (In this connection it may prove helpful to write a complete synopsis of the deponent verb, as thus far studied.)

2. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

3. Turn into the passive; and, here and elsewhere, bear in mind the fact that the Latin infinitive is not to be used to express *purpose*.

4. For the spelling, see the statement on p. 201.

5. *iam*.

6. Note that this and the preceding clause are coördinate.

7. *suus*, -a, -um.

8. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VII.

9. Omit.

10. In indirect discourse the gerundive is frequently written without *esse*.

11. *in* (with acc.).

12. *summus*.

13. Use the pl.

14. *Lit.*, *meet*.

15. *i.e.* *once*.

16. Cf. footnote 23 on Exercise VIII.

17. *with him*: *unā* (adv.).

18. Cf. footnote 29 on Exercise IX.

19. *i.e.* *compelled*.

20. Namely, Hannibal.

21. Imperfect tense.

22. *at some time*: *aliquandō* (adv.).

23. In translating this phrase, bear in mind the first statement in footnote 1 on Exercise V.

EXERCISE XI

(28-30)

DATIVE OF AGENCY—THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

MODEL SENTENCE

Oppidāni mihi monendi sunt, I must warn the townspeople (*lit.* the townspeople must be warned by me).

RULE. *With the gerundive and a form of the verb sum, Agency is expressed by the dative case.*

NOTE. When this construction occurs in indirect discourse, and the agent is the same as the third person subject of a governing verb of saying, thinking, etc., the reflexive pronoun must be used, *e.g.* **Nauta putat oppidānōs sibi monendōs esse**, "The sailor thinks that he ought to warn the townspeople."

REMARK. From this point on, special care must be taken to keep clear and distinct the three following constructions: (1) the ablative of Means, (2) the dative of Agency, and (3) the regular Agency construction (namely, the ablative with **ā, ab**).

MODEL SENTENCE

Per silvam ad castra adorienda veniēbant, They were coming through the woods to attack the camp.

RULE. *Purpose may be expressed by a phrase made up of ad and the accusative, with a gerundive modifier.*

NOTE. This method of expressing purpose is suited to sentences in which the verb of the governing clause expresses *motion* (*cf.* the model sentence).

REMARK 1. Observe carefully that, in this construction, the gerundive is still an *adjective*. Thus, in the model sentence, *ad* governs *castra*, which, in turn, is modified by *adorienda*.

REMARK 2. Note, too, that when used in a prepositional phrase expressing purpose, the gerundive so far lacks its customary force of "should," "ought," etc., that such a rendering would make very poor sense.

REMARK 3. Verbs of the class described in Exercise IX (*e.g.* **persuādeo**) are almost wholly defective in the gerundive, and cannot be used in purpose clauses of the above type.

VOCABULARY

bis, adv., <i>twice</i> .	nātus, -a, -um, partic., <i>lit.,</i> <i>having been born</i> .
idōneus, -a, -um, <i>suitable</i> ; may be construed with the dative case.	tōtus, -a, -um, <i>entire, whole</i> .

NOTE 1. Most of the uses of the dative thus far illustrated call for the rendering "to"; but "for" is a translation frequently required by the dative with *idōneus*.

NOTE 2. With an accusative of Extent of Time, the participle *nātus* states a person's age: e.g. *muller viginti annōs nāta*, "A woman twenty years old," or "twenty years of age."

NOTE 3. Remember that *tōtus* belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular ; consult, if necessary, the Note on p. 352.

TRANSLATION

28. 1. Three times a place suitable for a bridge has been found by the inhabitants of the cities;¹ but to-day their leaders must again interview² Caesar. 2. The men said that sailors had twice been sent to the bridges³ to wait for⁴ the commander. 3. I have refused to talk with

the brother of that man, and the leaders of the entire nation will not be able to persuade me.⁵ 4. Since they are unwilling to send from the ship these men,⁶ who have better arms, let *us* ourselves⁷ advance with greater speed, and announce to the general that the worse leaders need to be guarded still⁸ longer by the townspeople.

29. 1. One of the sailors promised that he would go to the shore to look for⁹ a suitable skiff. 2. While this¹⁰ was being done, the soldiers, with us for leaders, advanced to the hill to announce that all the enemy had escaped by swimming.¹¹ 3. Although the whole city must be guarded by the soldiers, still we have⁴ food and water, and no one fears the armies of the enemy. 4. A few months before, because not even then were there forces to follow the skiffs, the general had been unwilling to advance into the great forest.

30. *A Popular Commander*

"I see a soldier coming," said Marcus. "Don't run to hide in the garden, Quintus; I hope that he will tell us a story." Then to the soldier: "Who are you, pray?¹² Have you fought in many battles?¹³ Tell us a story, please."¹⁴ "When I was eighteen years old," said the soldier, "I ran away from this town to the army; for I loved¹⁵ the general. Even⁸ in winter he¹⁶ would¹⁷ lie on the ground at night, and he never ordered his men¹⁸ to do¹⁹ what²⁰ he was unwilling to do himself.²¹ One night²² the fire caught²³ his cloak;²⁴ but we²⁵ could never persuade him to lie in a tent."

1. Be careful of the spelling.

2. *Lit., meet.*

3. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

4. Translate in two ways.

5. *persuade me: lit., persuade me to talk.* Be careful to render the English infinitive correctly (consult, if necessary, the

List of Verb Constructions, p. 382.)

6. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.
7. What kind of pronoun is this? Do not confuse it with the *third person reflexive* (Latin *suī*).

8. *etiam* (adv.).

9. *petō*. Translate the phrase in two ways.

10. Neut. pl. of *hic*.

11. Name the part of the verb for which this calls.

12. *Lit.*, *I beg* (*obsecrō*, 1).

13. See the Vocabulary of Exercise IX. Put this phrase first in the sentence, allowing the word for "many" to precede the preposition.

14. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VII.

15. Imperfect tense.

16. *ille*: cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.

17. Translate by the choice of tense.

18. *his men*: *suī, -ōrum*, M. Cf. the similar use of *nostrī* (and see also footnote 9 on Exercise I).

19. *to do*: omit.

20. *what*: *i.e. that which* (*id quod*).

21. Intensive pronoun.

22. *one night*: *lit., once, at night*.

23. *comprehendō*, 3, *-prehendi, -prehensus*.

24. *sagum, -ī*, N.

25. The pronoun may be expressed, if *autem* is the conjunction chosen.

EXERCISE XII

(31-33)

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

MODEL SENTENCE

Hostēs celeritātē nostrōs vincēbant, The enemy excelled our men in speed (*lit.* in respect to speed).

RULE. *That in respect to which anything is or is done may be indicated by a noun in the ablative case.*

VOCABULARY

aciēs , -ēī, F., <i>battle line, line.</i>	parcō , 3, peperci (future partic. parsūrus), <i>spare.</i>
dōnec , conj., <i>until.</i>	See the Rule in Exercise IX.
dōnum , -ī, N., <i>gift.</i>	
exēō , -īre, -īi, -itum est, <i>go out.</i>	recipiō , 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, <i>take back.</i>
inferior , -ior, -ius, <i>inferior.</i>	sē recipere , <i>to withdraw, to fall back, to retire.</i>
mille , indecl. adj., <i>a thousand; pl. (noun) milia, -ium, N., thousand(s).</i>	rideō , 2, risi , (risus), <i>smile, laugh.</i>
numerus , -ī, M., <i>number, numbers.</i>	superior , -ior, -ius, <i>superior.</i>

NOTE 1. The plural **milia**, being a noun, is construed with the genitive; e.g. **sex milia nautārum**, "six thousand sailors" (*lit.* "six thousands of sailors"). Because the English idiom is so different, this construction needs to be noted with special care.

NOTE 2. In English we may say either "superior in *number*" or "superior in *numbers*"; but only the singular of **numerus** should be used in rendering such phrases into Latin.

NOTE 3. Fundamentally, **parcō** signifies something like "be merciful," hence its construction with the dative case.

NOTE 4. In the idiom *se recipere*, the pronoun varies, of course, with the person and number of the verb; e.g. *me recipio*, *te recipis*, *se recipit*, *nos recipimus*, etc.

TRANSLATION

31. 1. We hope that you spared no part of the senate. 2. Though we are inferior in numbers, let us march with all¹ speed to give help² to the forces of the other³ general. 3. Since the Indians are on the point of attacking the town, please⁴ send a boy at once into the fields to tell⁵ the farmers that the horses must be taken by them⁶ to a distant place in⁷ the woods. 4. A girl nine years of age named⁸ Claudia, unwilling⁹ to be outdone¹⁰ in bravery by the men,¹¹ ran to the shore, and did not return home until she learned that all the skiffs were¹² safe. 5. Do not go¹³ to look for horses.

32. 1. By larger gifts I think that we shall persuade the Indians not to¹⁴ withdraw to those mountains which you see. 2. After burning the ships,¹⁵ the enemy fled, although they were superior in number. 3. They appointed¹⁶ him leader of the hunters, and on the third day sent two thousand soldiers to intimidate¹⁷ the enemy. 4. We must burn the city, although yesterday one of the enemies' generals twice tried to persuade us to spare the women and the smaller children.

33. *Veterans Displeased*

"The same soldier is sitting by¹⁸ the road to-day," said Quintus. "Let's go out; perhaps he will tell us another story." When the soldier¹⁹ saw the boys coming, he smiled and said,²⁰ "How are you,²¹ boys? I suppose that you want to hear a new story. Very well.²² In our²³ army was a regiment of very brave men.²⁴ Once, when our forces²⁵ had fought fiercely for five hours, the general

ordered the whole line to fall back to the hills.²⁶ When this²⁶ was heard²⁷ by the soldiers of that regiment, they said to their²⁸ captain, 'We do not know how to fall back.'²⁸ We came to fight, not to²⁹ run away.' 'But,' said the captain sadly,³⁰ 'we are ordered³¹ to retreat.'³² And so those brave³³ men were forced to withdraw under protest³⁴ from the field of battle."³⁵

1. *Lit., the greatest.*

2. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise VIII.

3. Be careful to choose the right word.

4. Use the plural form (see the Vocabulary of Exercise VII), and do not place first in the clause.

5. *i.e. announce (to).*

6. Reflexive pronoun (*sui*).

7. *Lit., into.*

8. Translate in two ways.

9. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

10. *outdo: vincō.*

11. *homō or vir?*

12. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise IX.

IX.

13. *i.e. set out.*

14. *not to:* introducing what kind of clause?

15. Use a (passive) participial phrase.

16. *i.e. made.*

17. *i.e. to frighten.* Translate this phrase in three ways.

18. Use in (and abl.).

19. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

III.

20. Be careful to place the verb of "saying" properly.

21. *How are you (pl.)? Quid agitis?*

22. *Very well: licet (lit. "it is permitted").*

23. Omit.

24. *Lit., our (men).*

25. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

26. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII.

27. Be careful to choose the right tense.

28. *how to fall back: lit., to fall back; an idiomatic use of the infinitive.*

29. *not to: i.e. (we did) not (come) to,* etc. Do not translate the words in parentheses, but render the remainder just as would be done if the whole were expressed.

30. Use an adj.

31. *we are ordered:* present tense.

32. *cēdō, 3, cessi, cessum est.*

33. Place this second modifier after the noun.

34. *under protest: invitus, -a, -um.*

35. *field of battle: lit., battle.*

EXERCISE XIII

(34-36)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES VI TO XII

VOCABULARY

Americānus , -a, -um, <i>American</i> . As noun, Americāni , -ōrum, M., <i>the Americans</i> .	Iacsō , -ōnis, M., <i>Jackson</i> .
Britannī , -ōrum, M., <i>the British, the English</i> .	Lovisiāna , -ae, F., <i>Louisiana</i> .
circiter , adv., with numerals, <i>about</i> .	quaerō , 3, quaesivī , quaesitus , <i>look for, seek, find</i> .
classis , -is (abl. -e), F., <i>fleet</i> .	superō , 1, <i>surpass, excel, overcome, conquer</i> .
	vāllum , -i, N., <i>rampart</i> .
	vulnerō , 1, <i>wound</i> .

TRANSLATION

34. 1. The Indians think that they can surpass us in running; but we¹ are sending settlers in every direction² to find men³ to beat them.⁴ 2. Since you have to bring⁵ gifts to that town and nobody⁶ wants them, we are going to look for some⁷ Indians to whom they may be given. 3. Although with the greatest kindness the generals of those armies spared entire cities, still I do not think that the commanders⁸ of the fleets will withdraw to the other bank of the river. 4. With a king for guide, the whole army was ordered to advance to the hills, so that the soldiers of all the nations might there be arranged⁹ in battle line.

35. 1. With a huge ax, a boy ten years of age killed a bear which had come from the woods to look for sheep.¹⁰ 2. The sailors laugh, although the soldiers surpass them¹¹ in swimming. 3. When Caesar¹² found¹³ that the enemy were inferior in number, he was willing to spare all their forces. 4. You¹⁴ will not need to fear the Indians, and no one will attempt to frighten you. 5. Not even Cicero

surpassed me in kindness, until our¹⁶ best general was wounded.

36. *The Battle of New Orleans*

Once an American general named Jackson had taken an army into Louisiana to wage war there with the British. Suddenly it was announced¹⁶ to him that a fleet of the enemy had come, and that soldiers were disembarking.¹⁷ Hearing this,¹⁸ Jackson at once built¹⁹ a long rampart, as²⁰ the enemy's forces were superior in number. Though the British²¹ charged²¹ three or four times²² with heroic²³ bravery against²⁴ this rampart, they were finally²⁵ forced to withdraw baffled²⁶ to their²⁷ camp. In²⁷ the battle they had lost about three thousand²⁸ soldiers; but of²⁹ the Americans only³⁰ eight were killed³¹ and thirteen wounded.

1. Express the subject, if *autem* is the conjunction chosen.

2. *in every direction: lit., into all parts.*

3. Pl. of *is*.

4. *ille*.

5. *have to bring: gerundive of ferō.*

6. *and nobody: see Exercise X.*

7. Omit.

8. *praefectus, -i, M.*

9. *collocō.*

10. *ovia, -is, F.*

11. *ipse.*

12. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

13. *i.e. learned.*

14. Singular.

15. Place the possessive adj., as usual, after the noun.

16. Impersonal expressions are neuter.

17. *ē nāvibus ēgredior (3, -gressus sum).*

18. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII. Make the phrase passive.

19. *exstruō, 3, -struī, -strūctus.*

20. *as: i.e. since.*

21. *Lit., made an attack.*

22. *or four times: quaterve (i.e. quater + ve).*

23. *Lit., the greatest.*

24. *in.*

25. *i.e. at last.*

26. *baffled: rē infectā (lit., the thing unaccomplished).*

27. Express the preposition.

28. Cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

29. *ex.*

30. *tantum (adv.).* Place after the numeral.

31. Express *sunt* at the end of the sentence only.

EXERCISE XIV

(37-39)

THE DATIVE OF INTEREST

MODEL SENTENCES

Rēs mihi bene ēveniet, The matter will turn out well for me.

Tibi omnia bona sunt, For you everything is good.

RULE. *The person whose interest is concerned may be indicated by a noun or pronoun in the dative case.*

REMARK. Observe that, while the dative of the indirect object is fundamentally the "to" dative, the dative of interest is a "for" dative (cf. the force of the case with *idōneus*).

VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, F., boldness, <i>daring.</i>	male, peius, pessimē, adv., <i>badly, worse, worst.</i>
bene, melius, optimē, adv., <i>well, better, best.</i>	multō, adv., <i>much;</i> used mostly with comparatives.
clam, adv., <i>quietly, unob-</i> <i>served.</i>	opprimō, 3, -pressi, -pressus, <i>crush.</i>
diligentia, -ae, F., <i>care, dili-</i> <i>gence.</i>	Poeni, -ōrum, M., <i>the Cartha-</i> <i>ginians.</i>
ēveniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum est, <i>turn out.</i>	videor, 2, visus sum, <i>seem,</i> <i>appear;</i> may be construed with indirect discourse.
Fabius, -bi, M., <i>Fabius.</i>	
lūmen, -inis, N., <i>light, torch.</i>	

NOTE 1. On the declension of **Fabius**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 2. When used with a comparative, *multō* normally precedes; e.g. *multō maior*, *multō melior*, etc.

NOTE 3. Because of the meaning of *videor*, the indirect discourse dependent upon it cannot have a subject accusative, and a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in this indirect discourse therefore stands in the same case as the subject of *videor* itself; e.g. *Dux esse videtur*, "He seems to be the leader;" *Rōmāni victi esse videntur*, "The Romans appear to have been beaten;" etc.

TRANSLATION

37. 1. Although the enemy are much superior in ships, still we have¹ about ten thousand brave soldiers, and war has never turned out badly for our commonwealth.² 2. The Indians seem to come to burn farmhouses, and³ not to⁴ steal cattle. 3. Do you realize that the town was set on fire by a girl fourteen years of age? 4. You must guard this camp with greater care; for⁵ the other general has a much higher rampart.

38. 1. I think that the battle will turn out well for the senate; for Pompey seems to have persuaded the sailors to break down⁶ a part of the bridges. 2. After killing⁷ the settlers in the fields, the Indians with the greatest boldness twice attacked that fort, believing⁸ that, by burning⁹ and killing,⁹ they had intimidated the soldiers also. 3. Although a few days before their forces had been much smaller, they were then on the point of boarding the fleet and crossing the sea to crush the enemy.

39. *Hannibal's Stratagem*

When Hannibal¹⁰ had crossed the mountains and advanced into Italy, he defeated the Romans in¹¹ many battles. On one occasion¹² a¹³ general named¹ Fabius

met him on the march;¹⁴ and since the Carthaginians were hemmed in¹⁵ by mountains, the Romans thought that they would very easily crush the forces of the enemy on the following¹⁶ day. But during the night¹⁷ Hannibal let loose¹⁸ into the fields some³ cattle with torches fastened to their heads.¹⁹ Seeing⁷ the lights, the Romans were alarmed, and nobody dared to investigate.²⁰ Meanwhile Hannibal's army was quietly withdrawing to a location more²¹ suitable for a camp.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Translate in two ways. | 11. <i>Lit., by.</i> |
| 2. <i>rēs (rei) pūblica, -ae, F.</i> | 12. <i>on one occasion: i.e. once.</i> |
| 3. Omit. | 13. <i>quidam.</i> |
| 4. <i>not to:</i> cf. footnote 29 on Exercise XII. Use <i>ad</i> here. | 14. <i>on the march: in itinere.</i> |
| 5. Do not put <i>autem, enim, or vērō</i> later than second in a sentence, even though it be necessary to divide a phrase in order to maintain this order of words. | 15. <i>hem in: claudō, 3, clausi, clausus.</i> |
| 6. <i>frangō:</i> cf. footnote 1 on Exercise V. | 16. <i>(posterus), -a, -um.</i> |
| 7. Use a passive participial phrase. | 17. <i>during the night: use an adverb.</i> |
| 8. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. | 18. <i>ēmittō, 3, -misi, -misseus.</i> |
| 9. Name the part of the verb here called for. | 19. <i>Lit., to (ad) the heads of which torches had been fastened (dēligō, 1). Remember that a relative stands first in its clause.</i> |
| 10. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III | 20. <i>investigate: lit., seek the explanation (causa, -ae, F.) of the thing.</i> |
| | 21. <i>magis (adv.).</i> |

EXERCISE XV

(40-42)

LOCATIVE CASE—THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE
CLAUSES (*continued*)

In with the ablative is already familiar as the regular method of expressing Place Where. City names, however, do not follow this rule, but use, instead of **in** and the ablative, a special case form (Locative) which requires no preposition. City names that are singulars of the first or second declensions have regularly, in the locative, the same form as in the genitive singular.

MODEL SENTENCE

Saratōgae et Eborāci Novi erant exercitūs hostium, Armies of the enemy were at (in) Saratoga and New York.

REMARK 1. But a noun in **-ium** makes its locative in **-ii**. Thus **Londinium** has the genitive **Londinī**, but locative **Londinii**.

REMARK 2. For all other city names than singulars of the first and second declensions, the locative is regularly identical in form with the *ablative* case; e.g. **Athēnis**, "at Athens" (**Athēnae**, **-ārum**, F.), **Carthāgine**, "at Carthage" (**Carthāgō**, **-inis**, F.).

Besides city names, three common nouns also form locatives; namely, **domi**, "at home," **humī**, "on the ground," and **rūri**, "in the country."

RULE. *The names of cities, and the common nouns domus, humus, and rūs designate Place Where by means of the Locative case.*

MODEL SENTENCE

Ibi morantur castellōrum adoriendōrum causā, They are waiting there to attack the forts, *lit.* with (*i.e.* for) the purpose of attacking the forts.

RULE. *Purpose may be expressed by the ablative causā, PRECEDED by a genitive phrase made up of a noun with gerundive modifier.*

REMARK 1. Do not fail to note that *causā* must stand *last* in the purpose clause.

REMARK 2. Verbs of the class described in Exercise IX (*e.g. persuādeō*) are almost wholly defective in the gerundive, and cannot be used in purpose clauses of this type.

REMARK 3. For the expression of purpose by means of gerundive phrases, *ad* with the accusative and *causā* with the genitive are practically equivalent forms. But while *ad* with the accusative attaches itself most naturally to verbs of motion (cf. Exercise XI), the rule for the use of *causā* with the genitive is without any such limitation.

VOCABULARY

audāx , audācis, <i>bold</i> ; (com- par. audācior; superl. audācissimus).	mūnitio, -ōnis, <i>F., fortification.</i>
causa, -ae, <i>F., purpose.</i>	speculator, <i>I, spy upon, view.</i>
Londinium, -nī, <i>N., London.</i>	rūs, rūris, <i>N., country</i> (in distinction from "city").
	Rōma, -ae, <i>F., Rome.</i>

NOTE 1. *Audāx* belongs to the class known as "adjectives of one termination," *i.e.* it is a third declension adjective with the same form for all genders in the nominative singular. See the Summary of Forms, p. 350.

NOTE 2. Though *rūs* is not an I-Stem, it has, along with *rūre*, the form *rūri*. And as this latter is seldom found except in the sense "*in the country*," to it is assigned the name "locative," as already indicated above. *Rūre*, on the other hand, is restricted closely to the conventional ablative uses.

TRANSLATION

40. 1. In the summer *we* live in the country, but¹ our grandfather prefers to remain the whole year in London. 2. I hope that the war will turn out well for the entire nation. 3. Meanwhile the inhabitants of all parts of the mountain were going to the shore to look for² skiffs. 4. While³ our soldiers⁴ were lying on the ground in the woods, the general of the enemy led his⁵ forces very quickly through the valley, hoping⁶ that, by hurrying, he would be able⁷ to cross all the hills⁸ unobserved. 5. Since the king's fleet excelled in swiftness, our general had to⁹ take that town at once; and so we spared neither¹⁰ ourselves¹¹ nor¹² our⁵ brave horses, until we came to the bridge.

41. 1. Why do you always prefer¹³ to remain at Rome and not to go to the shore to see the ships? 2. Let us hurry to the hill; for¹ I can⁵ see the two lines,¹⁴ and the enemy seem to surpass our men in valor. 3. With a dog for guide, the boldest hunters ventured to go¹⁴ farther into the forest to hunt for bears; but Marcus says that matters¹⁵ turned out badly for them,¹⁶ and that one of the men¹⁷ was killed by Indians. 4. The settlers now advanced with much greater boldness, thinking⁶ that they saw¹⁸ lights in the town. 5. Did you say that the hunters' skiffs had twice been filled with the waves?

42. *The Spy*

Once our commander persuaded one of his¹⁹ captains to cross the river, to spy upon the fortifications of the Indians. Although the man²⁰ thought that the enemy would perhaps capture and condemn²¹ him²² to death,²¹

still he was very ready²³ to go.²⁴ By night he hid²⁵ in the woods, and in the daytime²⁶ he would climb the highest trees, to view the enemy's rampart; and when at last he had found out²⁷ the things which²⁸ the commander wished to learn, he again crossed the river, and returned safely²⁹ to the army.

1. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.

2. Translate in three ways.

3. Do not forget to use *dum*, as occasion offers.

4. *Lit., our (men).*

5. Omit.

6. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

7. The present infinitive of *possum* is frequently made to do duty for the lacking future infinitive.

8. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

9. Gerundive.

10. *neither . . . nor : nec . . . neque (nec).*

11. *nōs ipsī.*

12. Reserve the verb of "preferring" for the last place in the sentence.

13. *i.e. battle lines* (Vocabulary of Exercise XII).

14. *Lit., to advance.*

15. *Lit., the thing.*

16. *ille.*

17. Pl. of *is*.

18. Be careful to choose the right tense.

19. *suus, -a, -um.*

20. *ille* (and cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III).

21. *condemn . . . to death : capitis damnō, 1.*

22. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*).

23. Use a form of *libenter*.

24. *Lit., to set out.*

25. Before choosing the tense, note the wording of the following clause.

26. *in the daytime : interdiū* (adv.).

27. *inveniō.*

28. *the things which : ea . . . quae* (neut.).

29. See the Vocabulary of Exercise II.

EXERCISE XVI

(43-45)

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

MODEL SENTENCE

Timōre nautārum nāvēs omnēs frāctae sunt, Because of the panic of the sailors, all the ships were wrecked.

RULE. *Cause may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case.*

VOCABULARY

abhinc , adv., <i>ago</i> .	nūntius , -ī, m., <i>messenger</i> .
adventus , -ūs, m., <i>approach, arrival</i> .	Petrēius , -ēī, m., <i>Petreius</i> .
aeger , -gra, -grum, <i>ill, sick</i> .	simulō , ī, <i>pretend</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.
Antōnius , -nī, m., <i>Antonius</i> .	timor , -ōris, m., <i>fear, panic</i> .
Catīlina , -ae, m., <i>Catiline</i> .	undique , adv., <i>from every side, from all sides (quarters); on every hand (side)</i> .
Cornivallis , -is (abl. -e), m., <i>Cornwallis</i> .	Vasingtō , -ōnis, m., <i>Washington</i> .
fit ut , with subjunctive, <i>it happens that</i> .	
hortor , ī, <i>urge</i> ; governs the acc., often along with an ut or nē-clause of purpose.	

NOTE 1. **Abhinc**, "ago," unlike **ante**, "before," regularly stands *first* in its phrase. Moreover, it differs from **ante** in two other particulars: first, that it is associated with an accusative of Extent of Time (*not* an ablative of Degree of Difference); and, second, that it reckons backward from *present* time (whereas **ante** reckons backward from a point in the *past*). Thus, **abhinc multōs**

annōs, "many years ago," but **tribus ante diēbus**, "three days earlier."

NOTE 2. For the declension of **Antōnius** and **Petrēius**, see again Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 3. The phrase **fit ut** may, of course, exhibit any tense (or mood); e.g. **fiet ut**, **factum est ut**, etc.

TRANSLATION

43. 1. Because of his¹ kindness Cicero was loved by all the best² Romans. 2. I must crush the enemy at once; then we shall have continued³ peace. 3. Our general is at New York for the purpose of meeting his⁴ captains. He will urge them to be bolder in spirit,⁵ and they⁴ never will desert⁶ him. 4. It thus happened that matters⁷ twice turned out well for the other⁸ general on the sea;⁹ and I think that he will soon send messengers to summon¹⁰ the soldiers who are now living in the country.

44. 1. Ten days ago a girl about six years old hurried into our camp to notify¹¹ the commander of¹² the approach of the women. 2. The women and children are terrified because of the boldness of the enemy, and there is no one at Rome to allay¹³ their¹⁴ fear. 3. It will soon happen that horses will be brought from every side into that Indian's camp, so that the enemy may not¹⁵ steal them. 4. A few months later our leader began to establish¹⁶ more camps; for the enemy then seemed to be on the point of¹⁷ sending larger armies by ship¹⁸ from Spain.

45. *Convenient Illness*

When Cornwallis¹⁹ was forced to surrender²⁰ himself and his all²¹ to Washington, he was not ill; but by pre-

tending it,⁴ he was able to remain in his⁴ tent, and did not himself²² meet the generals by whom his army had been beaten. And many years before, the consul Antonius, sent from the city to crush Catiline, and⁴ not wishing²³ to be seen²⁴ fighting²⁵ against²⁶ a man²⁷ who had formerly been his friend,²⁸ on the day of battle gave it out²⁹ that he was lame,³⁰ and allowed his⁴ lieutenant³¹ Petreius to lead the line against³² the enemy, who, upon a small hill, had found a place suitable for a camp.

1. suus, -a, -um.
2. Place this second modifier after the noun.
3. diutinus, -a, -um.
4. Omit.
5. animus, -i, m. Use the singular.
6. *i.e. leave.*
7. Sing. of rēs.
8. Be careful to choose the right word.
9. *on the sea*: place early in the clause, and be careful of the spelling.
10. ēvocō, 1. Translate the phrase in three ways.
11. moneō.
12. *i.e. about.*
13. levō, 1.
14. Masc.
15. *so that . . . not*: introducing what kind of clause?
16. cōstituō, 3, -stitui, -stitutus.
17. See Exercise II.
18. Use the pl.
19. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.
20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.
21. *himself and his all*: sē suaque omnia.
22. Intensive pronoun.
23. Use nōlō (and cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III).
24. *to be seen*: lit., *himself (sē) to be seen* (cōspiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectus).
25. Be careful to handle correctly predicate nouns, adjectives, and participles.
26. cum.
27. *a man*: is.
28. *his friend*: lit., *friendly* (amicus, -a, -um) *to him* (ipse).
29. *i.e. pretended.*
30. Lit., *ill with respect to the feet* (pēs, pedis, m., "foot"); for construction, see Exercise XII.
31. lēgātus.
32. in.

EXERCISE XVII

(46-48)

THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

Conditional sentences of the commonest type state the conditions under which something *is, was, or will be* true. Such conditional sentences are known as Simple.

MODEL SENTENCES

Si nūntius pervēnit, militem statim vocābō, If the messenger has come, I will call the soldier at once.

Si Caesar in castris est, impetūs hostium vōbis nōn timendī sunt, If Caesar is in the camp, you need not fear the assaults of the enemy.

RULE. *Simple Conditional Sentences, both in the condition and the conclusion, use any tense of the indicative required by the sense.*

Different from the above are those conditional sentences which tell what *would be* true, if something *should* take place. This type of conditional sentence is known as Vague Future.

MODEL SENTENCE

Si hostēs flūmen trānseant, Caesar statim sē recipiat, If the enemy *should* cross the river, Caesar *would* at once fall back.

RULE. *Vague Future Conditional Sentences have the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion.*

REMARK 1. Though the difference between the above types of conditional sentence is very marked and obvious, it is of the utmost importance, here, at the outset, to fix that difference firmly in the mind. Otherwise, mistakes will insidiously creep in.

REMARK 2. Since "would" and "should" are put to so many different uses in English, it may, perhaps, require a little care to keep clear and distinct (1) the "would" and "should" of vague future conditional sentences; (2) the "would" which is merely a mark of customary past action; and (3) the "should" which calls for the Latin gerundive.

VOCABULARY

glōrior , I, <i>boast</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.	forms in parentheses), <i>any one, anybody, some one, somebody; anything, something.</i> See the Summary of Forms, p. 358.
hūc , adv., <i>hither, here</i> .	
quī (quis), qua , quod (quid), indefinite pronoun: adj.,	sī , conj., <i>if</i> .
<i>any, some</i> ; noun (the	

NOTE. **Hūc** is used with verbs of motion only. But it is frequently the required translation for English "here," since this latter word is so often used loosely for "hither" (*e.g.* "Come here!").

In memorizing the forms of indefinite **quī**, note that its declension is just like that of interrogative **quī**, excepting for the form **qua** (fem. sing. and neut. pl.). Indefinite **quī** is used chiefly in combination with the conjunctions **sī**, **nē**, **nisi** ("unless"), and **num** ("whether"), being there a regular substitute for the corresponding forms of **aliquī**; *e.g.*:

sī	quis , if any one, if some one.
	quid , if anything, if something.
	qua nāvis , if any ship, if some ship.
nē	quis , so that no one (<i>lit.</i> lest any one).
	quid , so that nothing (<i>lit.</i> lest anything).
	qua nāvis , so that no ship (<i>lit.</i> lest any ship).

NOTE 1. Study with special care the above examples with *nē*, observing how English negative purpose clauses may need to be recast in order to suggest the Latin form, introduced by the proper conjunction; e.g. "so that no one" = "lest any one" (*nē quis*), "so that nothing" = "lest anything" (*nē quid*), etc.

NOTE 2. When indefinite *quī* is used in combination with a conjunction, it should be placed next after that conjunction, without intervening word or words; see again the examples.

TRANSLATION

46. 1. If I should seem to be ill, they would think that we had remained the whole day in London.¹ 2. Don't sit on the ground, children; we did not come here to gather² flowers. 3. Because of the heat³ the stream is dry;⁴ and the natives are burning the crops,⁵ so that no one may find food. 4. If anything turns out⁶ well for us, not even the Romans will excel our men in boldness.

47. 1. If the general has been killed, you must send a messenger at once to urge Caesar not to appoint⁷ Curio leader. 2. If the enemy should pretend to⁸ be on the point of burning the city, we should still try to persuade our general to remain in camp, and should not venture to go out ourselves.⁹ 3. At the time of Caesar's arrival,¹⁰ it happened¹¹ that the boldest hunters were advancing¹² very bravely through the woods to attack the smallest of the fortifications.¹³ 4. Spy upon¹⁴ the larger camp with the greatest care; for when the assault is made,¹⁵ the two lines will come together¹⁶ near that rampart.

48. *A Youthful Warrior*

"The boys are always boasting about the stories they¹⁷ hear," said Marcella to the girls. "If anybody comes¹⁸ from town to-day, perhaps *we* shall hear something to boast about."¹⁹ "I see my grandmother coming," re-

marked Julia. Then to her²⁰ grandmother: "Tell us a story, please." "Once," said her grandmother, "when a²¹ battle line was advancing to make an assault upon²² the enemy, suddenly one of the soldiers spied²³ a little baby²⁴ lying on the ground; and, although bullets²⁵ were flying²⁶ in every direction,²⁷ the line halted,²⁸ and the captain ordered the man²⁹ to carry the boy to his own³⁰ tent. Four days later, when the distracted³¹ mother came across³² the fields looking for her²⁰ baby, the boy was found safe³³ among the soldiers."

1. See Remark 1 on p. 247.

2. *carpō*, 3, *carpsī*, *carptus*.

What part of speech is the gerundive?

3. *aestus*, -ūs, M. Use the pl., and do not confuse the ablative of cause with the purpose construction involving *causā*.

4. *āridus*, -a, -um.

5. Pl. of *frumentum*.

6. *turns out*: *i.e.* *shall turn out*. English is often far from precise in the wording of conditions.

7. *i.e.* *make*.

8. What construction with the verb of "pretending"?

9. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XI.

10. This whole phrase may be translated by an abl. of Time When (two words only).

11. *Lit.*, *it happened by chance* (*by chance*: *forte*, adv.).

12. What mood is required?

13. *Lit.*, *the smallest fortification*.

14. Note the deponent verb.

15. Indicative mood. For the tense, cf. footnote 6 above.

16. *come together*: use the idiom *inter sē* (acc.) *concurrere* (*concurrō*, 3, -*curri*, -*cursum est*).

17. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise II.

18. Cf. footnote 6 above.

19. *Lit.*, *things* (ea, neut.) *about which to boast*: cf. the second group of Model Sentences in Exercise I.

20. Omit.

21. *quidam*.

22. in (with what case?).

23. *i.e.* *saw*.

24. *baby*: *infāns*, -*fantis*, M.

25. *tēlum*.

26. Passive of *mittō*.

27. *i.e.* *on all sides*.

28. *cōsistō*, 3, -*stiti*, -*stitum est*.

29. Use *miles*.

30. *his own*: gen. of *ipse*. Place next after the preposition.

31. *Lit.*, *thoroughly frightened*.

32. *per*.

33. Cf. Note 3 on p. 204.

EXERCISE XVIII

(49-51)

THE CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING

Clauses dependent upon verbs of fearing look, at first sight, very much like purpose clauses; but they differ from them in important particulars. In the following models, note especially the force of *ut* and *nē*.

MODEL SENTENCES

Timēmus ut videant, We are afraid that they ARE NOT looking.

Timēbam nē quis veniret, I was afraid that some one WAS coming.

RULE. *Verbs of Fearing are construed with subjunctive clauses introduced by nē ("that") and ut ("that not").*

All tenses of the subjunctive are found in clauses dependent upon verbs of fearing, the choice being determined by the Law of Sequence as laid down in Exercise VI. Used in this construction, the present and imperfect subjunctive may refer either to action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb, or to action *future* from the point of view of that verb; *e.g.*:

Timeō nē glōriētur	{	I am afraid that he <i>is</i> boasting.
		I am afraid that he <i>will</i> boast.
Timēbam nē glōriārētur	{	I was afraid that he <i>was</i> boasting.
		I was afraid that he <i>would</i> boast.

NOTE. Observe that, in the phrases where the present and imperfect subjunctive designate action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb, the force of these tenses is the same as in causal *cum*-clauses; but when they refer to action that is *future* from the point of view of the governing verb, the tense force is like that seen in purpose clauses (cf. Note 1 on p. 220).

VOCABULARY

- certus, -a, -um, certain.** (*aliquem*) **certiorem facere, to inform** (a person); may be construed with indirect discourse.
- cōstituō, 3, -stitui, -stitutus, decide, determine;** may be construed with the complementary infinitive.
- Faber, -bri, m., Carpenter.**
- cohors, -rtis, f., company** (of soldiers).

NOTE 1. For the idiom (*aliquem*) **certiorem facere** (*lit.* "to make a person more certain"), cf. the double accusative construction of Exercise II. The comparative **certior**, of course, takes any form called for by the context, *e.g.* **imperātor militēs certiōrēs faciet**, "The commander will inform the soldiers," and the passive is formed in the regular way, *e.g.* **Caesar certior fit**, "Caesar is informed."

NOTE 2. On the declension of **cohors**, see the statement on p. 201.

TRANSLATION

49. 1. Did you fear that the general's son had not been informed? 2. Because of the diligence of these companies, at New York everything¹ is safe, and we do not need to march to the coast ourselves to guard the ships.² 3. If you should persuade Caesar to spare the whole nation, we should fear that the other captains would blame³ you. 4. At Rome they will guard the streets with the greatest diligence, so that nothing⁴ be lost; but the fear⁵ of the consuls and the senate is extreme.⁶ 5. If any one meets⁷ him on the road,⁸ he will surely⁹ be informed.

50. 1. In diligence we perhaps seem to be much inferior; but do not fear that matters will very long¹⁰ turn out badly for us. 2. If, by boasting, you are able⁷ to frighten the

enemy, inform¹¹ the general at once, and hurry hither¹² to meet the soldiers. 3. Since the captains¹³ have been informed¹⁴ about the attack of the Indians, and are afraid that the fleet has not arrived, they will at once destroy¹⁵ the bridge with fire and fall back¹⁶ to the hills.

51. *Ten to One*

Many years ago¹⁷ a certain captain named Carpenter decided to try to take and burn a town into which the farmers from all sides¹⁸ were bringing supplies¹⁹ to aid the enemy. He had with him²⁰ only²¹ about twenty men;²¹ but they²² marched boldly²³ a few miles through the woods, and suddenly attacked a company of the enemy, which was guarding the town. Carpenter had divided²⁴ his men,²⁵ and had ordered them²⁶ all to pretend that they were officers,²⁷ and to shout out²⁸ commands²⁹ as³⁰ they made the attack. The enemy of course³¹ thought that many companies were pressing forward³² through the woods, and fled at full speed.³³ After burning³⁴ the town, Carpenter³⁵ returned to camp with but two men wounded.³⁶

1. Neut. pl. of *omnis*.

2. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.
Translate the phrase in three ways.

3. *culpō*, 1.

4. See Note 1 on p. 256.

5. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

6. *summus*.

7. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

8. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise XIV.

9. *sine dubiō* (*lit.* "without doubt").

10. *very long*: compar. of *diū*.

11. Do not forget the irregular imperative forms: *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*.

12. Place next after the word for "and."

13. Be careful of the order of words.

14. What verb determines the tense in this and the following coordinate clause?

15. *cōsumō*.

16. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

17. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

EXERCISE XIX

261

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>18. <i>commeātus</i>, -ūs, m. Use the singular.</p> <p>19. <i>sēcum</i>.</p> <p>20. <i>tantum</i> (adv.). Place after the numeral.</p> <p>21. <i>mīles</i>.</p> <p>22. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII, using <i>autem</i> as the conjunction.</p> <p>23. <i>audācter</i>.</p> <p>24. <i>dividō</i>, 3, -visī, -visus.</p> <p>25. <i>his men</i>: suī, -ōrum, m.</p> <p>26. Omit.</p> | <p>27. <i>līgātus</i>. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise XVI.</p> <p>28. <i>shout out</i>: clārē (adv.) <i>prōnūntiō</i>, 1.</p> <p>29. <i>mandātum</i>, -ī, n.</p> <p>30. <i>cum</i>.</p> <p>31. <i>of course</i>: scilicet.</p> <p>32. <i>prōcurrō</i>, 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum est.</p> <p>33. <i>i.e. with the greatest speed</i>.</p> <p>34. Use a <i>cum</i>-clause.</p> <p>35. <i>Lit., two (men) only (tantum) having been wounded</i>.</p> |
|---|--|

EXERCISE XIX

(52-54)

GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC

MODEL SENTENCE

Caesar est summae virtūtis vir, Caesar is a man of the greatest courage.

RULE. *A noun in the genitive case, with a modifier, may be used to designate a quality or characteristic of a person or thing.*

REMARK. Observe that a genitive, to be used in this construction, must be accompanied by a modifier.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p><i>animus</i>, -ī, m., <i>spirit, mind</i>.</p> <p><i>Cāius</i>, -āī, m., <i>Gaius</i>, a boy's or man's name.</p> <p><i>civis</i>, -is (abl. -e), c. (pl. m.), <i>citizen, countryman</i>.</p> <p><i>clāmō</i>, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, <i>cry out, shout</i>.</p> | <p><i>dolor</i>, -ōris, m., <i>pain, suffering</i>.</p> <p><i>fortitūdō</i>, -inis, f., <i>fortitude</i>.</p> <p><i>Marius</i>, -rī, m., <i>Marius</i>.</p> <p><i>medicus</i>, -ī, m., <i>doctor</i>.</p> <p><i>sōlus</i>, -a, -um, <i>alone, only</i>.</p> |
|--|---|

NOTE 1. By exception, the letter *c* has the sound of *g* in the proper names *Caius* and *Cnaeus*. On the declension of *Caius*, cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI. In connection with a family name, a first name is usually abbreviated; e.g. *C. Caesar*, "Gaius Caesar," *M. Crassus*, "Marcus Crassus," etc.

NOTE 2. Remember that *solus* belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular (cf. the Note on p. 352).

TRANSLATION

52. 1. If you were afraid that this¹ was turning out well for me alone, why did you not send men² of greater boldness to help the others?³ 2. If any one should find a sword with which to kill⁴ the king's brother, we should be informed at once by the Indians. 3. Although Cicero⁵ is himself⁶ a man of the greatest kindliness, still he used to fear that some one⁷ would kill the consuls. 4. Three thousand⁸ baskets were given to the Indians by the settlers, so that they would not steal the hunters' horses. 5. In London the fear of those days⁹ still¹⁰ makes¹¹ the citizens¹² uneasy.¹³

53. 1. Do you think that the general has sent more companies into the valley, or¹³ are you afraid that he¹⁴ has fallen back to the mountains? 2. Because of the arrival of Caesar's ships, the soldiers feared that the sailors had not escaped. 3. While¹⁵ at Rome and in the country many people¹⁶ were hoping that¹⁷ our men would win, the enemy, who were much superior in numbers,¹⁸ suddenly boarded their¹⁹ fleet, and sailed to the island. 4. We fear that, by talking²⁰ and urging, the townspeople have very easily persuaded the general not to set out²¹ with the Indian for guide.

54. *Power of the Will*

The Romans thought that men² should bear pain bravely, and they were never willing to cry out, though

their sufferings were very severe²² at times.²³ In those days²⁴ the doctors used to strap²⁵ a man² down,²⁵ if they were about to operate,²⁶ so that the patient²⁷ might not hinder²⁸ them.²⁹ But when Gaius Marius,⁵ a general of great³⁰ fortitude, needed³¹ to be operated upon,²⁶ he refused to be strapped down,²⁵ wishing³² thus to teach his³³ countrymen that³⁴ the body³⁵ can be controlled³⁶ by the mind.

1. Neut. of *hic*.
2. *homō* or *vir*?
3. *ceteri*.
4. Turn into the passive.
What sort of relative clause is this?
5. Be careful about the order of words.
6. Intensive pronoun.
7. Cf. the statement following the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII; and, for the tense force in this clause, see the Note on p. 258.
8. Adj. or noun in Latin?
9. Review again the gender of *diēs*.
10. *adhūc*.
11. *makes . . . uneasy*: *sollicitō*, I.
12. See Remark 1 on p. 201.
13. *an*. As this is itself an interrogative word, do not add *-ne*.
14. *ille*.
15. Do not forget to use *dum*, as occasion offers.
16. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.
17. Be careful to write the correct construction.
18. Cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.
19. Omit.
20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise X.
21. See the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI.
22. *severe*: *magnus*.
23. *at times*: *interdum*.
24. Pl. of *tempus*.
25. *strap . . . down*: *religō*, I.
26. *operate, operate upon*: *secō*, I, *secuī*, *sectus*.
27. *the patient*: use *ille* simply, placing it after the other pronoun in the clause.
28. *impediō*, 4, *-ivī*, *-itus*.
29. Reflexive pronoun (*sui*).
30. *Lit., the greatest*. Translate "greatest" in two ways.
31. Gerundive.
32. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.
33. *suus*, *-a*, *-um*.
34. Consult, if necessary, the List of Verb Constructions, p. 382.
35. *corpus*, *-oris*, N.
36. *vincō*.

EXERCISE XX

(55-57)

DATIVE OF SERVICE

MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar nautās subsidiō vĕnātōribus mīsit, Caesar sent the sailors to reënforce the hunters (*lit.* for a reënforcement for the hunters).

Cohors mulieribus liberisque praesidiō fuit, The company served as a protection for the women and children (*lit.* was for a protection for the women and children).

RULE. *The dative singular of various abstract nouns is used to designate that for which a thing serves, or for which it is intended to serve.*

REMARK. The Dative of Service is generally used in connection with a dative of interest; cf. the Model Sentences above. Occasionally it is accompanied by a dative of the indirect object, and sometimes it stands alone.

VOCABULARY

arcēssō, 3, **arcēssivī**, **arcēs-**
sītus, *summon, call.*

captivus, -ī, M., *prisoner.*

cōservō, 1, *save.*

cūrō, 1, *care for (e.g. the wounded).*

noceō, 2, -ui (future partic.

nocitūrus), *injure, harm.*

See the Rule in Exercise

IX, with the Note.

praesidium, -ī, N., *protection.*

sic, adv., *thus, in this way.*

subsidium, -ī, N., *reënforce-*
ment.

NOTE. The verb **cūrō** governs the accusative, the "for" of the English rendering being a part of the definition of the verb, and not the sign of the dative case.

TRANSLATION

55. 1. If any one should send two companies as a reënforcement for us, not even the fiercest assault¹ of the enemy would alarm us. 2. Be men² of the greatest fortitude; do not fear that the enemy will prevail.³ 3. If the soldiers cry out⁴ because of pain, we shall not send doctors to⁵ care for them. 4. Since they were afraid that we were weak⁶ in spirit, they called all the sailors to help⁷ us. 5. We thought that they were burning the cities in order to injure⁸ the senate.

56. 1. Though you fear that men⁹ of very little courage⁹ have been sent with us, still do not think that the enemy will be able¹⁰ by an assault to injure any¹¹ company. 2. Let *us* protect¹² the children of the leaders, and urge the other men not to stay at home to guard the horses. 3. Thus it happened that, by shouting, a boy ten years of age twice saved¹³ that town. 4. If they¹⁴ were informed a few days later about these matters and the arrival of the fleets, they are now in the valley and we need not fear an attack from them.¹⁵

57. *Luckless Prisoners*

"I see a soldier sitting alone in the shade, Quintus," said Gaius. "Let's ask¹⁶ him to tell us a story." Seeing them,¹⁷ the soldier smiled and said, "Do you want to hear a story? Once I was in an army which was waging war with the Indians, and I heard much¹⁸ about their cruelty.¹⁹ One of the soldiers informed me that they²⁰ would²¹ put²² prisoners upon²³ the backs of wild²⁴ horses and bind²⁵ them²⁶ fast,²⁷ and (that they would)²⁸ let loose²⁹ the horses into the woods, so that nobody³⁰ might find the wretched³¹ men³² and care for them. In³³ this way very many of³⁴ our citi-

zens whom the Indians captured, have been killed. Do you³² not³³ think that they died in a frightful³⁴ manner? ”³⁵

1. The emphatic word of this phrase is “fiercest.”
2. *homō* or *vir*?
3. Either *superō* or *vincō*.
4. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.
5. Translate in two ways.
6. *dēmissus*, -a, -um. Model the phrase on *numerō superior*, etc.
7. Use *auxilium* (with the verb *sum*), thus illustrating the new principle in the day’s grammar lesson.
8. Cf. Remark 2 on p. 248.
9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.
10. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XV.
11. *ūllus*.
12. Use *praesidium* (with the verb *sum*).
13. What mood is required?
14. *ille*. Be careful of the word order (cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III).
15. *Lit.*, of *them*.
16. *Lit.*, *urge*.
17. *Lit.*, *whom when he had seen* (cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII).
18. Neut. pl. of *multi*.
19. *crūdēlitāa*, -ātis, f.
20. *ille*.
21. Use *soleō*, putting this verb early in the clause.
22. *pōnō*, 3, *posui*, *positus*.
23. *in*, with the abl.; cf. the construction with *collocō*.
24. *ferus*, -a, -um.
25. *bind . . . fast*: *artē* (adv.) *religō*, 1.
26. Omit.
27. *ēmittō*, 3, -*misi*, -*missus*.
28. What kind of clause?
29. Use the superl.
30. Not continuing the indirect discourse begun in the preceding sentence.
31. *very many of*: superl. of *multi*. Put the other modifier after the noun, as is usual with possessive adjectives.
32. How many persons are addressed?
33. Introduce the question by *nōnne* (i.e. *nōn* + *ne*), this combination presupposing the answer “yes.”
34. *horrendus*, -a, -um.
35. *i.e. way*. Use the pl.

EXERCISE XXI

(58-60)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XIV TO XX—DEPENDENT
CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

MODEL SENTENCES

Arbitror vĕnātōrēs, quibus pecūnia sit, ad oppida itūrōs,
I think that the hunters who have money will go to the
towns.

Nōne putābās militēs, quōs imperātor arcēssivisset, oppi-
dum custōdire? Did you not think that the soldiers whom
the general had summoned were guarding the town?

RULE. *The subjunctive mood should be used in all
dependent clauses in indirect discourse.*

NOTE. The tense of the subjunctive in these dependent clauses
is usually determined (under the regular rule for sequence) by the
tense of the verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc., which governs
the indirect discourse; but clauses dependent upon a *perfect* in-
finitive are limited to the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the
subjunctive (cf. footnote 1 on Exercise V).

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, -ātis, F., <i>authority</i> ,	profectō, adv., <i>surely, cer-</i>
<i>influence.</i>	<i>tainly.</i>
civitās, -ātis, F., <i>state.</i>	vulnerāti, -ōrum, M., <i>the</i>
expugnō, I, <i>take by storm.</i>	<i>wounded.</i>
occupō, I, <i>occupy.</i>	

NOTE. Contrast certē, "certainly" ("at any rate"), with profectō, "certainly" ("beyond a doubt").

TRANSLATION

58. 1. If men of great influence are a protection¹ to the state, why do you fear that² we shall not² prevail? 2. Because of Cicero's authority, I believe that the companies we left³ at Rome are safe. 3. To save⁴ the leaders of the states, who will not be willing⁵ to die thus? 4. If something⁶ should be given to the other sailor, and nothing⁷ should fall out to his disadvantage,⁸ he would soon be able to return home to care for his⁹ sick children. 5. I suppose that they have never felt¹⁰ the violence of the waves.

59. 1. We think that those¹¹ who surpass us in influence fear that we have tried to injure them.¹² 2. If with sword and¹³ ax we can be a help¹⁴ to the consul, we will by no means delay¹⁵ in the country. 3. We feared that at London some one had ventured to interview¹⁶ the captain; for he is a man of the mildest¹⁷ temper.¹⁸ 4. If, after burning the city,¹⁹ they have stopped¹⁵ to care for the wounded, surely no one will ever say that they hurried home for²⁰ fear of the enemy. 5. Did the leader's son tell²¹ the consuls the number of days?

60. *The Dispatch-Bearer*

"A few days ago,"²² said the soldier, "our general persuaded a bold messenger to attempt to carry some⁹ powder²³ to a fort which the enemy had hemmed in²⁴ on all sides with strong²⁵ fortifications. Though the man²⁶ was lame,²⁷ he thought that his⁹ father had a horse which could²⁸ carry him¹² safely through the country²⁹ which the enemy had occupied.²³ He therefore set out at night; and when his⁹ horse was killed by a bullet,³⁰ he found another, and thus in³¹ a few hours came to the bank of a

large river. Here,²² his⁹ second³³ horse having been killed, he seized a skiff, and floated³⁴ many miles down the stream,³⁵ and finally in safety³⁶ brought the powder²³ into the fort, which the enemy were now³⁷ on the point of taking by storm."

1. Not nominative.
2. *that . . . not*: note the kind of verb upon which this clause depends.
3. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise II.
4. What kind of clause?
5. *not be willing*: *i.e. be unwilling*.
6. Cf. the statement following the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.
7. *and nothing*. see Exercise X.
8. *Lit., should turn out badly for him*.
9. Omit.
10. *sentiō*.
11. Pl. of *is*.
12. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*).
13. *-que*.
14. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XX.
15. *moror*.
16. *Lit., meat*.
17. *mild*: *mitis, -is, -e*.
18. *Lit., spirit*.
19. Use a passive participial phrase.
20. *i.e. because of*. Put this phrase first in the indirect discourse.
21. *dīcō* (with dat. of the person spoken to).
22. Be careful about the word order (Note I on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI).
23. *pulvis, -eris, m*.
24. *claudō, 3, clausi, clausus*.
25. *Lit., very great*.
26. Use *ille*.
27. *pedibus captus, -a, -um*; (*pedibus*, Abl. of Specification, from *pēs, pedis, m*., "foot").
28. Be careful of the mood.
29. Use the pl. of *locus*, recalling the peculiarity of its declension.
30. *tēlum*.
31. *i.e. within*.
32. *Lit., where* (rel. adv., beginning a new sentence. Cf. the similar use of *quī* when it replaces a demonstrative pronoun).
33. *alter*.
34. *nō, 1*.
35. *down the stream*: *secundō flūmine*.
36. *in safety*: *i.e. safely*.
37. *nunc or iam*?

EXERCISE XXII

(61-63)

THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

MODEL SENTENCE

Hōc tēlō miles profectō nōn ūtētur, This weapon the soldier surely will not use.

RULE. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor** govern the *ablative case*.

REMARK. This list should be memorized as it stands, though not all of the verbs are to be used immediately. As the English renderings are taken up, it will be found that they give little or no clue to the Latin construction. Only constant vigilance, therefore, will insure against error in connection with the use of verbs of this class.

VOCABULARY

exspectō, 1, wait for.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul; pl., the Gauls.

ratus, -a, -um, partic., thinking; construed with indirect discourse.

redūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, bring back, carry back, withdraw (e.g. troops).

ūtor, 3, ūsus sum, use.

NOTE. **Ratus** belongs to a small group of deponent perfect participles used loosely with the force of presents. The rather frequent occurrence of these participles is doubtless one of the reasons why the nominative forms of *present* participles are employed so infrequently in Latin (cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III).

TRANSLATION

61. 1. If Pompey should use his¹ authority to save² the state, all the citizens would say that he is the one man³ who does not fear⁴ Caesar. 2. If any one fears⁵ that the companies will not be brought back safely, let us seek leaders of greater courage. 3. If my sons have been a help to the state, I hope that our soldiers will use my horses also. 4. Because of their⁶ love⁷ of battle, the boldest Gauls were unwilling to wait for the wounded, but⁸ hurried across the mountains to occupy the territory⁹ of other¹⁰ nations. 5. The cavalry¹¹ of this one state will not be able to injure our armies.

62. 1. We must burn that forest, so that nobody may find there a spot suitable for an ambushade.¹² 2. Men of the greatest fortitude are often inferior in influence because they live in the country, and no one is informed¹³ of¹⁴ their courage. 3. They¹⁵ said that they had persuaded those hunters to come who had used up all their food. 4. In the consulship of Cicero and Antonius,¹⁶ while forces were being gathered¹⁷ into the camps, many were anxious¹⁸ that citizens be enrolled¹⁹ at Rome to protect the senate.²⁰

63. *An Inspiring Leader*

"Are you not going to²¹ tell us a story to-day?" said Gaius to the soldier. "We promise that we will not bother you²² to-morrow." "Many years ago," said the soldier, "our army was marching through a long valley, where a few days before all the crops²³ had been burned. Our general, therefore,²⁴ thinking that the enemy would not follow, left his⁶ army, and proceeded²⁵ a few miles to a

small town not far distant.²⁸ But during the night²⁷ a very fierce attack was suddenly made upon our men, who were obliged to retreat²⁸ in haste.²⁹ The general, hearing the sound³⁰ of battle, rode back³¹ at top speed. Seeing him,³² the panic-stricken³³ soldiers took heart again,³⁴ and soon put the enemy to flight."

1. suus, -a, -um.

2. Translate without using ut or quī.

3. *the one man*: sōlus.

4. Note that this is a dependent clause in indirect discourse.

5. Choose mood and tense without regard for the form of the other clause of the sentence.

6. Omit.

7. amor, -ōris, M.

8. *Lit., and.*

9. ager.

10. Do not confuse cēteri and alii (see the Remark on the Vocabulary of Exercise III).

11. *i.e. horsemen.*

12. Insidiae, -ārum, F.

13. *is informed*: present tense.

14. *i.e. about.*

15. Order for translation: *those (is) hunters, who had used up all their (suus, -a, -um) food, they said that they had persuaded to come.*

16. *Lit., Cicero and Antonius (being) consuls.*

17. Pass. of cōgō.

18. volō.

19. cōscribō, 3, -scripsi, -scrip-

tus. Use the construction regularly found with volō.

20. More literally: *to be a protection for the senate.*

21. See Exercise II; and, for the form of the question, cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.

22. *Lit., be troublesome (molestus, -a, -um) to you.*

23. Pl. of frūmentum.

24. itaque (placed first in the sentence, as usual).

25. *i.e. advanced.*

26. *not far distant*: haud longinquus. Place this phrase after the noun.

27. *during the night*: use an adverb.

28. *i.e. were forced to fall back.*

29. *i.e. quickly.*

30. sonus, -i, M. Turn the phrase into the passive.

31. Pass. of revehō, 3, -vēxi, -vectus.

32. Use a relative, turning the phrase into the passive.

33. *i.e. thoroughly frightened.*

34. animum resūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus (sing. object retained with pl. verb).

EXERCISE XXIII

(64-66)

RESULT CLAUSES

MODEL SENTENCES

Iter tam longum est, ut liberi dēfessi esse soleant, The journey is so long that the children are usually tired.

Carrus tam magnus erat, ut equi duo eum dūcere nōn possent, The wagon was so large that two horses could not draw it.

RULE. *Result may be expressed by an ut-clause with its verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive.*

NOTE. So far as form is concerned, the most important difference between result clauses and subjunctive purpose clauses is that negative *purpose* requires the special introductory particle **nē**, whereas negative *result* is marked in the ordinary way by **nōn** (cf. the second of the Model Sentences above).

REMARK. Some Roman writers employ, in result clauses, the *perfect* subjunctive also. This, however, is a special and difficult use, not to be attempted at the present stage of the work. Hence the omission of that tense from the rule above given.

VOCABULARY

animadvertō, 3, -verti, -versus, <i>notice</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.	flēō, 2, flēvi, flētum est, <i>weep, cry.</i>
cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvi (-suētus). Perfect tense with force of present, <i>be accustomed.</i> May be construed with the complementary infinitive.	iuvenis, -is, m., <i>young man, youth.</i>
	tam, adv., <i>so.</i> Used with adjectives and adverbs.
	ūsus, -ūs, m., <i>use.</i> ūsui esse, <i>to be useful, to be used.</i>

NOTE 1. For the rendering of *cōnsuēvi* given above, see the Note on *soleō* in Exercise IV. As the perfect *cōnsuēvi* has the force of a *present*, the pluperfect *cōnsuēveram* necessarily represents any and all *past* tenses.

NOTE 2. *Iuvenis*, like *canis*, is not an I-Stem.

NOTE 3. As *ūtor* ("use") is deponent, special devices are needed to translate the passive "be used" into Latin. The phrase *ūsuī esse* provides one such device.

TRANSLATION

64. 1. Do not fear that the prisoners are using our wagons; for the cattle are so frightened that they cannot be brought from the fields. 2. Did you think that men¹ who wanted² to harm you had sent this messenger to wait for us at London? 3. If by delaying or sending they should try to help³ us, *we* should surely⁴ appear mean-spirited,⁵ if we did not⁶ inform the consuls. 4. Because of the aid of the inhabitants of these mountains, the Romans were so secure⁷ that they ventured to send a part of their⁸ army to the banks of the other river to look for grain.

65. 1. We were accustomed to use all the cattle to carry grain, so that no one would be able to claim⁹ that he had¹⁰ no food. 2. For drawing¹¹ the wagons, the cattle were so very useful¹² that we did not think that we needed to call for¹³ horses. 3. If you think that men of little influence should not be sent, I fear that we shall not find many to send.¹⁴ 4. Thinking¹⁵ that they have come here¹⁶ to care for the wounded, they will go at once to the tents, and¹⁷ will say nothing¹⁷ to us.

66. *A Resourceful Mother*

Once some settlers suddenly noticed that a ship of war¹⁸ was rapidly approaching¹⁹ the shore. Seeing this,²⁰ they

were so terrified that they did not attempt to hinder²¹ the soldiers when they landed²² from the ship, but fled in haste to the woods and mountains. One of the women, however,²³ decided²⁴ to remain at home, and saved her²⁵ son in an original²⁶ way; for, when the enemy arrived at the farmhouse, she was weeping, and led the soldiers to a bier,²⁷ on which the son was lying. Thinking that the young man was dead, the enemy²⁸ withdrew at once to²⁹ the road, and³⁰ did not³¹ attempt to injure any one³² with their³³ weapons.

1. Pl. of *is*.
2. Note that this is a dependent clause in indirect discourse.
3. Use *auxilium*.
4. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
5. *Lit.*, (to be) of *ungrateful* (*ingrātus*, -a, -um) *mind* (sing. of *animus*).
6. *i.e.* if we should not.
7. *sēcūrus*, -a, -um.
8. Omit.
9. *dicō*.
10. Translate in two ways. (Whenever, in indirect discourse, there is a reference back to the third person subject of a governing verb, the reflexive (*suī*) must be used, whatever the case called for; cf. the first Note on p. 235.)
11. *dūcō*. Use a construction introduced by *ad*.
12. *very useful*: employ *ūsus*, modified by *magnus*.
13. Gerundive of *arcēssō*.
14. What kind of clause?
15. Translate in two ways (not present partic.).
16. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.
17. See Exercise X.
18. *nāvis longa*.
19. See the Vocabulary of Exercise II.
20. Cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXII.
21. *prohibeō*, 2, -uī, -itus.
22. Use *ēgredior*, 3, -gressus *sum* (imperf. tense).
23. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.
24. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVIII.
25. *novus*.
26. *feretrum*, -ī, n.
27. Place first in the sentence.
28. *in*.
29. *and . . . not . . . any one*: *i.e.* *and . . . no one* (acc.).
30. *suus*, -a, -um.

EXERCISE XXIV

(67-69)

TOWN NAMES

It has already been shown that town names, and the common nouns **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**, do not conform to the regular rule for Place Where, but use a special case-form (locative) to express this relation. With the exception of **humus**, these same groups of words follow a special rule also for Place to Which and Place from Which.

MODEL SENTENCES

Rōmam ibit, He will go to Rome.

Rūs properāvimus, We hurried to the country.

RULE. *Place to Which is expressed by the accusative case of town names, and of domus and rūs, WITHOUT a preposition.*

MODEL SENTENCES

Cūr tum Rōmā profectus est? Why did he set out from Rome at that time?

Domō iam exibāmus, We were just starting out from home.

RULE. *Place FROM Which is expressed by the ablative case of town names, and of domus and rūs, WITHOUT a preposition.*

NOTE. At this point, the declension of **rūs** should be reviewed carefully (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XV, with Note 2).

VOCABULARY

arripīō, 3, **-ripui**, **-reptus**, **expellō**, 3, **-puli**, **-pulsus**, *drive seize.* *out, drive (from).*

cotidiē, adv., *daily, every day.* **tantum**, adv., *only, merely.*

dēfendō, 3, **-fendi**, **-fēnsus**, **verbum**, -i, n., *word.*
defend, protect.

NOTE 1. The adverb **tantum** usually follows the word or phrase which it modifies.

NOTE 2. As contrasted with *capiō*, *arripiō* implies haste or violence of action (cf. *rapiō*).

TRANSLATION

67. 1. I thought that those who were about to set out so readily from home were men¹ so brave² that they could not be frightened even³ by Hannibal himself.⁴ 2. If twenty thousand Gauls should come to Rome to support⁵ the senate, we should have no place in which to quarter them.⁶ 3. Youths of the greatest courage, driven from the country because of the harshness⁷ of their¹ fathers, are flocking⁸ to London from all quarters.⁹ 4. Use¹⁰ only the smallest plates, so that no one will fear that the food will fail.¹¹

68. 1. The horses were used¹² to carry¹³ the weapons. 2. Do not cry, children; your father will soon return from New York. 3. Since the soldiers who are now at Rome are on the point of setting out for¹⁴ Spain, let us hurry to Rome ourselves to protect the city. 4. Do you notice that the men¹⁵ who boast most¹⁶ are often so deficient¹⁷ in courage that they run away from the field of battle¹⁸ with the greatest readiness¹⁹ and injure no one unless²⁰ it be²¹ by words? 5. Thinking that he²² alone ought to look after²³ the sick, Curio was accustomed to send doctors to the camp daily with the greatest diligence.

69. *A Young Hero*

"We promised," said Marcus to Gaius, "that we would not ask²⁴ the soldier to tell us a story yesterday; but if²⁵ we meet²⁶ him to-day, let's try to persuade him to talk with us." "I think that I see him now," replied Gaius. "Good²⁷ soldier, are you not²⁸ going to tell us a story to-day?" Hearing this,²⁹ the soldier smiled and said, "I once saw a boy about ten years old do³⁰ a deed³¹ of great daring. After our men had fought very bravely for five hours, the

line had fallen back to the camp, leaving³² the wounded on the ground. No one dared³³ to help the poor fellows; ³⁴ but this boy, of³⁵ whom I am speaking,³⁶ seized a pail³⁷ and carried water to the men who were dying, though meanwhile bullets were flying³⁸ on every hand."

1. Omit.
2. See Remark 1 on p. 201.
3. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.
4. Intensive pronoun. In arranging the phrase, this word may be separated from its noun.
5. Use *subsidiū* (with the verb *veniō*).
6. *Lit.*, we should not have where (*ubi*) to quarter (*collocō*) them. *Ubi* is here the relative adverb, and its clause should be written as if a relative pronoun were the introductory word. What does the clause express?
7. *saevitia*, -ae, F.
8. *conveniō*.
9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
- * 10. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.
11. *dēficiō*, 3, -fēcī (-fectus).
12. See Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII
13. *i.e. for* (ad) carrying.
14. ad.
15. Pl. of *is*.
16. *maximē*.
17. inferior.
18. *field of battle*: *proelium*.
19. Use the proper form of *libenter*.
20. *nisi* (conj., used as adv.).
21. *it be*: omit.
22. Cf. the second part of footnote 10 on Exercise XXIII.
23. *i.e. care for*.
24. *Lit.*, urge. Review, if necessary, the infinitives of deponent verbs.
25. *but if*: *sin autem*.
26. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII, and footnote 5 on Exercise XXII.
27. Use the superl. Be careful about the case, and also about the position of the phrase in the sentence.
28. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.
29. Cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXII.
30. *Lit.*, to do (indirect discourse).
31. *facinus*, -oris, N.
32. Use a passive participial construction, and do not put the phrase last in the sentence.
33. Imperfect tense.
34. *homō*; or *ille* simply. Put first in the sentence.
35. *i.e. about*.
36. *dicō*.
37. *vās*, *vāsis*, N.
38. Pass. of *mittō*.

EXERCISE XXV

(70-72)

THE GERUND IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

Verbs capable of taking a *direct* object are called Transitive; all others are Intransitive. In Exercises XI and XV it has been shown how the gerundive of *transitive* verbs is used in phrases governed by *ad* and *causā* to express purpose. Intransitive verbs, on the other hand, are all practically defective in the gerundive, and cannot be employed in these constructions; but the *gerund* of intransitives is freely used in very similar phrases.

MODEL SENTENCES

Colōnōs ex agris ad pugnandum vocāte, Summon the settlers from the fields to fight (*lit.* for fighting).

Pugnandī causā manēbimus, We shall remain to fight, *lit.* with (*i.e.* for) the purpose of fighting.

RULE. *In purpose clauses involving ad or causā, a transitive verb takes the GERUNDIVE form; whereas it is the GERUND of intransitive verbs that is required in all such phrases.*

NOTE. Intransitive verbs are of two types: (1) those which are incapable of taking an object of any kind, and (2) those which are construed with some other case than the accusative. Intransitives of this latter type use even the gerund very sparingly in purpose expressions (*e.g.* **vēnī ad senātūī persuādendum**, "I have come to persuade the senate"); generally they incline to some other device (*e.g.* an *ut*-clause).

REMARK. In such a sentence as "We have come to buy," the verb "buy" chances to be used without an expressed object. When thus used "absolutely," even a transitive verb is necessarily rendered by the gerund rather than the gerundive in purpose expressions (*e.g.* **emendī causā**); for the phrase contains no noun for a gerundive to modify.

VOCABULARY

Atlanticus, -a, -um, <i>Atlantic</i> .	interdum, adv., <i>at times</i> ,
etiam, adv., <i>even</i> .	<i>sometimes, from time to</i>
indicō, 3, -dixi, -dictus, <i>de-</i>	<i>time</i> .
<i>clare</i> . bellum indicare,	nāvigium, -i, N., <i>vessel</i> .
with dat., <i>to declare war</i>	pondus, ponderis, N., <i>weight</i> .
(upon).	sollertia, -ae, F., <i>skill</i> .

NOTE. Unlike *quoque*, the adverb *etiam* usually *precedes* the word or phrase emphasized.

TRANSLATION

70. 1. If *they*¹ have come to Rome to play² and not to fight,² let *us*³ by deed⁴ and word⁵ demonstrate to all men⁶ that there are still⁷ Romans who are willing⁸ to use their⁹ swords to defend the state. 2. Though these weapons are not useful to the soldiers of the whole regiment, still we must find wagons in which¹⁰ to carry them. 3. The Indians had come daily from their homes¹¹ to assist, so that the settlers did not fear¹² that they¹ would ever desert¹³ to the armies of the enemy. 4. Seizing stones of great weight, the bravest settlers, with Gaius for leader, at once hurried to the farthest¹⁴ part of the bridges.¹⁵

71. 1. If because of fear the hunters should not come to help¹⁶ us, many would think that this¹⁷ had injured our cause.¹⁸ 2. "We shall come from New York to observe¹⁹ only, and not to work," said the soldiers; "for we think that in your army there are many who can use these tools²⁰ with greater skill." 3. While²¹ the young men were in New York and nobody was watching,²² the boy, by running, twice escaped to the river. 4. Since you do not seem to be inferior in skill, we shall urge the general to allow you to remain at Rome.

72. *Americans on the Sea*

Many years ago²⁶ the British used²⁴ to board American vessels that were crossing the Atlantic ocean, and carried back²⁵ with them²⁸ to their own²⁷ ships seamen whom they thought to be British. We fear that sometimes men were seized who were really²⁹ American citizens; but in those days³⁰ the English were superior upon the water,³¹ and the Americans were obliged to submit.³² But, a few years later, war was declared upon the British; and the Americans, who previously³³ had had a very small fleet, now built³⁴ more vessels, and often overcame the enemy even upon the sea.

1. *ille*.
2. Use the *causā* construction, expressing *causā* but once (at the end), and omitting "and."
3. Supply *autem* with the pronoun.
4. *rēs*.
5. Use the pl.
6. *demonstrate to all men: lit., teach all* (cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I).
7. *adhūc*.
8. What mood?
9. *suus, -a, -um*.
10. *Lit., by which*. Cf. the second group of Model Sentences in Exercise I.
11. *Lit., from home* (sing.).
12. What tenses are used in result clauses?
13. *trānseō*.
14. *extrēmus, -a, -um*.
15. Be careful of the spelling.
16. Use *auxilium* (with *venīō*).
17. Neut. of *hic*.
18. Pl. of *rēs*.
19. *Lit., see*. Use *ad* or *causā*, omitting the following "and." For *causā*, cf. footnote 2 above.
20. *ferramentum, -i, N*.
21. Use *dum*, as occasion offers.
22. *speculor*.
23. Be careful of the word order.
24. Translate in two ways.
25. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXII. Use the imperfect tense here and in the following clause.
26. *sēcum*.
27. *their own: suus, -a, -um*; cf. footnote 32 on Exercise VIII.
28. *rē vērā, i.e. "in actual fact" (vērus, -a, -um, "actual")*.
29. Pl. of *tempus*.
30. *i.e. upon the sea*. Be careful of the spelling.
31. *Lit., to put up with it* (*id patior*).
32. *anteā*.
33. *Lit., made*.

EXERCISE XXVI

(73-75)

THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

When a transitive verb is turned into the passive, its direct object becomes the subject of the sentence (*e.g.* *nāvem fēcērunt*, "They built a ship"; but *nāvis facta est*, "A ship was built"). Intransitive verbs, however, being incapable of taking a direct object, can form only an IMPERSONAL passive.

MODEL SENTENCES

<i>Ācritēr pugnātur</i>	<div> <div>The fight waxes hot.</div> <div>They (we, you, etc.) fight fiercely.</div> <div><i>Lit., It is fought fiercely.</i></div> </div>
<i>Ad montēs perventum est</i>	<div> <div>The mountains were reached.</div> <div>He (they, we, etc.) arrived at the mountains.</div> <div><i>Lit., It was come to the mountains.</i></div> </div>
<i>Statim nobīs pugnandum est</i>	<div> <div>We must fight at once.</div> <div><i>Lit., It must be fought by us at once.</i></div> </div>

NOTE. Attention has already been called to the fact that the gerundive of intransitive verbs is practically defective. The reason for this state of affairs now appears: for, being a part of the passive system, the gerundive of an intransitive verb is limited to the impersonal use, and hence can have but a single form (namely, the neuter singular in *-um*, nominative and accusative), used only as in the third of the Model Sentences.

REMARK. The above statements apply equally to *all* intransitives. But for the present the discussion is limited to verbs which, in the active, are incapable of governing any case whatsoever (cf. the

first part of the Note in Exercise XXV). Intransitives capable of governing cases other than the accusative are reserved for later consideration.

VOCABULARY

Cloelia, -ae, F., *Cloelia*. *custōs*, -ōdis, M., *guard*.

complūrēs, -ēs, -a, *several*. *obses*, -idis, C., *hostage*.

See the Summary of *vēnor*, I, *hunt*.

Forms, p. 350, Note.

TRANSLATION

73. 1. At London¹ you must work with great diligence, so that no one will inform your father that he² must hurry from the country to watch³ you. 2. If we should use our horses from time to time, our skill would become greater. 3. If you have been sent here⁴ to loiter,⁵ go⁶ at once into the garden; I think that you will find there some⁷ children who like⁸ to play the greater part of the day. 4. I feared that they had not found lighter⁹ wagons to be used¹⁰ for carrying the wives and daughters of the consuls.

74. 1. When they had come¹¹ to the shore to summon the hunter, the water was so high because of the tide¹² that the sailors could not save him. 2. Since I have not even at home a place to sit,¹³ I have to¹⁴ go daily many miles into the woods to hunt. 3. They said that they had just¹⁵ come from London, and that they⁷ had never¹⁶ seen a finer¹⁷ town. 4. While one of the sailors was spying upon the vessel, the others sat down¹⁸ under the trees to write.

75. *A Distinguished Roman Maid*

Long¹⁹ years ago, when war had been declared by king Porsinna upon the Romans, the enemy advanced suddenly

upon ²⁰ Rome, and invested ²¹ the city with siege works.²² To induce ²³ the king to withdraw ²⁴ his⁷ army, the Romans were obliged to give hostages, among ²⁵ them several girls.²⁶ One of these,²⁷ Cloelia by name, outwitted ²⁸ the guards a few days later, and led ²⁹ the other maidens to the river ; and, although the weapons of the enemy were now flying ³⁰ on every hand, the girls swam to the other bank ³¹ in safety,³² and quickly hurried home to their ³³ relatives.³⁴

1. Be careful of the spelling.
2. Reflexive pronoun (*sui*).
3. What part of speech is the gerundive?
4. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.
5. *moror*.
6. *abeō*, -ire, -li, -itum est.
7. Omit.
8. *volō*. What mood?
9. *lighter*: *lit.*, of less weight.
10. See Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII. Introduce the following clause by *ad*.
11. Use the passive, and employ *ad* or *causā* for the following purpose clause.
12. *aestus*, -ūs, *m*.
13. *have . . . a place to sit*: *lit.*, *have where to sit* (cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XXIV).
14. Gerundive. Be careful of the spelling.
15. *modo*.
16. *never*: note that "and" precedes.
17. *pulcher*.
18. *aedeō*.
19. *Lit.*, *many*.
20. *upon Rome*: *lit.*, *to Rome*.
21. *circumdō*, -dare, -dedi, -datus.
22. *i.e.* *fortifications*.
23. *i.e.* *persuade*; cf. the latter part of the Note in Exercise XXV.
24. What is the difference between *redūcō*, "withdraw," and *sē recipere*, "withdraw"?
25. *among*: *in*, with *abl*.
26. *several girls*: in the same case as the word for "hostages."
27. *Lit.*, *of whom one*. Keep this order of words in the Latin rendering.
28. *fallō*, 3, *fefelli*, *falsus*.
29. *dēdūcō*, 3, -dūxi, -ductus.
30. Passive of *mittō*.
31. *Lit.*, *by swimming reached the other bank*. Be careful to choose the right word for "the other."
32. *i.e.* *safely*.
33. *suus*, -a, -um.
34. *propinqui*, -ōrum, *m*.

EXERCISE XXVII

(76-78)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXI TO XXVI

VOCABULARY

aquor, I, <i>get water.</i>	tantus, -a, -um, <i>such great.</i>
brevi, adv., <i>soon, shortly.</i>	(<i>large</i>), <i>so great (large),</i>
hiemō, I, -āvi, -ātum est,	<i>such.</i>
<i>winter (i.e. pass the</i>	
<i>winter).</i>	

TRANSLATION

76. 1. We go to the country¹ in summer to hunt. 2. When they had sailed² to the island, the settlers promptly³ drove out the forces of the enemy. 3. We must smile, although I have been informed that these most wicked⁴ ambassadors⁵ will endeavor in every way⁶ to injure our countrymen.⁷ 4. The soldiers were using such large weapons that they soon became⁸ tired with (the) fighting. 5. Do you think that the men⁹ who are on the point of coming to help¹⁰ the other general will prove to be¹¹ more courageous?¹²

77. 1. If Curio should linger among¹³ the mountains to wait for¹⁴ hostages from¹⁵ the cities, should you not¹⁶ fear that the enemy would make a sudden¹⁷ attack upon our armies? 2. When the fight had thus raged¹⁸ more fiercely for two hours, soldiers were sent into the woods to get water.¹⁹ 3. If they have gone home to winter because of the cold,²⁰ I hope that the plan²¹ will turn out well for them; but *I* shall stay in London. 4. Since the Indians have twice come across the hills with intent to²² injure, you certainly²³ must not withdraw²⁴ the guards to New York.

78. *A Modern Amazon*

A ²⁸ woman, whose husband ²⁹ had gone ³⁰ to war, one day noticed several soldiers of ³¹ the enemy's army approaching ³² her ³³ farmhouse. Finding ³⁴ that she had been left at home alone, the men stole her ³⁵ chickens, and tormented her ³⁶ in every way.⁶ But while they were preparing dinner, the woman quietly ³⁷ seized their guns,³⁸ and put them ³⁹ in ⁴⁰ a safe ⁴¹ place; then, suddenly coming back into the farmhouse, she informed the men that they ⁴² were prisoners. One ⁴³ of the soldiers, who attempted to arrest ⁴⁴ her, she promptly shot dead,⁴⁵ and compelled the others to march to a camp not far distant,⁴⁶ where they were turned over ⁴⁷ to the commander.

1. See Exercise XXIV.
2. Use the passive.
3. *i.e.* at once.
4. *i.e.* bad. Place this second modifier after the noun.
5. *légātus*.
6. Use the pl
7. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIX.
8. *Lit.*, *were*.
9. Pl. of *is*.
10. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise XXV. What determines the mood here?
11. *will prove to be: i.e. will be.*
12. *more courageous: lit., of greater courage.*
13. *in*.
14. Use *causā*.
15. *Lit.*, *of*.
16. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.
17. *repentinus*, -a, -um.
18. *the fight had . . . raged: passive of pugnō, with acriter.*
19. Translate in three ways.
20. *frigus*, -oris, n. Use the pl., and place early in the sentence.
21. *Lit.*, *thing*.
22. Use *causā*.
23. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
24. Cf. footnote 24 on Exercise XXVI.
25. *quidam*.
26. *vir*.
27. *Lit.*, *had set out*.
28. *ex*.
29. *Lit.*, *to be approaching* (indirect discourse).
30. Omit.
31. *cōgnōscō*; and cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. For "the

men" of the following clause use simply the relative *quī*, placing it, as usual, first in the sentence (cf., too, footnote 12 on Exercise III).

32. *tormented her: lit, were troublesome* (*molestus, -a, -um*) *to her*. Put the pronoun before the adj.

33. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIV.

34. *tēlum*.

35. *in*, with abl.

36. Cf. Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise II.

37. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*)

38. What case?

39. *capiō*.

40. *shoot dead: interficiō*, with the proper form of *tēlum*.

41. Cf. footnote 26 on Exercise XXII. Punctuate the clause with a semicolon (cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXI).

42. Pass. of *trādō*, 3, *-didī, -ditus* (with dat.).

EXERCISE XXVIII

(79-81)

THE SUPINE

The supine consists of the accusative and ablative singular of a verbal noun of the same derivation as the perfect passive participle; *e.g.*:

	ACCUSATIVE	ABLATIVE
vocō:	vocātum	vocātū
habeo:	habitum	habitū
mittō:	missum	missū
rapiō:	raptum	raptū
audiō:	audītum	auditū

Deponents, as well as other verbs, form a supine; and in the case of all verbs, whether regular or irregular, there is found the same fixed relation between the forms of the supine and those of the perfect passive participle. Hence, to write the supine of a verb, it is necessary only to know the principal parts.

MODEL SENTENCE

Lēgātī vērērunt pacem petītum, The envoys have come to sue for peace.

RULE. *In dependence upon a verb of motion, the supine in -um may be used to express Purpose.*

NOTE. In regard to the supine in -um in this use, observe carefully (1) that it depends upon a verb of *motion*, (2) that it requires no preposition, and (3) that it may itself govern an accusative. In order to become at once familiar with this new method of expressing purpose, watch for the opportunities to use it afforded by verbs of motion.

MODEL SENTENCE

Hoc optimum factū arbitror, I think this best to do (*lit.* best as regards doing).

RULE. *The supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives as an Ablative of Specification.*

REMARK. The supine in -um is common enough ; but the use of the supine in -ū is very limited.

In connection with this Exercise, by way of review, write out all the participles, verbal nouns, and infinitives of some one deponent verb.

VOCABULARY

abeō, -ire, -il, -itum est, de-
part, go away.

adhūc, adv., up to this time,
still, yet.

cōpia, -ae, f., supply, abun-
dance.

Mediterrāneus, -a, -um, Medi-
terranean.

pirāta, -ae, m., pirate.

potior, 4, -itus sum, get pos-
session of. See the Rule
in Exercise XXII.

TRANSLATION

79. 1. If the farmers¹ should come here to buy grain, they would realize that we have the largest supply of everything.² 2. Wonderful³ to say,⁴ we shortly got possession of the town, though the townspeople had been informed that we had decided to spare no one. 3. Since some of the⁵ hunters had gone into the valley to get water, we persuaded the leaders not to close⁶ the gates. 4. When the fight had lasted⁷ for a very long time, so many settlers had been killed that we were obliged to fall back.⁸

80. 1. We hear that in the country there are people⁹ who have never seen a town. I hope that they will some day¹⁰ come to New York. 2. Though he is surpassed in skill by his¹¹ brother, will you not allow him to go with us through the hills to hunt? 3. The son who helped¹² us was called Marcus; did you learn the name of the other? 4. We were marching through the valleys to¹³ get possession of the fort, and up to this time had seen no one;¹⁴ but now we had to rush¹⁵ through a stream¹⁶ which the enemy had filled with skiffs.

81. *Turning the Tables*

When Caesar¹ was still a young man, he was once sailing¹⁷ on the Mediterranean Sea in a ship¹⁷ which was captured by pirates. At once he¹⁸ sent messengers to Rome to bring money with which to ransom¹⁹ him. Meanwhile, being obliged²⁰ to remain²¹ many days among the pirates, he used to declare²² to them,²³ laughing, that they would soon pay the penalty.²⁴ They,²⁵ of course,²⁶ thought²⁷ that the man²⁸ was joking,²⁹ and, when the money was paid,³⁰ allowed him to depart unharmed.³¹ He,¹⁸ however, at once

summoned a fleet,³² captured the pirates very easily, and ordered³³ them all killed.³³

1. Be careful of the word order.

2. *i.e. all things.*

3. *mirābilis, -is, -e.* Use the neut. sing. nominative.

4. Cf. the second Model Sentence of this Exercise.

5. *some of the: quīdam* (pl.).

6. *claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.*

7. *the fight had lasted: passive of pugnō.*

8. Cf. Note 4 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

9. Pl. of *homō* (masc.).

10. *some day: aliquandō* (adv.).

11. Omit.

12. Use *auxilium*.

13. *ut.*

14. Note that "and" precedes.

15. *currō.*

16. *flūmen.*

17. *he was . . . sailing . . . in a ship: lit., he was being carried (vehō) by a ship.*

18. *ille.*

19. *redimō, 3, -ēmi, -emptus.*

Turn the phrase into the passive. What kind of relative clause is this?

20. Use a *cum*-clause, and place the word for "meanwhile" within this phrase.

21. *moror.*

22. *dicō.*

23. *to them: omit.*

24. *poenās dō.*

25. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII.

26. *of course: scilicet.*

27. Imperfect tense.

28. *homō.*

29. *lūdō.*

30. *solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus.* Make this a participial phrase.

31. *i.e. safe.*

32. Use a (passive) participial phrase.

33. *ordered . . . killed: i.e. ordered . . . to be killed.*

EXERCISE XXIX

(82-84)

SUMMARY OF PURPOSE CONSTRUCTIONS — USE OF *Quō*

MODEL SENTENCES

- (ut and nē) (1) *Iuvenēs mihi trādidērunt, nē mātērēs flērent,* They handed over the young men to me, so that their mothers would not weep.

- (Relative) (2) **Militēs mittāmus, qui liberōs redūcant**, Let us send soldiers to bring back the children.
- (Gerundive) { (3) **Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt**, Ambassadors have come to sue for peace.
(4) **Pācis petendae causā rēx Rōmae est**, The king is at Rome for the purpose of suing for peace.
- (Gerund) { (5) **Colōnī in silvā ad vēnandum iērunt**, The settlers have gone into the forest to hunt.
(6) **Germānī vēnandī causā in silvis habitant**, With a view to hunting, the Germans dwell in the forests.
- (Supine) { (7) **Nautae in silvā aquātum iērunt**, Sailors have gone into the forest to get water.
-
- (quō) { (8) **Ad collem properāte, quō facilius auxilium nostris ferātur**, Hasten to the hill, so that assistance may be given more easily to our men.

RULE. *Purpose clauses containing the comparative of an adjective or adverb are introduced by quō rather than by ut.*

NOTE. In purpose clauses of this last type, the comparative regularly stands next to quō, as in the Model Sentence.

In regard to the use of the above forms for the expression of purpose, the following points must be kept clearly in mind:

1. Negative purpose requires **nē**.
2. **Quō** replaces **ut** when there is a comparative in the purpose clause.
3. A relative pronoun is apt to be chosen when the governing clause contains a more or less indefinite expression to serve as antecedent.

4. The supine in **-um** can be construed with verbs of motion only. Furthermore, it is with verbs of this class that **ad** with the gerund or gerundive is mostly found.

REMARK. Remember that, in purpose clauses involving **ad** or **causā**, transitive verbs take the *gerundive* form, whereas intransitives are restricted to the *gerund* in all such phrases (cf. Exercise XXV).

VOCABULARY

cōspectus , -ūs, M., <i>sight</i> .	iam , adv., <i>already</i> .
contendō , 3, -tendī (-tentus), <i>proceed, start</i> .	quō , conj., <i>so that, in order that, in order to, so as to</i> .

TRANSLATION

82. 1. Send men of greater courage from New York to reënforce¹ our army. 2. Did you think that the consuls' children had gone away to our gardens to play?² 3. The farmers and the hunters must labor with the greatest diligence, so that we may have a larger supply of food; then we shall very quickly get possession of more towns of the enemy. 4. Noticing this,³ we realized that the pirates would obstruct⁴ the bridges,⁵ so that no one should use⁶ the wagons. 5. We were in the country to see and to hear.

83. 1. The river was so deep⁷ that the cattle could not cross; and so they were led into a smaller valley, that they might be cared for more easily. 2. I fear that we are not likely to go⁸ to the country; but we do usually⁹ go away from Rome at this season of the year. 3. If you thought that the men¹⁰ who were in London were able to help¹¹ me only,¹² why did you not summon others¹³ to bring back the hostages? 4. Since you were shouting through¹⁴ fear, we did not care¹⁵ to come ourselves, and did not send any one¹⁶ else.¹⁷

84. *An Unsuccessful Undertaking*

Once when our army was about to break camp, several settlers decided to attempt to bring in¹⁸ from the fields a supply of grain which had been left near a¹⁹ farmhouse. Although the wagons were heavy,²⁰ the men arrived at the place without accident;²¹ and, after a few hours, having gotten possession of²² the grain, they started in good spirits²³ to return. But when our camp was already in sight, suddenly five soldiers sprang out²⁴ from the woods, and shot²⁵ their horses; then,²⁶ quickly setting fire to²⁷ the grain, they led away²⁸ the unfortunate²⁹ prisoners to a distant town.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Use <i>subsidium</i> . | 15. <i>not care</i> : <i>nōlō</i> . |
| 2. Translate in four ways. | 16. <i>and . . . not . . . any one</i> :
combine into a phrase. |
| 3. Use a relative, turning the
phrase into the passive. | 17. <i>alius</i> . |
| 4. <i>claudō</i> , 3, <i>clausi</i> , <i>clausus</i> . | 18. <i>reportō</i> , 1. |
| 5. Cf. again Remark 1 on p.
201. | 19. <i>quidam</i> . |
| 6. See the first sentence of
footnote 1 on Exercise V. | 20. <i>Lit.</i> , of great weight. |
| 7. <i>altus</i> . | 21. <i>without accident</i> : <i>i.e. safely</i> . |
| 8. <i>Lit.</i> , are not about to go. | 22. Note that this calls for a
deponent verb. |
| 9. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XXIII, with Note 1. Place
first in the clause (because of the
emphatic "do" of the English
expression). | 23. <i>in good spirits</i> : <i>laetus</i> . |
| 10. Pl. of <i>is</i> . | 24. <i>i.e. burst forth</i> . |
| 11. Use <i>auxilium</i> . | 25. <i>Lit.</i> , killed with weapons. |
| 12. <i>sōlus</i> . | 26. <i>then</i> : <i>lit., this</i> (use <i>rel.</i>)
<i>having been done</i> . |
| 13. <i>cēteri</i> or <i>alii</i> ? | 27. <i>set fire to</i> : <i>ignem admoveō</i>
(2, - <i>nōvī</i> , - <i>mōtus</i>), with <i>dat.</i> Turn
the phrase into the passive. |
| 14. <i>i.e. because of</i> . | 28. <i>dēdūcō</i> , 3, - <i>dūxī</i> , - <i>ductus</i> . |
| | 29. <i>Lit.</i> , wretched. |

EXERCISE XXX

(85-87)

ABLATIVE OF WAY BY WHICH

MODEL SENTENCES

Fenestrā puer ēvāsīt, The boy escaped by way of a window.

Viā lātā Rōmam contendērunt, Along a broad road they proceeded to Rome.

RULE. *Way by Which is expressed by the ablative case, without a preposition.*

REMARK. Way by Which may perhaps be regarded as a variety of Means.

VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.

lātus, -a, -um, *broad*.

Arnoldius, -di, M., *Arnold*.

sēmita, -ae, F., *footpath*,

fenestra, -ae, F., *window*.

path.

NOTE. On the declension of **Arnoldius**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

85. 1. Let us find a broader road, so that the soldiers may march more easily to New York. Do you not think this best to do?¹ 2. After hurrying² a few miles along a very narrow footpath, the settlers suddenly came in³ sight of the town where the enemy's armies had encamped⁴ for the winter.⁵ 3. I hear that the men⁶ who have just come⁷ from Rome say that the city people⁸ have⁹ smaller windows. 4. Be not lacking¹⁰ in courage,¹¹ though at times¹² the enemy seem to be so numerous¹³ that they could¹⁴ not be beaten by ten thousand¹⁵ men.¹⁶

86. 1. If any one should declare war upon our state, the commanders¹⁷ of the fleets would shortly proceed to Rome. 2. Escape by way of that gate, men; ¹⁸ for I fear that the enemy have gotten possession of nearly ¹⁹ the whole camp. 3. We were in the hills to get ²⁰ berries so that the captain might have better ²¹ food. 4. Let us spare even ²² the children; for they will be useful to the generals' wives. 5. Since this path is narrow, the men of the other company must retreat ²³ by another road.

87. *A Desperate Venture*

Once an officer named Arnold, a man of the greatest daring, led a small army over ²⁴ the mountains into Canada, hoping ²⁵ to capture there a large town which was held ²⁶ by the British. Quietly he crossed the river at night; but when the soldiers had climbed the hill along rough ²⁷ foot-paths, the enemy were found to be so superior in number that every one ²⁸ believed that the town could not be taken by storm; ²⁹ the Americans, however, decided to make the attempt. ³⁰ In the battle Arnold was himself ³¹ wounded, and the army driven back. ³² But two years later, when a fierce fight was in progress ³³ at Saratoga, this same ³⁴ commander again met ³⁵ the enemy on the battlefield, ³⁶ and there won ³⁷ a great victory. ³⁸

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Supine. | 9. <i>Lit., use.</i> |
| 2. Use the passive (In a cumulative clause). | 10. <i>be lacking</i> : <i>dēficiō</i> , 3, - <i>fēci</i> (- <i>fectus</i>). |
| 3. <i>i.e. into</i> . | 11. <i>animus</i> . |
| 4. <i>castra pōnō</i> , 3, <i>posui</i> , <i>positus</i> . | 12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXV. |
| 5. Use <i>hiēmō</i> (gerund). | 13. <i>i.e. so many</i> . |
| 6. Pl. of <i>is</i> . | 14. Observe the Law of Sequence carefully. |
| 7. What mood? | |
| 8. <i>oppidāni</i> . | |

15. What part of speech is the Latin word?
16. *mīles*.
17. *praefectus*, -ī, m.
18. *ferē*.
19. Remember that the word for "camp" is plural.
20. Use *causā*. Gerund or gerundive?
21. See the Note on p. 291.
22. *cēdō*, 3, *cessi*, *cessum est*.
23. *trāns*.
24. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. What construction with the verb of "hoping"?
25. Indicative, by exception to the rule.
26. *asper*, -era, -erum.
27. Pl. of *omnis*.
28. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
29. *make the attempt*: *cōnor*. Place first in the sentence, not forgetting what is said in footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.
30. Intensive pronoun.
31. Use a participial phrase, omitting the following "and."
32. *pellō*, 3, *pepuli*, *pulsus*.
33. *a fierce fight was in progress*: *pugnō* (pass.), with *ācritēr*.
34. *this same*: *īdem*.
35. *congregior*, 3, -*gressus sum*, with *cum* and *abl*. Use the perfect participle simply, omitting *est* and the conjunction (*lit.*, "having met . . . , won," etc.).
36. *on the battlefield*: *lit.*, *in battle line* (Vocabulary of Exercise XII).
37. *potior*.
38. *victōria*, -ae, f.

EXERCISE XXXI

(88-90)

PARTITIVE GENITIVE—RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

MODEL SENTENCES

Partem militum arcēssivī, He summoned a part of the soldiers.

Alterō in exercitū plūs erat virtūtis, In the other army there was more courage (*lit.* more of courage).

RULE. *A word designating A PART may be modified by a genitive designating THE WHOLE (Partitive Genitive).*

REMARK. It is very easy to apply this rule to such a phrase as *paris militum*, because the English expression so closely parallels the Latin. But examples like *satis audaciae*, *plūs timōris*, etc., demand special study; for the idiomatic English renderings, "enough boldness," "more fear," etc., do not at all illuminate the *noun and dependent genitive* of the Latin construction.

MODEL SENTENCES

Sunt qui putent sē nōn satis pecūniae habere, There are people who think that they have not enough money.

Si erant quōs Cūriō timēret, If there were any whom Curio feared.

Nēmō erit quem audiātis, There will be no one whom you will heed.

RULE. *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses dependent upon such general expressions of Existence and Non-existence as sunt and nēmō est (Subjunctive of Characteristic).*

NOTE. Observe that, when used as a general expression of existence, *sunt* requires no expressed subject; whereas, in the corresponding English phrases, the indefinite subject cannot thus be suppressed: *e.g.* *sunt qui* signifies "there are *men* who," "there are *some* who," "there are *those* who," etc.

REMARK. It is because the relative clause, in expressions of this type, is felt to "characterize" the subject of *sunt*, *est*, etc., that the name Relative Clause of Characteristic has been devised.

VOCABULARY

mora, -ae, F., *delay*.

parum, adv., used as indecl.

noun, *too little*.

plūs, **plūris**, N., *more*.

satis, adv., used as indecl.

noun, *sufficient, enough,*

plenty.

similis, -is, -e, *like, similar*;

may be construed with

either the dative or the

genitive.

streptus, -ūs, M., *noise, con-*

fusion.

NOTE 1. An indeclinable noun (or adverb so employed) can be used only as a nominative or accusative singular. The gender is always neuter.

NOTE 2. For the declension of *plūs*, see the Summary of Forms, p. 350. Note how (as a *noun*) it corresponds to the already familiar plural adjective, *plūrēs*, -ēs, -a.

NOTE 3. *Similis*, with five other adjectives (namely, *dissimilis*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *gracilis*, and *humilis*) makes its superlative in -*limus* (*i.e.* *simillimus*). When comparing something to a *person*, this adjective is preferably construed with the genitive.

TRANSLATION

88. 1. There was no one who thought that you would have too little grain. 2. If they should come by way of the other gate, you would need to hurry more swiftly to protect¹ the captain's tent. 3. If you hear² any noise, shout at once; there will be men⁴ who will dare, with Curio for leader, to come along this narrow road. 4. Caesar made a braver man captain, so that the regiment would have more boldness.

89. 1. Though you have come to hunt merely,⁵ you are very like one of my brothers, and I shall not reprove⁶ you. 2. Did he fear that I could not find sufficient words to use⁷ in behalf of⁸ the kings of these nations? 3. If there are any whom⁹ the enemy have so¹⁰ terrified that they cannot¹¹ fight, send them all to Rome without delay. 4. Try¹² to get possession of that fort at once, captain; for larger forces are already¹³ marching from Rome. 5. For the greater part of the day let us sit in the shade of the trees to watch.

90. *A Chip of the Old Block*

"Once," said the soldier to the generals' children, "there⁴ came into our camp a boy about eleven years old, who

told¹⁴ the captain that his⁴ father had been captured by the enemy, and that he too wanted to become a soldier. Hearing this,¹⁵ the captain laughed, but the boy refused to leave.¹⁶ So,¹⁷ securing¹⁸ weapons, the lad¹⁹ marched with the soldiers; and when an attack was made²⁰ upon a certain fort, he hid under a tree, and began to fire at²¹ the enemy. In this²² way he wounded so many men⁴ that several soldiers noticed it,²³ and one of them tried²⁴ to kill him with an ax. But the boy fought the whole day, and returned to camp in safety, carrying the arms²⁵ which he had taken from²⁶ the enemy."

1. Use *praesidium* (in an ut-clause).

2. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

3. *any noise: lit., anything of noise.* See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.

4. Omit.

5. *to hunt merely: cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIV.* Do not forget to use the supine, when occasion offers.

6. *castigō, 1.*

7. Relative clause.

8. *in behalf of: prō, prep., with the abl.*

9. Cf. the second group of Model Sentences in this Exercise.

10. *adeō (adv.).*

11. See the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI

12. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

13. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIX.

14. *dicō (with dat.).*

15. Use a relative, turning the phrase into the passive.

16. *i.e. go away.*

17. *i.e. and so.*

18. *Lit., having gotten possession of.* Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

19. Use *ille*.

20. Use a participial phrase.

21. *tēla mittō in.*

22. *Lit., which (rel.).*

23. *it: lit., the thing.*

24. This clause, too, is a part of the construction introduced by "that."

25. *carrying the arms: lit., with the arms.*

26. *ab.*

EXERCISE XXXII

(91-93)

NUMERALS

In connection with this Exercise, learn the cardinal and ordinal numerals from 21 to 100 inclusive (see Summary of Forms, p. 353), giving special attention to those which are formed by subtraction, *e.g.* *duodētrīgintā*, "twenty-eight" (*lit.* "two from thirty").

VOCABULARY

<i>accēdō</i> , 3, - <i>cessi</i> , - <i>cessum est</i> ,	used as indecl. noun,
<i>approach, come up</i> ; con-	<i>less.</i>
strued with <i>ad</i> and the	<i>nihil</i> , indecl. noun, N., <i>noth-</i>
acc. <i>propius accēdere</i> , <i>to</i>	<i>ing.</i>
<i>come nearer.</i>	<i>prope</i> , adv., <i>near.</i>
<i>minus</i> , adv. (comparative),	<i>venēnum</i> , -i, N., <i>poison.</i>

NOTE. On the syntax of *minus* and *nihil*, see Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXI.

TRANSLATION

91. 1. I had wanted to bring¹ more² grass; but until now³ they have sent only twenty horses. 2. When they had wintered⁴ in New York for four years, the twenty-third and forty-sixth regiments⁵ were suddenly summoned to London. 3. Though there will be some who will want⁶ to go⁷ by way of the third gate, we must guard that also, so that the regiments of the whole army will be safer.⁸ 4. Let's go into the garden to work. Do you use baskets to cover⁹ the flowers? 5. We then shall have seen¹⁰ the very¹¹ soldiers who reënforced¹² your line.

92. 1. If there are men¹³ whom you are willing to send, summon at once the inhabitants of two cities; for I fear that the sailors will attempt to destroy¹⁴ the bridges with fire. 2. If we should find sixty like¹⁵ Curio, there would be less¹⁶ fear in our army. 3. We urged the general not to buy more grain, so that we might travel with greater speed. 4. Since they have tried to injure the hunters' cattle thus, we shall set out from the camp by another path to get water.

93. *Catching a Tartar*

Many years ago,¹⁷ some pirates, who had captured a ship on the Mediterranean Sea, proceeded¹⁸ without delay into the cabin¹⁹ to look for food. There,²⁰ however, they met the captain's²¹ wife, a woman of the greatest determination,²² who said that she had²³ no²⁴ food to give²⁵ them, but that there was plenty of poison in the chest²⁶ which²⁷ she would be glad to²⁸ present.

The enraged pirates next²⁹ tried to get possession of a very beautiful flag;³⁰ but the woman placed³¹ it³² in a box³³ and sat upon it,³⁴ saying³⁴ that she would kill the man³⁵ who came nearer.³⁶ Realizing that they could accomplish³⁷ nothing, the pirates³⁸ shortly withdrew from the cabin, and did not again³⁹ trouble⁴⁰ the captain's⁴¹ wife.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. vehō. | 7. abeō. |
| 2. What part of speech is the Latin word for "more" (sing.)? | 8. tūtus. Be careful about the word order. |
| 3. <i>until now: i.e. up to this time.</i> | 9. tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus. Use a phrase introduced by ad. |
| 4. Use the passive. | 10. Future perfect tense. |
| 5. Pl., though both the modifying expressions are singular. | 11. <i>the very: is ipse.</i> |
| 6. Review, if necessary, the grammar lesson of Exercise XXXI. | 12. Use subsidium, with veniō |
| | 13. Omit. |
| | 14. cōsumō. |

15. Agreeing with the word for "men," which is understood with "sixty."
16. See the Vocabulary of this Exercise.
17. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
18. *contendō*.
19. *camera*, -ae, F.
20. *Lit.*, *where* (cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXI).
21. *praefectus*, -i, M.
22. *fortitūdō*.
23. Translate in two ways, keeping in mind footnote 10 on Exercise XXIII.
24. Use *nihil*.
25. *trādō*, 3, -*didi*, -*ditus* (with dat.). Make this a relative clause.
26. *cista*, -ae, F.
27. *Lit.*, and *it* (*i.e.* the poison).
28. Use *libenter*.
29. *tum*.
30. *vēxillum*, -i, N.
31. *pōnō*, 3, *posui*, *positus* (with in and abl.).
32. Use a relative.
33. *i.e.* the box. Use the ablative case.
34. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.
35. *the man*: *is*.
36. Pluperfect subjunctive (*lit.*, *who should have come nearer*). What determines the mood here?
37. *Lit.*, *that they were* *accomplishing* (*efficiō*, 3, -*fēci*, -*fectus*).
38. Be careful about the word order.
39. Use *postea*.
40. Use *molestus*, -a, -um, with dat. (*i.e.* *were not troublesome to*).

EXERCISE XXXIII

(94-96)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXVIII TO XXXII

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>comes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , C., <i>companion</i> . | <i>Plinius</i> , - <i>nī</i> , M., <i>Pliny</i> . |
| <i>imperō</i> , 1, - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātum est</i> , <i>give orders</i> ; governs either the dative or a purpose clause introduced by <i>ut</i> or <i>nē</i> , or both. | <i>portus</i> , - <i>ūs</i> , M., <i>bay</i> . |
| | <i>solvō</i> , 3, <i>solvi</i> , <i>solūtus</i> , <i>loose</i> . |
| | <i>nāvem</i> (- <i>ēs</i>) <i>solvere</i> , <i>to set sail</i> . |
| | <i>Vesuvius</i> , - <i>vī</i> , M., <i>Vesuvius</i> . |

NOTE 1. Observe that the construction with *imperō* is quite like that with *persuādeō*. On the other hand, its construction must be contrasted very sharply with that of *iubeō*, particularly as *imperō* and *iubeō* are so similar in meaning. If, in translating into Latin, *imperō* is used always (and only) as the rendering for "give orders," there will be little danger either of missing the dative with that verb (cf. the Rule in Exercise IX), or of becoming confused concerning the familiar construction with *iubeō*.

NOTE 2. On the declension of *Plinius* and *Vesuvius*, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

94. 1. Why are you giving orders to them not to set out from home? 2. If you have gotten possession of seventy or eighty or ninety baskets, go¹ at once to fetch² the wagons. 3. Although the general fears that you will not spare the senate, the king has twice given orders that no one³ injure the senators.⁴ 4. Since there is no one who has less courage than⁵ strength,⁶ we shall all proceed to the country, and never return to Rome. 5. Through⁷ doors⁸ and windows the bolder pirates flee, and perhaps in⁹ a few hours, by hastening, they will have escaped¹⁰ into the mountains.

95. 1. Poison is perhaps useful to pirates¹¹ for (the business of)¹² murdering; ¹³ but good men should shun¹⁴ it. 2. The others are about to go a journey¹⁵ of several days into the woods to fight; but *we* shall remain at London to meet our¹⁶ brothers. 3. Because of the confusion, the men¹⁶ could not hear the captain, who was giving orders to a part of the line not to fall back. 4. While¹⁷ one of the sailors was finding plenty of grain and all¹⁸ too little money, the others seized the horses. 5. Come nearer, please, so that I may see better.

96. *A Time of Peril*

Pliny says that one day, when he¹⁸ was¹⁹ yet²⁰ a young man, his¹² mother suddenly noticed in the sky a black cloud of great extent.²¹ Pliny's uncle²² at that time²³ was commander²⁴ of a fleet; and²⁵ when he²⁵ was informed that the cloud was rising²⁶ from Vesuvius,²⁷ he boarded a ship without delay, and set out for the other shore of the bay²⁸ to save the farmers. When, however, he was ready to return from there,²⁹ he could not set sail because of adverse winds,³⁰ and never afterward³¹ saw his relatives.³² For he died a few hours later on the shore, although his¹³ companions escaped. Meanwhile, at home, Pliny and his mother were afraid³³ that even³⁴ they³⁵ would be killed; for the wind carried the ashes³⁶ many miles across the bay.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Lit.</i> , set out. | 17. Do not forget to use <i>dum</i> , as occasion offers. |
| 2. <i>addūcō</i> , 3, <i>-dūxī</i> , <i>-ductus</i> . | 18. Use <i>ipse</i> . |
| 3. <i>that no one</i> : introducing what kind of clause? | 19. On what verb does the "when" clause depend? |
| 4. <i>senātor</i> , <i>-ōris</i> , M. | 20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXVIII. |
| 5. <i>quam</i> (adv.). | 21. <i>lātītūdō</i> , <i>-inis</i> , F. |
| 6. Pl. of <i>vis</i> , in the same case as the word for "courage." | 22. <i>avunculus</i> , <i>-i</i> , M. |
| 7. <i>i.e.</i> by way of. | 23. <i>at that time</i> : <i>i.e.</i> then. |
| 8. <i>porta</i> . | 24. <i>praefectus</i> , <i>-i</i> , M. |
| 9. <i>i.e.</i> within. | 25. <i>and . . . he</i> : use <i>qui</i> . |
| 10. See footnote 10 on Exercise XXXII. | 26. <i>orior</i> , 4, <i>ortus sum</i> . |
| 11. <i>to pirates</i> : put first in the sentence. | 27. <i>from Vesuvius</i> : put first in the indirect discourse. |
| 12. Omit. | 28. Put the gen. next after the preposition, and the adjective after the other noun. |
| 13. <i>i.e.</i> killing. | 29. <i>from there</i> : <i>inde</i> . |
| 14. <i>vītō</i> , I. | 30. <i>ventus</i> (<i>-i</i> , M.) <i>adversus</i> (<i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i>). Put first in the clause. |
| 15. Note that Extent of Space may be expressed by a single word. | |
| 16. <i>miles</i> . | |

31. *postea*.
 32. *his relatives*: *sui*, *-orum*,
 M.
 33. Imperfect tense.
34. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXV.
 35. Use *ipse* (masc.).
 36. *cinis*, *-eris*, M. Use the sing.

EXERCISE XXXIV

(97-99)

NUMERALS (*continued*) — HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

In connection with this Exercise, learn how to form the cardinal and ordinal numerals from 101 to 1000 inclusive (see the Summary of Forms, p. 354).

MODEL SENTENCE

In silvā nē maneāmus, Let us not remain in the forest.

RULE. *The negative of the Hortatory Subjunctive is nē.*

VOCABULARY

Aurēlius, -a, -um, *Aurelian*. *piscor*, I, *fish*.
dubitō, I, -āvi, -ātum est, *praedium*, -i, N., *plantation*.
hesitate; may be construed with the complementary infinitive. *servus*, -i, M., *slave*.

TRANSLATION

97. 1. Let's not set sail without our¹ companions and the other part of the army. Have you not been informed that six hundred² Indians have already boldly³ crossed the bay? 2. If there is no one who prefers, by daring,⁴ to have plenty of food, I think that we ought all to go⁵ home at once; for an army of little courage⁶ can⁷ never conquer an enemy so⁸ superior in number. 3. Though eighteen companies had been sent from Rome by Caesar along the Aurelian

way, we were on the point of summoning other⁹ forces also, so that our men would fight more willingly.¹⁰ 4. There was a rush¹¹ to the stream to save the boy.

98. 1. Since four hundred and ten men¹² have already been killed¹³ or wounded, let us not hesitate any¹ longer to retire.¹⁴ 2. This bench is so long that it cannot be filled by twelve baskets. 3. If there are⁷ some who think that we ought to remain in New York to work, please say¹⁵ that we have gone to the country to fish. 4. Let's not use the wagons at this time;¹⁶ for as yet¹⁷ the horses have had¹⁸ no¹⁹ grain. 5. Don't hesitate to go soon to the assistance²⁰ of the other line; for meanwhile no one will have aided it.

99. *Spartacus*

In Italy slaves would often run away²¹ from the plantations; and²² whoever²³ were caught, were killed by their¹ masters.²⁴ Once several gladiators,²⁵ who had been quartered²⁶ at Capua, under the leadership of a slave²⁷ named Spartacus determined²⁸ to be free;²⁹ and when they had fled secretly³⁰ from Capua to Mt.³¹ Vesuvius, many other³² slaves ventured⁴ to run away²¹ from home to join³³ them. Thus³⁴ in a few months Spartacus became leader of an army so large that the Romans were thoroughly aroused.³⁵ At times there was very fierce fighting;³⁶ but finally the slaves were so decisively³⁷ beaten by Crassus that the peasants³⁸ no longer³⁹ needed to fear that farmhouses would be burned⁴⁰ at night, and that their¹ cattle and horses would be stolen by the enemy.

1. Omit.
2. Do not forget that the Latin words for "hundreds" (excepting *centum*) are declinable.

3. *audacter*.
4. *audeō*.
5. Be careful of the spelling.
6. *animus*.

7. Future tense.
8. *tantō* (adv.).
9. See the Remark on p. 210.
10. *i.e. more readily*. Note that this stands in a purpose clause.
11. Use *concurrō*, 3, -*currī*, -*cursum est*. Render the following purpose clause in three ways (not ut).
12. *miles*.
13. Express the form of *sum* with the second participle only.
14. See Note 4 on p. 240.
15. If the sing. is used, be careful of the spelling. Place before the word for "please."
16. *i.e. now*.
17. *i.e. up to this time*.
18. *i.e. have eaten*.
19. Use *nihil*.
20. Use *auxilium* (with the verb *eō*).
21. *aufugiō*, 3, -*fūgī*.
22. Use *autem*.
23. Use the relative simply.
24. *dominus*, -i, m.
25. *gladiātor*, -ōris, m.
26. *collocō* (with locative case).
27. Recast the phrase so as to use the noun *dux* (expressing thus the idea of "leadership").
28. *i.e. decided*.
29. *to be free*: use the idiom *sē liberāre* (*liberō*, 1), *lit.* "to set one's self free."
30. *clam*.
31. Neither abbreviated nor written with a capital in Latin.
32. *cēteri* or *alii*? Place the other modifier after the noun.
33. *to join*: use the idiom *sē coniungere* (*coniungō*, 3, -*iūnxī*, -*iūnxus*), with *cum* and abl. (*lit.* "to join one's self with").
34. *Lit., in which (rel.) way*.
35. *thoroughly aroused*: *permōtus*, -a, -um.
36. Use *pugnō*, with the superl. of *ācriter*.
37. *so decisively*: *tantā clāde* (*lit.* "with such disaster").
38. *colōnus*.
39. *no longer*: *lit., not longer*.
40. Use a participial phrase, omitting the following "and that."

EXERCISE XXXV

(100-102)

SUMMARY OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

Various uses of the gerund and gerundive have been treated in preceding Exercises. Each of these special uses, with others, finds a place in the schemes which follow.

THE GERUND

As already shown, the gerund is a verbal *noun*. found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. All these forms of the gerund are used in regular noun constructions; but the dative is so seldom found that it is excluded from the present discussion.

MODEL SENTENCES

GENITIVE

facultās aquandī, The opportunity of getting water.
aquandī causā, For the purpose of getting water.

ACCUSATIVE

ad aquandum, For getting water (To get water).

ABLATIVE

pugnandō evādunt, They escape by fighting.
pugnandō superant, They excel in fighting.
dē pugnandō nihil audīvi, I have heard nothing about fighting.

NOTE 1. In the first group of models above, **facultās aquandī** has been rendered very literally. More idiomatic translations are: "opportunity *for* getting water," and "opportunity *to* get water." In turning such phrases back into Latin, the only security against error is to have firmly fixed in mind the fact that **facultās** and nouns of similar meaning govern a *genitive* construction.

NOTE 2. The accusative of the gerund is used only with a preposition, mostly **ad**.

NOTE 3. In the last group of Model Sentences, observe how the first two ablatives express Means and Specification. The prepositions used with this case of the gerund are **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, and **in**.

THE GERUNDIVE

The gerundive is an *adjective*, and has two main uses :

1. IN CONNECTION WITH the verb **sum**, the gerundive indicates that a thing ought, needs, must, or should be done. Intransitive verbs (impersonal in the passive) find here the sole use for their single gerundive form, namely, the nominative and accusative neuter in **-um**, *e.g.* **pugnandum est**, **persuādendum esse**, etc.

2. APART FROM the verb **sum** (expressed or implied), the gerundive of transitive verbs commonly lacks the notion "should," "ought," etc., being used with great frequency in phrases which, in meaning and form, very closely parallel the gerund constructions made by intransitive verbs (or by transitive verbs used absolutely; cf. the Remark in Exercise XXV). In these gerundive uses, too, the dative figures so little that it is not included in the present discussion.

MODEL SENTENCES

GENITIVE

facultās aquae petendae, The opportunity of getting water.

aquae petendae causā, For the purpose of getting water.

ACCUSATIVE

ad aquam petendam, For getting water (To get water).

ABLATIVE

dolōre ferendō dēfessi sumus, We are worn out with bearing pain.

dolōre ferendō nōs superant, They excel us in bearing pain.

dē dolōre ferendō librum scripsit, He wrote a book on bearing pain.

REMARK. Working through the above examples one by one, note how the gerundive is everywhere simply an adjective modifier taking the form determined for it by the noun standing in the genitive, accusative, or ablative case. And always keep in mind the fact that only *transitive* verbs possess the gerundive forms necessary for the construction of such phrases.

NOTE. The same prepositions used with the ablative of the gerund are found also with ablative gerundive phrases.

VOCABULARY

Brundisium, -si, n., the name of a town in Italy.	tot, indecl. adj., <i>so many,</i> <i>so numerous.</i>
explōrātor, -ōris, m., <i>scout.</i>	vereor, 2, veritus sum, <i>fear.</i>
facultās, -ātis, f., <i>opportunity,</i> <i>chance.</i>	Perf. partic., veritus, -a, -um, used with the force of a present, <i>fearing.</i>
forte, adv., <i>by chance.</i>	
perfuga, -ae, m., <i>deserter.</i>	

NOTE 1. For the locative of Brundisium, see Remark 1 on p. 247.

NOTE 2. On the force of veritus, see the Note on ratus, p. 270. Do not forget to employ with veritus, and other forms of vereor, the construction called for by verbs of Fearing.

NOTE 3. Observe that tot provides a short and convenient substitute for tam multi.

TRANSLATION

100. 1. Let us not send the horsemen to bring back the deserters; for they¹ are now busied² with caring for their³ horses. 2. In a few hours you will have had an opportunity to sit in the shade, captain; but now, though you have been wounded with so many arrows, we must not hesitate to give orders to the whole army to proceed⁴ at once to London. 3. If there is⁵ a chance to look for slaves, not

even the horsemen will surpass us in speed.⁶ 4. If we should inform the general that five hundred and fifty men, who were lately⁷ with us, are now hurrying to the camp of the enemy's armies, he would say that there are not enough horsemen in Brundisium⁸ to capture⁹ so many deserters.

101. 1. Since wagons can travel¹⁰ along this narrow way very easily, we need not find some other¹¹ method¹² of bringing¹³ the grain. 2. If we proceed⁶ from the plantation several miles through the valleys, there will be a chance to hunt and fish. 3. There are some people whom¹⁴ we hear are trying to get possession of the money, so that they may have¹⁵ more¹⁶ slaves. 4. Thus it happened¹⁷ that they were talking about building¹⁸ ships. But we already have ten, and I think that the townspeople have been informed of the situation¹⁹ and (that they)² will send eight other vessels to reënforce us.

102. *The Scout's Escape*

"Many years ago,"¹⁶ said the soldier to the consul's sons, "a²⁰ scout set out from New York to join²¹ our army; and,²² as²³ he²⁴ was a man of the greatest daring, he was sent a few days later across the river, and remained²⁴ several hours in the enemy's camp. When he was ready to return, he quietly withdrew to the woods during the night,²⁵ but could not find the skiff which he had left on the river. While he was thus at a loss,²⁶ suddenly he heard the barking²⁷ of a dog, and fearing²⁸ that he would be caught by the enemy, he at once advanced silently²⁹ into the water, and there³⁰ by chance found another skiff. The dog, which had now come to the bank, swam after³¹ the skiff, and seized it with his³² teeth.³³ But the scout killed the animal³⁴ with his³ dagger,³⁵ and returned shortly in safety to our camp."

1. Express the subject.
2. occupātus, -a, -um.
3. Omit.
4. *i.e. advance.*
5. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.
6. Use *proporō*.
7. *modō*.
8. Be careful of the spelling.
9. *i.e. for (ad) capturing.*
10. Pass. of *dūcō*.
11. *some other*: *alius*.
12. *ratio*, -ōnis, f.
13. *vehō*.
14. Model this phrase on *sunt quī* ("there are some people *who*").
15. If a dat. is used, the reflexive (*sui*) is the pronoun required.
16. Be careful about the word order.
17. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
18. *i.e. making.*
19. *Lit., about the (hīc) matter.* Do not place last in the clause.
20. *quīdam*.
21. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XXXIV.
22. *and . . . he*: use *quī*.
23. *i.e. since.*
24. *and remained*: *lit., where he remained*. Punctuate the preceding clause with a semicolon.
25. *during the night*: use an adv.
26. *be at a loss*: *haereō*, 2, *haesi*.
27. *lātrātus*, -ūs, m.
28. Translate in two ways.
29. *Lit., without noise* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXI).
30. *and there*: *lit., where*; cf. footnote 24 above.
31. *Lit., by swimming followed.*
32. *suus*, -a, -um.
33. *dēns*, *dentis*, m.
34. *Lit., the dog*. Make this clause a (passive) participial phrase.
35. *sica*, -ae, f.

EXERCISE XXXVI

(103-105)

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Just as a STATEMENT may either be reported verbatim (Direct Discourse) or quoted indirectly (Indirect Discourse), so a QUESTION may be reported either in the direct or in an indirect form, *e.g.*:

Direct form: "*Why are you waiting?*" asked Marcus.

Indirect form: Marcus wanted to know *why they were waiting*.

In the above, note that, even in the indirect form, the interrogative word "why" is still retained — a fact that shows instantly that we are dealing with a quoted *question*, and not with a quoted *statement*. Consequently, even though some verbs (*e.g.* "to know") are capable, on occasion, of governing either construction, still the absence or presence of an interrogative in a given clause shows at once whether or not that clause is an indirect *question*.

MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar audire vult	{	quid lēgātus faciat.
Caesar wants to know		what the captain is doing.
		cūr lēgātus abierit.
		why the captain has gone.
Caesar mē rogābat	{	ubi lēgātus esset.
Caesar was asking me		where the captain was.
		quis lēgātum vidisset.
		who had seen the captain.

RULE. *The verb of an Indirect Question stands in the subjunctive mood.*

NOTE. Observe that Indirect Questions employ all tenses of the subjunctive, and with the same force as seen in causal *cum*-clauses (Exercise VI). Watch with special care for cases where the Law of Sequence calls for the use of the *perfect* subjunctive.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, -ōnis, m., <i>centurion</i> .	quō, interrog. and rel. adv.,
iniquus, -a, -um, <i>unfavorable</i> .	<i>whither, where</i> . As rel.
quisque, quaeque, quidque,	adv. beginning a new sen-
adj. and noun, <i>each, each</i>	tence, <i>there</i> .
<i>man</i> . See the Summary	rogō, I, <i>ask, inquire</i> .
of Forms, p. 358.	

NOTE. *Quō* is found only with verbs of motion. Hence it is only when "where" is used loosely for "whither" that it can be rendered by *quō*; and, conversely, whenever "where" *does* stand for "whither," it *must* be rendered by *quō*; for *ubi* cannot be used with verbs of motion. Cf. the Note on *hūc*, p. 255.

In the same way, "there" as a rendering for relative *quō* at the beginning of a new sentence is loose for "thither." And even "thither," thus used, is not a real translation of *quō* itself, but rather of the demonstrative adverb (*eō*) for which *quō* stands; for just as Latin, in beginning a new sentence, is prone to substitute a relative pronoun for a demonstrative (*e.g.* *quod cum fecisset*, "when he had done *this*"), in like manner a relative adverb is often substituted for a demonstrative adverb.

TRANSLATION

103. 1. Do not inquire why they¹ have gone to their seats.² I fear that *you* too will soon have opportunity to sit. 2. If by chance the hunter should come from the country, Quintus, and inquire where I am, please ask³ him what he wants. 3. On that day I asked the captain where the prisoners were, and he⁴ replied⁵ that he had killed all the men,⁶ sparing⁷ only⁸ the consul's son. 4. Because of the drought,⁹ we have at the present time¹⁰ too little food; but I hope that shortly there will be an opportunity to¹¹ look for grain.

104. 1. Did you learn why a rush had been made¹² to the gates to escape?¹³ 2. Let us not think¹⁴ at this time of¹⁴ making¹⁵ war; yet¹⁶ each man should get a supply of¹⁷ arms. 3. If there are any whom the king has ordered to fight on¹⁸ ground so unfavorable, we shall go very gladly to their assistance,¹⁹ in order that the confidence²⁰ of the enemy may be less. 4. The deserters were so many²¹ that we gave orders to the captains not to try to find out where they¹ had gone.²²

105. *An Example of Good Discipline*

When our soldiers had sailed across the bay, and had landed²³ from the ship, the enemy, who were not²⁴ much superior in number, suddenly made a fierce attack upon the companies. The centurions, fearing that they²⁵ would have to fight on²⁶ unfavorable ground, nevertheless²⁷ gave orders to their men²⁸ to try to gain²⁹ a small hill not far away,³⁰ and to form in a circle³¹ there. When this³² was done, the enemy repeatedly³³ attacked every part³⁴ of our line in vain; ³⁵ for³⁶ each of our soldiers had made up his mind³⁷ either³⁸ to die³⁹ there or⁴⁰ to be saved along with all the rest.⁴¹ So it happened that the horsemen, who were coming in haste⁴² over the mountain by rough⁴³ roads to reënforce the companies, suddenly attacked the enemy in the rear,⁴⁴ and soon put them to flight⁴⁵ with great loss.⁴⁶

1. ille.
2. *to their seats: lit., to take a seat (sedēō).*
3. For variety, use the verb *quaerō*, which, in the sense "inquire," governs *ex* with abl. of the person. Put this part of the clause before the word for "please."
4. Express the subject.
5. *dicō*.
6. *homō* or *vir*?
7. *sparing: lit., and (that he, had spared.*
8. Do not use an adv.
9. *siccitās, -ātis, f.*
10. *i.e. now.*
11. See Note 1 on p. 308.
12. Use *concurrō* (3, -*currī*, -*cursum est*). How many interrogative clauses are there in this sentence?
13. Not an *ut*-clause.
14. *think . . . of: cōgitō, 1, with dē and the abl.*
15. *inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus.*
16. See Note 3 on p. 219.
17. *get a supply of: parō, 1.*
18. With the ablatives *locō* and *locis* the prep. *in* is often omitted.
19. What case of *auxilium*?
20. *fidūcia, -ae, f.*
21. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXV.
22. *Lit., had proceeded.* In wording this clause, note the presence of the verb of motion.
23. Use *ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum.*
24. *haud.*
25. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*).

- | | |
|--|--|
| 26. <i>sui, -orum, m.</i> | 36. <i>either . . . or: aut . . . aut.</i> |
| 27. <i>capitō.</i> | 37. Be careful of the spelling. |
| 28. <i>haud longinquus.</i> | 38. <i>the rest: omit.</i> |
| 29. <i>in orbem (orbis, -is, m.)</i> | 39. <i>i.e. quickly.</i> |
| <i>cōsistō (3, -stiti, -stitum est).</i> | 40. <i>asper, -era, -erum.</i> |
| 30. Use a relative, making this | 41. <i>in the rear: ā tergō.</i> |
| a participial phrase. | 42. Note that this clause too |
| 31. <i>identidem (adv.).</i> | is a part of the construction intro- |
| 32. <i>i.e. all parts.</i> | duced by "that." |
| 33. <i>in vain: frūstrā.</i> | 43. <i>Lit., a great loss (dētrimen-</i> |
| 34. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise | <i>tum, -i, n.) having been sustained</i> |
| XIV. | <i>(accipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus). Do</i> |
| 35. <i>i.e. had decided.</i> | not place last in the sentence. |

EXERCISE XXXVII

(106-108)

THE THIRD PERSON REFLEXIVES

A reflexive pronoun or reflexive possessive adjective is one that "refers back" to the subject of a clause or sentence. For the third person, these reflexives are respectively *sui* and *suus, -a, -um*.

MODEL SENTENCES

Rēx sē interfēcit, The king killed himself.

Rēx filium suum interfēcit, The king killed his son.

RULE. *The third person reflexive pronoun and possessive adjective normally "refer back" to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

In some types of *subordinate* clause, however, these same reflexive forms must be used even when the reference is to the subject of the *governing* clause. The subordinate constructions exhibiting this special use are chiefly these:

- 1) Indirect Discourse
- 2) Indirect Question
- 3) Complementary Infinitive Clause
- 4) Purpose Clause
- 5) Clause dependent upon Verbs of Fearing

The following examples illustrate this use either of **sui** or **suus** in clauses of each of the above types :

MODEL SENTENCES

1) **Colōnī dicunt nautās sibi nocuisse**, The settlers say that the sailors have injured them (the settlers).

2) **Colōnī rogant cūr equī carrōs suōs nōn secūtī sint**, The settlers are asking why the horses have not followed their (the settlers') wagons.

3) **Colōnī nautās sē sequī iubent**, The settlers order the sailors to follow them (the settlers).

4) **Colōnī nautās hortātī sunt, ut liberōs suōs adiuvārent**, The settlers urged the sailors to help their (the settlers') children.

5) **Colōnī timent ut nautae sēcum proficiscantur**, The settlers are afraid that the sailors will not set out with them (the settlers).

The correct use of the third person reflexives is almost entirely a matter of memory ; for the wording of an English sentence often gives no help. Thus we may say "The king killed his son," whether we are talking about *the king's* son, or about the son of *some one else*. But in rendering such a sentence into Latin, we are forced to a decision : if the reference is to the king's son, the reflexive adjective is the only modifier possible (**Rēx filium suum interfēcit**) ; but if the son of some one else is referred to, the genitive of the personal pronoun is required (**Rēx eius filium interfēcit**).

NOTE. Though, for the third person, Latin is much better supplied than English with special reflexive forms, there are numerous distinctions which even Latin cannot make. Thus, when third person reflexives stand in subordinate clauses of the types illustrated above, there is sometimes a possible ambiguity. In the sentence *Colōnī dicunt nautās sibi nocuisse*, *sibi* might conceivably refer either to *nautās* (the subject of its own clause), thus illustrating the general rule; or it might refer to *Colōnī* (the subject of the governing clause), thereby illustrating the special use. In cases of this sort, the context usually makes clear the meaning of the speaker or writer.

REMARK 1. In this connection, it must not be forgotten that the English forms "himself," "herself," etc., are not by any means always used as reflexive. Very often they are *intensive* merely, *i.e.* they simply emphasize a noun or pronoun (Latin *ipse*). Thus, *Rēx sē interfēcit*, "The king killed *himself*," but *Rēx ipse vēnit*, "The king *himself* came."

REMARK 2. For the first and second persons, Latin has no special reflexive forms. Consequently all cases of *ego* and *tū*, excepting the nominative, are forced into service as reflexives (*e.g.* *Ego mē terreō*, "I frighten myself"); so also all forms of the possessive adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*.

VOCABULARY

<i>aquila</i> , -ae, F., <i>eagle</i> .	may be construed with
<i>dimitto</i> , 3, -misi, -missus, <i>let slip, miss</i> .	indirect discourse (or indirect question).
<i>impedimenta</i> , -ōrum, N., <i>baggage</i> .	<i>signum</i> , -i, N., <i>standard</i> .
<i>porto</i> , 1, <i>carry, take</i> .	<i>suus</i> , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their; hers, theirs</i> .
<i>scio</i> , 4, <i>scivi, scitus, know</i> ;	<i>vexillum</i> , -i, N., <i>flag</i> .

NOTE. It has already been indicated that (like other possessive adjectives) *suus*, -a, -um follows the noun it modifies, unless

there is a contrast that makes it emphatic. Thus, *Agricola equos suos dūcit*, "The farmer is leading his horses," but *Agricola equos dūcit*, "The farmer is leading *his own* (as contrasted with some one else's) horses."

REMARK. In this connection, do not fail to note that *suus*, -a, -um fully covers the ownership idea, and that, therefore, the genitive of the reflexive pronoun *suī* (like the genitive of *ego* and *tū*) must not be used to designate the person to whom something belongs.

TRANSLATION

106. 1. By promising and urging, Caesar is helping himself and the soldiers of his entire army. 2. I hope that the Gauls will persuade the general not to injure them. Do you know where he¹ has gone? 3. If you hear² anything about summoning³ the hostages, inform⁴ me at once. 4. Did they inquire why Caesar, a man of great influence, was trying to get possession of their small town? 5. Let us not miss this opportunity of helping our⁵ citizens; for, fearing that the settlers will not give them food, they are now⁶ on the point of falling back. 6. Caesar will not have allowed the enemy to escape⁷ from his sight.

107. 1. If the farmer's sons should have an opportunity to fight, they would kill many with their⁸ great swords. 2. Though there is no one who hopes that we shall start from Rome very⁹ soon, still there are some who are asking why the general has not sent⁹ their baggage to Capua. 3. Though the deserters are fighting on¹⁰ unfavorable ground, each company must shout twice, so that the enemy's fear will be greater. 4. Though they already had plenty of food, they were hurrying to the country, so as not to miss this opportunity to fish.

108. *A Unique Standard*

In American armies the soldiers usually¹¹ carry a flag as¹² the standard. But one¹³ regiment always took with it¹⁴ into battle an eagle; which, not at all¹⁵ terrified by the shots¹⁶ fired¹⁷ on every hand, would fly¹⁸ above¹⁹ the enemy, and⁵ then come back to a pole,²⁰ which a soldier was carrying. The enemy tried in every way²¹ either to kill or to capture this eagle,²² for they believed that, if it were lost,²³ the courage of the soldiers would be less. But this²⁴ they could never accomplish;²⁵ and²⁶ even after²⁷ the war was finished,²⁸ grateful²⁹ citizens for many years cared for the bird.

1. *ille*.

2. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

3. Review, if necessary, the grammar lesson of Exercise XXXV.

4. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise XVIII. In this particular sentence, do not place the verb last.

5. Omit.

6. *nunc* or *iam*?7. *recēdō*, 3, -*cessī*, -*cessum est*.

8. See the Note on the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

9. Cf. again the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI.

10. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise XXXVI.

11. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note 1.

12. *prō*, prep., with abl.13. *quīdam*.

14. Cf. footnote 3 on Exercise III.

15. *not at all*: *minimē*.16. *tēlum*.17. Partic. of *mittō*.18. *volitō*, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātum est*.
What tense?19. *super*, prep., with acc.20. *contus*, -*i*, m. Keep the prepositional phrase last in the clause.

21. Use the pl.

22. *this eagle*: put first in the sentence.23. Use an abl. absol. (*lit.*, *it having been lost*).

24. Use a relative.

25. *efficiō*, 3, -*fēci*, -*fectus*.26. *atque*.27. Use a *cum*-clause.28. *conficiō*, 3, -*fēci*, -*fectus*.29. *grātus*, -*a*, -*um*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

(109-111)

ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC

MODEL SENTENCE

Caesar erat insigni virtūte vir, Caesar was a man of noteworthy bravery.

RULE. *A noun in the ablative case, with a modifier, may be used to designate a quality or characteristic of a person or thing.*

NOTE. It is often impossible to detect any difference in meaning between the genitive and the ablative of quality. But if the modifier is pār, ācer, or any adjective with nominative in -is (as similis), the ablative should always be written in preference to the genitive. Thus, while we may say either maximae virtūtis vir or maximā virtūte vir, the choice of case is at once limited if insignis is selected as the modifier, as in the Model Sentence above.

VOCABULARY

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F., <i>practice.</i>	pār, gen. paris, <i>equal.</i>
Germāni, -ōrum, M., <i>the Germans.</i>	pellō, 3, pepuli, pulsus, <i>drive, repulse, drive back.</i>
insignis, -is, -e, <i>noteworthy.</i>	

NOTE. Observe that pār is an adjective of one termination (like audāx; see Summary of Forms, p. 350). Note carefully that adjectives of one termination (as most adjectives of the third declension) have only the -I ending in the ablative singular.

TRANSLATION

109. 1. Though Cicero has like influence,¹ Caesar has given orders to Curio not to make him his² lieutenant.

2. Caesar did not³ ask what you had said to his captain, nor³ where you were on the point of going. 3. Through⁴ practice in⁵ hunting the Germans became⁶ strong, and I do not think that many⁷ nations have been found equally courageous.⁸ 4. He says that the practice of carrying an eagle among⁹ the standards often helped¹⁰ the armies of those states. 5. Let us not believe that the men¹¹ who are now on the point of departing¹² from London are deserters.

110. 1. If there are any¹³ who are inquiring why we do not spare their slaves, say that six hundred of their citizens¹⁴ burned all our baggage and flags. 2. Many men of equal boldness set out from Capua to guard the roads, so that nothing¹⁵ might harm their commander. 3. While the battle was raging¹⁶ at New York, the sailors got possession of another island. 4. Within a few days we shall have enough ships to send to protect¹⁷ that town. 5. Though the wagons will have been sent by a much shorter¹⁸ road, why need we hurry to London at such¹⁹ speed? 6. Were not the sailors willing to be sent to the aid of²⁰ another line?

111. *A Brief Campaign*

When our general had arrived there,²¹ he encamped²² without delay not far from²³ the river. Seeing this,²⁴ the enemy for several days remained in the forest;²⁵ but on the ninth day, in order to find out²⁶ more definitely²⁷ what our army was doing,²⁸ three scouts crossed the river to investigate.²⁹ So great,³⁰ however, was the watchfulness³⁰ of the soldiers that the men³¹ were at once captured by our cavalry. A few days later the enemy led all their forces across the river, and located³² them³³ on³² a hill suitable

for a camp. But during the night our men occupied a higher³³ hill, and in the morning³⁴ drove the terrified enemy into the river.

1. *Lit., is of like (i.e. similar) influence.*

2. *i.e.* Curio's.

3. *not . . . nor*: use *nec . . . nec*, placing the verb of "asking" before the first of these conjunctions.

4. *i.e. by.*

5. *Lit., of.*

6. Customary past action.

7. Place next after the negative.

8. *Lit., of equal courage.*

9. *inter*: prep., with acc.

10. Use *subsidiū*.

11. Pl. of *is*.

12. *i.e. of setting out.*

13. Omit.

14. *i.e. six hundred citizens of theirs* (gen. of *ipse*).

15. What kind of clause?

16. Use *pugnō*, with *ācritēr*.

17. Use *praesidiū* (with *mittō*). Make the whole a relative clause.

18. *short*: *brevis*, -is, -e. Place the modifying phrase after the noun.

19. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXVII.

20. Not gen.

21. *Lit., whither* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVI). Put first in the sentence.

22. *castra pōnō* (3, *posui*, *positus*).

23. *not far from*: *haud procul ā*.

24. *Lit., which* (rel.) *thing* (*rēs*) *having been noticed*.

25. Use the idiom *sē silvis tenēre*. Cf. the similar phrase in footnote 16 on Exercise V.

26. *cōgnōscō*.

27. Use *certius*.

28. *agō*, 3, *ēgi*, *actus*.

29. *speculor*.

30. *diligentia*.

31. Use *ille*.

32. *locate on*: *collocō*, with *in* and *abl*.

33. To relieve the monotony of the clause endings, detach this adjective from its noun, and put it last in the clause.

34. *in the morning*: *māne* (adv.).

EXERCISE XXXIX

(112-114)

I-STEMS AND U-STEMS

	I-STEMS		U-STEM
	<i>turris</i> , F., <i>tower</i>	<i>animal</i> , N., <i>animal</i>	<i>cornū</i> , N., <i>horn</i>
	SINGULAR		
Nom.	<i>turris</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>cornū</i>
Gen.	<i>turris</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>cornūs</i>
Dat.	<i>turri</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>cornū</i>
Acc.	<i>turrim</i> , -em	<i>animal</i>	<i>cornū</i>
Abl.	<i>turri</i> , -e	<i>animālī</i>	<i>cornū</i>
	PLURAL		
Nom.	<i>turrēs</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Gen.	<i>turrium</i>	<i>animālium</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
Dat.	<i>turribus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
Acc.	<i>turris</i> , -ēs	<i>animālia</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Abl.	<i>turribus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

NOTE 1. The noteworthy thing about the declension of the I-Stem *turris*, is, of course, its accusative singular in *-im*. Very few common nouns have this ending; but I-Stem names of cities and rivers in *-is* regularly form the accusative thus.

Neuter I-Stems with nominative in *-e* follow the declension of *mare*; the others (with nominative in *-al* and *-ar*; see the statement in Exercise I) conform to the inflection of *animal* above.

NOTE 2. The declension of masculine and feminine U-Stems (e.g. *exercitus*) has already been fully treated. How neuters of this class are inflected is illustrated above in the declension of *cornū*.

VOCABULARY

cornū , -ūs, N., <i>horn</i> ;	wing num, conj.; introducing indirect questions, <i>whether</i> .
(of army).	
dexter , -tra, -trum, <i>right</i> (as contrasted with "left").	studium , -ī, N., <i>liking, enthusiasm</i> .

TRANSLATION

112. 1. Though they were men of noteworthy influence, they nevertheless hesitated¹ to lead their forces thither,² fearing³ that Curio had stationed the fifth regiment on the right wing of our line. 2. The practice of killing animals with the ax⁴ must be checked⁵ by the consuls and the senate. 3. With equal enthusiasm the Gauls advanced silently⁶ to attack the higher tower.⁴ 4. If they should see the eagle, would they not desire⁷ to know⁸ where we are going; and⁹ why we are not marching to their camp? 5. I think that they carried an eagle into that town in order that the inhabitants of the mountains might not dare to injure them there.

113. 1. If Caesar orders¹⁰ all the soldiers to follow him, let us not tarry to⁸ look for the slave. 2. In numbers¹¹ the armies are equal, but ours is much superior in courage.¹² 3. Do you know what is taking place¹³ on the right wing? I think that the tower has been taken¹⁴ and the enemy repulsed. 4. Do not ask them¹⁵ why they left their baggage and standards in the tower. 5. Even now Gaius seems to have too little enthusiasm¹⁶ about these matters.¹⁷ 6. The general of greatest influence could¹⁸ not persuade a single¹⁹ soldier of these companies to fight on²⁰ ground so unfavorable.

114. *The Carrier Pigeon*

"Some nations use birds in a curious²¹ way in warfare,"²² said the soldier to Marcus and Quin'us. "Once in Europe, when there had been a fierce battle, and the townspeople had been forced to fall back to their camp with one of the captains very badly²³ wounded, the leader wished to find out whether the king was on the point of coming to reënforce him.²⁴ So²⁵ he wrote a letter,²⁶ and fastened²⁷ it to²⁷ the foot²⁸ of a pigeon,²⁹ which had been given to him²⁴ by the king. Set free³⁰ at night, the bird returned home with all³¹ speed; and the king, thus informed of³² the battle, at once sent several companies to the relief of his citizens."

1. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIV.

2. *et* (adv.).

3. Translate in more than one way.

4. Be careful of the spelling.

5. *prohibeō*, 2, -ui, -itus.

6. *i.e. without noise.*

7. *i.e. want.*

8. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

9. *Lit., or.*

10. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

11. See Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

12. Put early in the clause.

13. *i.e. what is being done.*

14. Write the form of *sum* with the second participle only.

15. If *quaerō* is used, cf. footnote 3 on Exercise XXXVI.

16. *Lit., too little enthusiasm seems to be in Gaius.*

17. *about these matters:* put early in the sentence.

18. Present indicative; an idiomatic use.

19. *unus.*

20. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise XXXVI.

21. *insolitus*, -a, -um.

22. *i.e. in war.*

23. *badly: graviter.* Render this phrase by a participial clause.

24. *is or sui?*

25. *i.e. and so.*

26. *litterae*, -arum, f.

27. *fastened . . . to: dēligō*, 1, with *ad* and *acc.*

28. *pēs, pedis, m.*
 29. *columba.* Place last in the phrase, thus avoiding an awkward separation from the relative of the modifying clause.

30. *ēmittō, 3, -misi, -missus.*
 Not abl. absol.
 31. *Lit., the greatest.*
 32. *i.e. about.*

EXERCISE XL

(115-117)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXXIV TO XXXIX

VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, -ii, n., plan, de- *ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum, go*
sign. *out, march out; with ex*
and abl., leave.

NOTE. On the declension of *cōnsilium*, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

115. 1. Since we know that the animal has horns, the women ought to run¹ at once to the gate, and² you alone ought to stay. 2. Though a similar plan of flight³ has been adopted⁴ at times by leaders of equal bravery, do you think that *our*⁵ commander will allow⁶ *his*⁵ companies to fall back from New York? 3. Through⁷ practice in⁸ hurling fire, the Gauls were able very easily to ignite⁹ our tower with their missiles.¹⁰ 4. In¹¹ undertaking¹² wars, the Gauls do not (stop to)² consider¹³ whether they are able to overcome the enemy; for their nation is very enthusiastic¹⁴ for¹⁵ fighting.¹⁶

116. 1. With Caesar for general, I shall not fear even¹⁷ the assaults of the armies of the greatest leaders. 2. Let us

not be afraid. For there are men² to whom the captains have given orders to announce¹⁸ that there are enough soldiers in Brundisium; and *I* know that seven hundred others are now coming along the other road to aid us. 3. Because of the confusion of the streets, all men² very enthusiastic¹⁴ for¹⁵ writing will soon have been forced to flee to the country. 4. I feared that the enemy had placed horsemen on the right wing, so that you would cross the river with less¹⁹ speed. 5. Twenty-eight²⁰ men have been sent from the tower into the woods to hide, and nobody as yet has noticed them.

117. *A Cautious Lieutenant (Part I)*

While this²¹ was happening, one of Caesar's lieutenants, Sabinus by name, arrived at a town which the enemy had gotten possession of a few days before. When the Romans came in²² sight, the Gauls closed²³ the gates without delay; and Sabinus, fearing that he had not sufficient forces to attack²⁴ the town, sought a place suitable for a camp, and there remained several days. Meanwhile, seeing²⁵ that no opportunity for fighting was offered²⁶ them by the Romans, the enemy marched out from the town daily, and finally would advance with such²⁷ boldness as to²⁸ come up²⁹ almost to the very³⁰ rampart of the camp.

1. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise XXXIX.

2. Omit.

3. Use *fugiō*, and reverse the order of the modifiers of the word for "plan."

4. *capiō*.

5. Cf. the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

6. Review again, if necessary, the infinitives of deponent verbs.

7. *i.e. because of*.

8. *Lit., of*.

9. *incendō*.

10. *tēlum*.

11. Express the preposition.

12. *faciō*. Gerund or gerundive?

13. *i.e.* question (*quaerō*).
14. *very enthusiastic: lit., of the greatest liking* (Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIX).
15. *Lit., of.* Cf. the genitive construction with *facultās*.
16. *Lit., war.*
17. Note that "not" precedes.
18. Observe carefully the Law of Sequence.
19. Be careful about the order of words.
20. Numeral how formed?
21. *haec* (neut.).
22. *i.e. into.*
23. *claudō*, 3, *clausi*, *clausus*.
24. *i.e. for (ad) attacking.*
25. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III, and be careful about the word order.
26. *i.e. was being offered* (*dō*).
27. *i.e. such great* (Vocabulary of Exercise XXVII).
28. Introducing a clause of result.
29. *i.e. approach* (Vocabulary of Exercise XXXII).
30. *ipse*.

EXERCISE XLI

(118-120)

INSTRUMENTALITY OR INTERMEDIATE AGENCY

MODEL SENTENCES

Per mē hoc factum est, Through my help this was accomplished.

Dē pugnā Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est, Through (the medium of) scouts Caesar learned of the battle.

RULE. *The person through whose instrumentality a thing comes to pass may be designated by an accusative governed by the preposition per.*

NOTE. The instrumentality construction is suited to describe the activity of agents who *contribute* to an end, or who are working under the direction of some one else. Thus, in the first of the Model Sentences, the speaker represents himself as helping toward the result referred to; and, in the second, the scouts appear as subordinates acting under another's orders.

VOCABULARY

ēmittō , 3, - misi , - missus , <i>send out</i> .	course (or indirect question).
Gallia , - ae , F. , <i>Gaul</i> .	pedes , - itis , M. , <i>foot soldier</i> ;
intelligō , 3, - lēxi , - lēctus , <i>understand</i> ; may be construed with indirect dis-	pl. , <i>infantry</i> . sui , - orum , M. , <i>his men, their men</i> .

NOTE. **Sui**, -**orum**, is, of course, simply the possessive adjective employed as a noun, and its use, therefore, is limited by the rules that govern the usage of the third person reflexives generally (see Exercise XXXVII).

TRANSLATION

118. 1. With the help of slaves, the women and children are being taken by wagon¹ to a safe place in² the forest; for the settlers fear that the cavalry of the enemy have already repulsed our men, and that³ their⁴ infantry are now burning the tower. 2. As⁵ a leader of noteworthy⁶ boldness is on the right wing, Caesar does not understand why no prisoners are being sent to him.⁷ 3. If they should adopt the plan of guarding the roads, we should be obliged to retire across the mountains into Gaul to winter.⁸ 4. Through the medium of prisoners the general hopes that he will be able⁹ to persuade the enemy not to kill the wives and children of the consuls. 5. Only Caesar's scouts¹⁰ will be able to tell¹¹ us where the companies were hastening.

119. 1. Let us not go out from the tower; for I think that the enemy are merely¹² pretending to be afraid,¹³ in order that they may more easily have an opportunity to¹⁴ attack the companies. 2. He will send men¹⁵ from Rome to Capua to bring back his slaves; for he had given orders

to them¹⁶ not to leave¹⁷ that city. 3. Follow me at once to the gate, soldiers; for a very fierce fight is in progress there. 4. I promise that you shall have sufficient money; for I¹⁸ shall then be either¹⁹ at Rome or¹⁹ in the country. 5. If there are men³ through whose help²⁰ a messenger can be brought²¹ to the right wing, not even²² the cavalry of the enemy will be able to injure our line.

120. *A Cautious Lieutenant (Part II)*

Sabinus was reluctant²³ to fight against²⁴ so large²⁵ an army on unfavorable ground. Consequently²⁶ he for some time²⁷ kept within²⁸ his³ camp,²⁸ hoping that the Gauls would think that the Romans feared them. Finally, through the help of a²⁹ Gaul who pretended³⁰ that he was a deserter, the enemy were informed that Sabinus would soon break camp, so as to fall back and go to the relief³¹ of Caesar. Hearing³² this, and fearing that Sabinus might slip away³³ unobserved,³⁴ the Gauls at once advanced³⁵ with great speed toward³⁶ his camp. But when they arrived there³⁷ tired out³⁸ with running, Sabinus by two gates suddenly sent out all his men,³⁹ who made so fierce an attack that very few of⁴⁰ the enemy escaped unscathed⁴¹ from the battlefield⁴² into the town.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Use the pl. | 10. <i>Lit., the scouts of Caesar only</i> (gen. of <i>sōlus</i>). |
| 2. <i>Lit., into.</i> | 11. <i>dīcō</i> (with dat.). Be careful of the tense in the following clause. |
| 3. Omit. | 12. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIV. |
| 4. <i>i.e.</i> the enemy's. | 13. <i>i.e. that they are afraid.</i> |
| 5. <i>i.e. since.</i> | 14. See Note 1 on p. 308. |
| 6. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVIII. | 15. Pl. of <i>is</i> . |
| 7. <i>i.e.</i> Caesar. | 16. <i>i.e.</i> the slaves. Use <i>ille</i> . |
| 8. <i>to winter</i> : not an <i>ut</i> -clause. | |
| 9. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XV. | |

17. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XL.
18. Express the subject.
19. *either . . . or*: cf. footnote 36 on Exercise XXXVI.
20. *i.e. through whom*.
21. *dēducō*, 3, -*dūxi*, -*ductus*.
22. Be careful about the word order.
23. *Lit., was hesitating*.
24. *Lit., with*.
25. *so large*: translate by a single word.
26. *Lit., and so*.
27. *for some time*: (absolute) compar. of *diū*.
28. Use the idiom *sē castris tenēre*. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise XXXVIII.
29. *quidam*.
30. Imperfect tense.
31. Use a dative construction.
32. If a pass. partic. is used, omit the following "and."
33. *effugiō*, 3, -*fūgi*.
34. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIV.
35. *contendō*.
36. *ad*.
37. *Lit., whither* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVI). Put first in the sentence (and cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV).
38. *tired out*: *i.e. tired*.
39. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon.
40. *very few of*: *perpauci*, -*ae*, -*a*. Place after the noun.
41. *i.e. in safety*.
42. *Lit., battle*.

EXERCISE XLII

(121-123)

INDIRECT OBJECT WITH THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

It has previously been pointed out that intransitive verbs are of two types, namely (1) those which are incapable of governing any case whatsoever, and (2) those which are construed with some case other than the accusative; and, further, it has been shown that *all* intransitive verbs are necessarily restricted, in the passive, to an *impersonal* use (cf. Exercise XXVI).

The passive of intransitives of the first type is already familiar (*e.g. pugnātur, pugnātum est*, etc.). On the next page is illustrated the corresponding passive of certain intransitives of the other type.

MODEL SENTENCES

Mihi persuādētur	{ I am persuaded. <i>Lit., It is persuaded to me.</i>
Omnibus parcendum est	{ All must be spared. Mercy must be shown to all. <i>Lit., It must be spared to all.</i>

RULE. *Intransitive verbs which govern the dative retain this case with their impersonal passive forms.*

NOTE. The chief difficulty encountered in applying this Rule is that our rather loose renderings, "persuade," "spare," and the like (Exercise IX) incline us to forget that *persuādeō*, *parcō*, etc., are *intransitive* verbs, and, therefore, necessarily *impersonal* in the passive. To avoid error here, constant vigilance will be required.

REMARK. When the impersonal passive takes the gerundive form (as in the second of the Model Sentences), it is conceivable that ambiguity might sometimes arise, the reader or hearer being left in doubt whether the accompanying dative is one of *agency* (Exercise XI), or whether it is an *indirect object*. As a matter of fact, however, the context usually makes the meaning clear.

VOCABULARY

circumveniō , 4, -vēnī, -ventus, <i>surround.</i>	Petrōnius , -nī, m., <i>Petronius.</i>
discessus , -ūs, m., <i>departure.</i>	salūs , -ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i> salūti
ignōscō , 3, ignōvi , ignōtum	esse , with a second dative,
est , <i>pardon, forgive.</i> See the Rule in Exercise IX.	<i>to save.</i>
mūrus , -ī, m., <i>wall.</i>	sinister , -tra, -trum, <i>left</i> (as contrasted with "right").

TRANSLATION

121. I. On¹ the departure of the leaders, Caesar was persuaded by his captains to pardon the whole army.

2. Though this matter has turned out very badly for the companies on² the right wing, not even by words must the king be injured. 3. If through the help of the Indians we should be able to find a road by which to reach that tower, the enemy would not understand how³ we had come up⁴ to their camp. 4. Though he⁵ is equally enthusiastic,⁶ there are some who prefer Cicero. 5. We were afraid that you would not be spared; for Caesar knew⁷ that you led⁸ the four hundred horsemen who had driven back the left wing.

122. 1. They will use horses, so that the enemy may not capture their children. 2. Forgive the boys; for, though they have gone into the woods to fish, at New York I shall soon have given them an opportunity to work. 3. Do not urge Caesar not to send the infantry to Capua. 4. Let us not change⁹ our¹⁰ design of waging war; for a very skillful¹¹ leader will soon be sent from London to help¹² us. 5. Do you know whether the dog and the horse are brave animals? 6. Did the right wings of the two armies advance?

123. *A Heroic End*

Once, when Caesar was trying to take¹³ a certain city, a very brave centurion clambered up¹⁴ the wall; and¹⁵ another, named Petronius, rushed forward¹⁶ with three men to the very¹⁷ gate,¹⁸ where, however, he was surrounded¹⁹ by the enemy and seriously²⁰ wounded. Seeing²¹ that he must die, Petronius shouted²² to his men, "Though I cannot myself escape, I will at any rate²³ save¹² you."²⁴ So saying,²⁵ he made a fierce attack upon the enemy, and having killed two²⁶ with his¹⁰ sword, drove the others back a little.²⁷ The opportunity for escape²⁸

being offered,²⁹ the soldiers quickly withdrew to our line; but Petronius, though he had saved his men, himself³⁰ fell fighting before³¹ the gate.

1. What case expresses this time relation?
2. *Lit., of.*
3. *i.e. by what means* (sing.).
4. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXII, and observe carefully the Law of Sequence.
5. *ille.*
6. *Lit., of equal enthusiasm.*
7. Imperfect tense.
8. *i.e. had led.*
9. *mūtō, 1.*
10. Omit.
11. *very skillful: lit., of the greatest skill.*
12. Use a dative construction.
13. *expugnō.*
14. *cōnscendō.*
15. *atque.*
16. *prōcurrō, 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum est.*
17. *ipse.*
18. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon.
19. Express *est* at the end of the sentence only.
20. *graviter.*
21. *i.e. realizing.* Begin the sentence with *quī*, omitting "Petronius" of the following clause.
22. *inquam* (see Summary of Forms, p. 382).
23. *certē.*
24. *you:* put first in the clause, with the adv. second.
25. *Lit., which* (pl.) *when he had said.*
26. Use a passive participial construction.
27. *paulum* (adv.).
28. *effugiō, 3, -fūgī.*
29. *đō.*
30. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 318.
31. *ad.*

EXERCISE XLIII

(124-126)

THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES

MODEL SENTENCES

Turris arbore altior est, The tower is higher than the tree.

Turrim colle altiorem habemus, We have a tower higher than a hill.

RULE. *When two things are compared as greater or less in degree, and the first is designated by a nominative or accusative, the other may be designated by an ablative.*

VOCABULARY

Custer, -tri, m., *Custer.* **manus, -ūs, f.,** *band (of ingenium, -ni, n., wits, in- soldiers). sight, mind.*

NOTE 1. On the declension of **ingenium**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 2. As nearly all nouns in **-us** of the fourth declension are masculine, observe with special care that **manus** is an exception to the rule.

TRANSLATION

124. 1. This route¹ is longer than that; but it is my custom² to travel always by the broader road. 2. I think that, because of his³ liking for⁴ hunting, the consul's son will remain in the country some⁵ months; for in the forests there is a great abundance⁶ of all sorts of⁷ animals. 3. Through the medium of their⁸ children they will be pardoned;⁸ for you know that Pompey has been persuaded to spare all who are willing⁹ to send their³ children to him.¹⁰ 4. Since there is no one who understands that water is more powerful than fire, let us not waste¹¹ time longer here.¹² 5. Will Curio have been informed where the cavalry have gone and¹³ why the enemy are not attacking his left wing?

125. 1. Gaius is a boy of keen¹⁴ wits; but Marcus is better than he.¹⁵ 2. Twice the leaders of the infantry have given orders to their men¹⁶ to advance to attack this

tower. 3. With great enthusiasm men¹⁷ are now trying to mount the wall, so as to have a better¹⁸ chance to wound the centurions with arrows. 4. With reference to peace¹⁹ more ambassadors²⁰ have already come; for at home their²¹ citizens have no²² food, though *we* have an abundant²³ supply of all things. 5. I shall go to Rome or to Capua to meet Caesar; for I know that his courage only²⁴ is greater than mine.²⁵ 6. If all should be persuaded to use their wits, surely²⁶ some one²⁷ would save²⁸ us.

126. *Custer's Last Fight*

Many years ago several regiments set out to drive²⁹ some Indians from their homes,³⁰ and a³¹ cavalry officer³¹ named Custer was sent ahead³² to attack the enemy. A part of his forces he³³ ordered to advance by another route,³⁴ so that he might make an assault upon the Indians from both sides³⁴ simultaneously.³⁵ Thus it happened³⁶ that when he came suddenly in sight of the enemy's camp, he had with him³⁷ only about three hundred men. Catching sight of³⁸ the little band, the Indians, who were about two thousand in number, at once burst forth from their³ camp and made a fierce attack. Our men meanwhile had dismounted,³⁹ and their³ horses, frightened by the uproar,⁴⁰ now ran away. The cavalymen kept up the fight⁴¹ bravely until their³ ammunition⁴² was gone,⁴³ and then they were all slain to a man⁴⁴ by the exultant⁴⁵ enemy.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>iter</i> . | 4. <i>Lit., of.</i> For the governing noun, see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIX. |
| 2. Translate by a verb (cf. the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note 1). | 5. <i>i.e. several</i> |
| 3. Omit. | 6. <i>i.e. supply.</i> |

7. *all sorts of: omnia.*
8. Observe that this calls for an intransitive verb.
9. Note that this clause is a part of the indirect discourse, and observe the Law of Sequence carefully.
10. Reflexive pronoun.
11. *terō*, 3, *trivī*, *trītus*.
12. *hic* (adv.).
13. *Lit.*, *or.*
14. *ācer*.
15. *ille*.
16. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XLI.
17. *quīdam*.
18. *Lit.*, *greater*.
19. *Lit.*, *with reference to (dē) suing for (petō) peace.*
20. *lēgātus*.
21. Reflexive or not?
22. Use *nihil*.
23. *Lit.*, *very great*.
24. *Lit.*, *the courage (fortitūdō) of him only* (gen. of *sōlus*).
25. Place before the comparative.
26. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
27. *aliquis*.
28. Use a dative construction.
29. *expellō*.
30. *from their homes: lit., from home* (sing.).
31. *Lit.*, *officer (praefectus, -i, m.) of cavalry*.
32. *praemittō*, 3, *-misi*, *-missus*.
33. *Lit.*, *road*.
34. *from both sides: utrimque* (adv.).
35. *simul*.
36. Consult, if necessary, the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
37. Cf. footnote 3 on Exercise III.
38. *i.e. noticing*.
39. *dēsiliō*, 4, *-silui*.
40. *i.e. noise*.
41. *pugnō* (imperfect tense).
42. *Lit.*, *weapons*.
43. *be gone: dēficiō*, 3, *-fēcī (-fectus)*; use here the perfect tense. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon, omitting the following "and."
44. *Lit.*, *to (ad) one (man)*.
45. *gestiēns*, *-entis* (partic., used as adj.).

EXERCISE XLIV

(127-128)

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Two classes of conditional sentences have already been treated, namely, Simple and Vague Future. There still remains a third class, known as Contrary to Fact — a type

of conditional sentence peculiar in that it carries with it the implication that the suppositions made are *false*. Thus we say in English :

"If the boys *were* here" (implying that they *are not* present).

"If the boys *had been* here" (implying that they *were not* present).

Observe that the first of the above illustrations has to do with what *is* not, and the second with what *was* not — a distinction which is marked by the terms *Present Contrary to Fact* and *Past Contrary to Fact*.

MODEL SENTENCES

SI nōbīs plūs pecūniae esset, non rūri essēmus, If we had more money, we should not be in the country.

SI plūs pecūniae Caesari dedisset, certiōrēs facti essētis, If he had given more money to Caesar, you would have been informed.

SI Caesar tum Rōmam vēnisset, nunc nōbīs satis pecūniae esset, If Caesar had come to Rome at that time, we should now have plenty of money.

In the last of these Model Sentences, note that the conditioning clause is *Past Contrary to Fact*, while the conclusion is *Present Contrary to Fact* — a very frequent combination.

RULE. *Present Contrary to Fact Conditional Sentences require the imperfect subjunctive, Past Contrary to Fact the pluperfect subjunctive.*

VOCABULARY

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., *sally, sortie.* spēs, -ei, F., *hope.*
regiō, -ōnis, F., *region.*

TRANSLATION

127. 1. If Caesar had been at Capua, he would have given orders to the soldiers of the left wing not to spare the slaves. 2. If this tree were taller than the other, its shadow¹ would be longer. 3. If, on his departure, Caesar had said that the townspeople must be pardoned,² they³ would now be safe. 4. If through your help I should find a scout of equal daring, the general would send him very quickly to the tower. 5. If you had remained at home, and your⁴ brother had not been sent from Rome into the country,⁵ Curio would be urging me not to remain⁶ in the city. 6. Gaius is informed⁷ that by many things this animal is very easily injured. 7. Do not pardon these companies which refused to cross the river.

128. *A Successful Maneuver*

When the fight had now gone on⁸ for six hours at⁹ the fortifications, our men would certainly¹⁰ have been defeated, if¹¹ two centurions, men of keen insight,¹² had not¹¹ run to Balbus, saying that a sudden¹³ sortie ought to be made at once. Hearing this, and thinking that that¹⁴ was the sole¹⁵ hope of escape,¹⁶ the commander gave orders to his men that, when the signal¹⁷ was given, they should rush forth by all the gates, and make a very fierce assault upon the enemy. And so, when the signal was heard, the soldiers made a sudden sortie, and¹⁸ gave the enemy no¹⁸ opportunity to realize¹⁹ what was taking place,²⁰ but on every side surrounded and killed²¹ the inhabitants of that region, who had come together with the greatest enthusiasm from all the nearest²² mountains, hoping to get possession of²³ our camp.

1. umbra.
2. Note that this calls for an intransitive verb.
3. ille.
4. How many persons are addressed?
5. *into the country*: translate in the same way as "*to the country*."
6. Observe the Law of Sequence carefully.
7. Present tense.
8. Use pugnō.
9. ad.
10. certē or profectō? (cf. the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI).
11. *if . . . not*: nisi (conj.).
12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XLIII.
13. repentinus, -a, -um.
14. The gender is determined by the predicate noun.
15. *i.e. the only*.
16. effugiō, 3, -fūgi.
17. signum. Make this a participial clause.
18. *and . . . no: lit., nor . . . any* (ūllus).
19. cōgnōscō.
20. *Lit., what (quid) was being done*.
21. These verbs may be placed before their object, so as to bring the latter nearer to the relative clause dependent upon it.
22. proximus, -a, -um. In this phrase, the word for "all" may precede the preposition.
23. *i.e. hoping that they would get possession of*.

EXERCISE XLV

(129-130)

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

Taking vocō as a model, the forms of the future imperative are as follows:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	vocātō	vocātōte	vocātor	
3d person	vocātō	vocantō	vocātor	vocantor

Turning to the Summary of Forms, learn the future imperative of all other verbs, regular and irregular, noting

that everywhere there is found the same close analogy between the forms of the third person of the present indicative and the corresponding forms of the future imperative.

MODEL SENTENCES

itō,	{ Thou shalt go.
	{ He shall go.
sequitor,	{ Thou shalt follow.
	{ He shall follow.
amantor,	They shall be loved.

NOTE. The future imperative is somewhat formal and old-fashioned; hence the rather stilted style of some of the above renderings.

VOCABULARY

absum, -esse, āfui (future partic. āfutūrus), <i>be away, be distant.</i>	Pharsālus, -ī, F., the name of a city of Greece.
Aegyptus, -ī, F., <i>Egypt.</i>	Ptolomaeus, -ī, M., <i>Ptolemy.</i>
Alexandrēa, -ae, F., <i>Alexandria</i> , the name of a city of Egypt.	respondeō, 2, -spondi, -spōnsum est, <i>reply; answer</i> (with dat. of the person spoken to): may be construed with indirect discourse.
Pēlūsium, -si, N., the name of a city of Egypt.	

TRANSLATION

129. 1. Thou shalt be king of the Gauls. 2. Each band shall come to assist. 3. Ye shall bring to the king gifts greater than these. 4. There shall be peace; for the envoys¹ have persuaded the king to spare the consuls. 5. They² shall be killed; but we have given orders that³

the children be not³ injured. 6. Hear ye, and announce what⁴ must be done; for the king's messengers will not easily be persuaded. 7. They shall conduct⁵ the envoys¹ to the river. 8. Ye shall warn those⁶ who live in the valleys. 9. There shall be safety and hope. 10. Thou shalt give ear⁷ and spare. 11. Ye shall go by the longest road. If this⁸ had always been done, we should now have no war. 12. Thou shalt ever⁹ try to make peace.

130. *Pompey's Fate*

After Pompey had been defeated at Pharsalus, he fled by ship¹⁰ to Pelusium. There¹¹ he found¹² that Ptolemy, king¹³ of Egypt, was not far¹⁴ away with an army. He therefore sent messengers to urge the king to allow him¹⁵ to go¹⁶ to Alexandria for shelter.¹⁶ But as¹⁷ Ptolemy was a boy in years,¹⁸ friends¹⁹ of his²⁰ father were helping him in the management of business;²¹ and they,²² fearing²³ that Pompey might²⁴ attempt to get possession of all²⁵ Egypt, answered the messengers graciously,²⁶ but sent back²⁷ with them two soldiers to kill Pompey. On the arrival of these,²⁸ the defeated general was persuaded to embark upon²⁹ a small ship to go³⁰ to the king; whereupon³⁰ he was promptly³¹ murdered by the soldiers. Had he chosen³² to remain upon his own³³ ship, perhaps he would have fought with Caesar again a few months later.

1. *i.e. ambassadors.*
2. *ille.*
3. *that . . . not:* not a result clause.
4. *quid.*
5. *dēducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus.*
6. Pl. of *is.*
7. *audiō.*

8. Use a relative, placing it properly in the sentence.
9. *i.e. always.*
10. Use the pl.
11. *Lit., where.*
12. *Lit., was informed.*
13. Be careful to write the correct case.

14. *not far*: *haud longē*. Place next to the verb.

15. Reflexive pronoun.

16. *go . . . for shelter*: *refugiō*, 3, -fūgi.

17. *i.e. since*.

18. *Lit., in age* (*aetās*, -ātis, F.). For syntax and word order, cf. such phrases as *numerō superior*.

19. *amicus*, -i, M.

20. Omit.

21. *Lit., in managing business* (*rēs gerō*). Express the preposition.

22. *and they*: use *quī*.

23. If translated by a *cum*-

clause, what determines the tense here?

24. Not *possum*.

25. *Lit., entire*. Note the gender of the word modified.

26. *cōmitter* (adv.).

27. *remittō*, 3, -misi, -missus

28. *i.e. board*.

29. *pervenīō*.

30. *quō factō* (abl. absol.).

31. *Lit., without delay*.

32. *i.e. if he had preferred*. Make a relative the subject of this sentence.

33. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

SUMMARY OF FORMS

NOUNS

THE FIRST OR \bar{A} -DECLENSION

mēnsa, F.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	mēnsa	mēnsae
Gen.	mēnsae	mēnsarum
Dat.	mēnsae	mēnsis
Acc.	mēnsam	mēnsas
Abl.	mēnsā	mēnsis

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

hortus, M. puer, M. ager, M. vir, M. mālum, N.

SINGULAR

Nom.	hortus	puer	ager	vir	mālum
Gen.	horti	pueri	agri	virī	māli
Dat.	hortō	puerō	agrō	virō	mālō
Acc.	hortum	puerum	agrum	virum	mālum
Abl.	hortō	puerō	agrō	virō	mālō

PLURAL

Nom.	horti	pueri	agri	virī	māla
Gen.	hortōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	mālōrum
Dat.	hortis	pueris	agris	viris	mālis
Acc.	hortōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	māla
Abl.	hortis	pueris	agris	viris	mālis

NOTE 1. Masculines in -us have, in the singular, a special vocative form, as **Mārce**, **coque**, etc. By exception, **filius** and proper names in -ius are shortened in this case, *e.g.* **filī**, **Standī'sī**, etc.

NOTE 2. As in the vocative singular, **filius** is shortened also in the genitive singular to **filī**. This same shortening occurs in the

genitive singular of all proper names in *-ius* and *-ium*, and of a few common nouns in *-ium*, *e.g.* *Pompēi*, *Londini*, *ingēni*, etc.; but the *locative* is not thus abbreviated (*e.g.* *Londinii*, "at London").

NOTE 3. *Humus*, *-i*, *F.*, forms the locative *humī*, "on the ground."

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Consonant Stems

	<i>flōs</i> , M.	<i>arbor</i> , F.	<i>litus</i> , N.
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	<i>flōs</i>	<i>arbor</i>	<i>litus</i>
Gen.	<i>flōris</i>	<i>arboris</i>	<i>litoris</i>
Dat.	<i>flōrī</i>	<i>arborī</i>	<i>litorī</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrem</i>	<i>arborem</i>	<i>litus</i>
Abl.	<i>flōre</i>	<i>arbore</i>	<i>litore</i>
		PLURAL	
Nom.	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litora</i>
Gen.	<i>flōrum</i>	<i>arborum</i>	<i>litorum</i>
Dat.	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litoribus</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litora</i>
Abl.	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litoribus</i>

NOTE. *Rūs*, *rūris*, N., has the locative *rūrī*, "in the country."

I-Stems

	<i>ignis</i> , M.	<i>turris</i> , F.	<i>vallēs</i> , F.	<i>mare</i> , N.	<i>animal</i> , N
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>vallēs</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>animal</i>
Gen.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>vallis</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>animālis</i>
Dat.	<i>ignī</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>valli</i>	<i>mari</i>	<i>animāli</i>
Acc.	<i>ignem</i>	<i>turrim</i>	<i>vallem</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>animal</i>
		<i>turrem</i>			
Abl.	<i>ignī</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>valle</i>	<i>mari</i>	<i>animāli</i>
	<i>igne</i>	<i>turre</i>			

	PLURAL				
Nom.	ignēs	turrēs	vallēs	maria	animālia
Gen.	ignium	turrium	vallium	—	animālium
Dat.	ignibus	turribus	vallibus	—	animālibus
Acc.	ignīs	turrīs	vallis	maria	animālia
	ignēs	turrēs	vallēs		
Abl.	ignibus	turribus	vallibus	—	animālibus

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

	exercitus, M.		cornū, N.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	exercitui	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

NOTE. The few feminines of this declension follow the inflection of *exercitus*.

THE FIFTH OR Ē-DECLENSION

	diēs, M. (and F.)		rēs, F.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
Dat.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

NOTE 1. In the genitive and dative singular of nouns of this class, the characteristic ē is retained only when preceded by a vowel, as in *diēi* (contrast *rēi* and *spēi*).

NOTE 2. *Diēs* is always masculine in the plural, and usually so in the singular.

IRREGULAR NOUNS

	deus, M.	bōs, M. and F.	domus, F.	vis, F.
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	deus	bōs	domus	vis
Gen.	dī	bovis	domūs	—
Dat.	deō	bovī	domui	—
			domō	
Acc.	deum	bovem	domum	vim
Abl.	deō	bove	domō	vi
			domū	
	PLURAL			
Nom.	dī dī	bovēs	domūs	virēs
Gen.	deōrum deum	bovum bovm	domuum domōrum	virium
Dat.	deīs dīs	būbus bōbus	domibus	viribus
Acc.	deōs dīs	bovēs	domōs domūs	virīs virēs
Abl.	deīs dīs dis	būbus bōbus	domibus	viribus

NOTE. Domus forms the locative domi, "at home."

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, -a, -um

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
1. bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
2. bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
3. bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
4. bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
5. bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, -era, -erum

1. miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
2. miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
3. miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
4. miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	miserā
5. miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

piger, -gra, -grum

1. piger	pigra	pigrum	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
2. pigrī	pigrae	pigrī	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
3. pigrō	pigrae	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
4. pigrum	pigram	pigrum	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
5. pigrō	pigrā	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

THIRD DECLENSION

Consonant Stems

The Present Participle

vocāns

1. vocāns	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
2. vocantis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantiū	vocantium
3. vocantī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
4. vocantem	vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
5. vocante	vocante	vocante	vocantis	vocantis	vocantibus

*The Comparative***altior, -ior, -ius**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	altior	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōri	altiōri	altiōri	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus

plūs

Nom.	—	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	—	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	—	—	—	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	—	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
				plūris	plūris	
Abl.	—	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus

REMARK. The few singular forms of **plūs** are restricted to noun use.

NOTE. **Complūrēs** is declined in the same way as the plural of **plūs**, excepting that the nominative and accusative neuter are sometimes written **complūria**.

Mixed Stems**(One Termination)****audāx**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audāci	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audācem	audāx	audācis	audācis	audācia
				audācēs	audācēs	
Abl.	audāci	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

I-Stems

(Two Terminations)

fortis (-is), -e

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	forti	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	fortem	forte	fortiā	fortiā	fortia
Abl.	forti	forti	forti	fortēs	fortēs	fortibus

(Three Terminations)

acer, ācris, ācre

Nom.	acer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris	ācris	ācria
Abl.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācribus

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
altus	altior	altissimus	bonus	mellior	optimus
amāns	amantior	amantissimus	(inferus)	inferior	infimus
					imus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus	magnus	maior	maximus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus	malus	peior	pessimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus	multus	plūs (<i>noun</i>)	plūrimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus	parvus	minor	minimus
similis	similior	simillimus	—	superior	suprēmus
					summus

NOTE 1. Whether an adjective in *-er* retains the *e* in the comparative or not, is indicated by the genitive of the positive; thus, gen. *miseri*, compar. *miserior*, but gen. *ācri*, compar. *ācrior*.

NOTE 2. Adjectives with superlative in *-limus* are: *similis*, *dissimilis*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *gracilis*, and *humilis*.

NOTE 3. Both adjectives and adverbs may be compared by prefixing the adverbs *magis* and *maximē* to the positive. This is the only method of comparison possible for adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel (e.g. *idōneus*, *magis idōneus*, *maximē idōneus*).

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
<i>longē</i>	<i>longius</i>	<i>longissimē</i>	<i>diū</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>tūtō</i>	<i>tūtius</i>	<i>tūtissimē</i>	<i>libenter</i>	<i>libentius</i>	<i>libentissimē</i>
<i>audācter</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>	—	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>fortiter</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>	<i>mātūrē</i>	<i>mātūrius</i>	<i>mātūrrimē</i>
<i>ācritē</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>	—	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>celeriter</i>	<i>celerius</i>	<i>celerrimē</i>	<i>prope</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>			

NUMERALS

ūnus, -a, -um

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnae</i>	<i>ūna</i>
Gen.	<i>ūnūs</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>
Acc.	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūna</i>
Abl.	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>

NOTE. Eight other adjectives exhibit, in the genitive and dative singular, the same irregularity as *ūnus*. They are: *alius*, *alter* (gen. *alterius*); *ūllus*, *nūllus*; *uter* (*-tra, -trum*), *neuter* (*-tra, -trum*); *sōlus*, and *tōtus*. Of these eight, *alius* has additional

ularities: its neuter singular, nominative and accusative, is *id*; and in the genitive singular it borrows *alterius* from *alter*.

duo, duae, duo

trēs, trēs, tria

PLURAL			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
n. duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
1. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
2. duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
duōs			tris	tris	
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

NOTE. The declension of *ambō* follows that of *duo*, excepting that the final vowel of the form *ambō* is everywhere long.

LIST OF NUMERALS

CARDINAL	ORDINAL
1. <i>ūnus</i>	<i>prīmus</i>
2. <i>duo</i>	<i>secundus</i> or <i>alter</i>
3. <i>trēs</i>	<i>tertius</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>
5. <i>quinque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	<i>octāvus</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>
11. <i>undecim</i>	<i>ūndecimus</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>
15. <i>quindecim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>
17. <i>septendecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>
18. <i>duodēviginti</i>	<i>duodēvicēsimus</i>
19. <i>ūndēviginti</i>	<i>ūndēvicēsimus</i>
20. <i>viginti</i>	<i>vicēsimus</i>

21. viginti unus	vicēsimus primus
ūnus et viginti	ūnus et vicēsimus
22. viginti duo	vicēsimus secundus
duo et viginti	alter et vicēsimus
28. duodētrigintā	duodētricēsimus
29. ūndētrigintā	ūndētricēsimus
30. trigintā	tricēsimus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
99. ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsimus
100. centum	centēsimus
101. centum unus	centēsimus primus
centum et unus	centēsimus et primus
200. ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300. trecenti, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400. quadringenti, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500. quingenti, -ae, -a	quingentēsimus
600. sescenti, -ae, -a	sescentēsimus
700. septingenti, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
800. octingenti, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900. nōngenti, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1000. mille (pl. milia, -ium, N.)	millēsimus

NOTE. Observe that, from 18 to 90, the two numerals preceding each of the tens are formed by subtraction, *e.g.* **duodētrigintā** "twenty-eight" (*lit.* "two from thirty"), **ūndēquadrāgintā**, "thirteen" (*lit.* "one from forty"), etc. Note too that, from 21 to 98, in numerals represented by combinations (*e.g.* **trigintā duo** **duo et trigintā**), the conjunction *et* is used whenever the small numeral is put first (*cf.* English "two *and* thirty").

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

First Person			Second Person	
	ego		tū	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	mei	nostrum	tui	vestrum
		nostrī		vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Third Person				Third Person Reflexive
is, ea, id				sui (gen.)
SINGULAR				
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
Nom.	is	ea	id	—
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	sui
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	sibi
Acc.	eum	eam	id	sē sēsē
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	sē sēsē

	PLURAL			
Nom.	ei, ii, ī	eae	ea	—
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	sui
Dat.	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	sibi
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	sē
				sēsē
Abl.	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	sē
				sēsē

NOTE 1. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tū* serve as the reflexive of the first and second persons.

NOTE 2. The personal pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id* is used also as an adjective meaning "this," or "that."

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, haec, hoc**ille, illa, illud**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

NOTE. The demonstrative pronoun *iste*, *ista*, *istud* is declined in the same way as *ille*.

INTENSIVE

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

OF IDENTITY

idem, eadem, idem

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	idem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eidem	eidem	eidem
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādē	eōdem

PLURAL						
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa	{ eadem eadem eadem	eadem	eadem
Gen.	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis	{ eisdem iisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem iisdem
Acc.	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis	{ eisdem iisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem iisdem

INTERROGATIVE

qui (quis), quae, quod (quid)

SINGULAR						
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	qui quis	quae	quod quid	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod quid	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE. This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, *quis* replaces *qui* (singular), *quid* replaces *quod*, and the feminine is lacking throughout.

RELATIVE

qui, quae, quod

The forms of this pronoun are identical with the forms of the interrogative pronoun given just above, excepting that *quis* and *quid* are lacking.

INDEFINITE

qui (quis), qua, quod (quid)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quī quis	qua	quod quid	quī	quae	qua
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod quid	quōs	quās	qua
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE. This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, *quis* replaces *quī* (singular), *quid* replaces *quod*, and the feminine is lacking throughout.

aliqui (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod (aliquid)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	aliquī aliquis	aliqua	aliquod aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

NOTE. The adjective and noun use of this pronoun follows the same rule as that for indefinite *quī (quis)* immediately preceding.

quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque)

Except that it has but one form in the nominative singular masculine, this pronoun is inflected exactly as *interrogative quī (quis)*. When it is used as a noun, the feminine is lacking throughout, and *quidque* (spelled also *quicque*) replaces *quodque*.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam quisquam, —, quicquam
(quiddam)

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quoddam quiddam	quisquam	quicquam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam quiddam	quemquam	quicquam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quōquam	quōquam

PLURAL

Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quaedam	No plural
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam	
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quāsdam	
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	

NOTE 1. The pronoun **quidam** may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, **quiddam** replaces **quoddam**.

NOTE 2. **Quisquam** is seldom used excepting as a noun. The neuter form **quicquam** represents another spelling of **quidquam**.

INDEFINITE RELATIVE

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
whoever, whatever, whatsoever

The declension of this pronoun is the same as that of the relative **qui**, *i.e.* it has no **quis** or **quid** forms.

REGULAR VERBS

THE FIRST OR \bar{A} -CONJUGATION**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	vocō	vocem	vocor	vocer	
	vocās	vocēs	vocāris	vocēris	
			vocāre	vocēre	
	vocat	vocet	vocātur	vocētur	
	vocāmus	vocēmus	vocāmur	vocēmur	
	vocātis	vocētis	vocāmini	vocēmini	
Im- perfect	vocant	vocent	vocantur	vocentur	
	vocābam	vocārem	vocābar	vocārer	
	vocābās	vocārēs	vocābāris	vocārēris	
			vocābāre	vocārēre	
	vocābat	vocāret	vocābātur	vocārētur	
	vocābāmus	vocārēmus	vocābāmur	vocārēmur	
Future	vocābātis	vocārētis	vocābāmini	vocārēmini	
	vocābant	vocārent	vocābantur	vocārentur	
	vocābō		vocābor		
	vocābis		vocāberis		
			vocābere		
	vocābit		vocābitur		
Perfect	vocābimus		vocābimur		
	vocābitis		vocābimini		
	vocābunt		vocābuntur		
	vocāvī	vocāverim	vocātus sum	vocātus sim	
	vocāvisti	vocāveris	vocātus es	vocātus sis	
	vocāvit	vocāverit	vocātus est	vocātus sit	
Perfect	vocāvimus	vocāverimus	vocāti sumus	vocāti simus	
	vocāvistis	vocāveritis	vocāti estis	vocāti sitis	
	vocāverunt	vocāverint	vocāti sunt	vocāti sint	
	vocāvère				

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect		vocāveram	vocāvissē	vocātus eram	vocātus essem
		vocāverās	vocāvissēs	vocātus erās	vocātus essēs
		vocāverat	vocāvisset	vocātus erat	vocātus esset
		vocāverāmus	vocāvissēmus	vocātī erāmus	vocātī essēmus
		vocāverātis	vocāvissētis	vocātī erātis	vocātī essētis
		vocāverant	vocāvissent	vocātī erant	vocātī essent
Future Perfect		vocāverō		vocātus erō	
		vocāveris		vocātus eris	
		vocāverit		vocātus erit	
		vocāverimus		vocātī erimus	
		vocāveritis		vocātī eritis	
		vocāverint		vocātī erunt	
IMPERATIVE					
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		vocā	vocāte	vocāre	vocāmini
Future		vocāt	vocātōte	vocātor	
		vocātō	vocantō	vocātor	vocantor
PARTICIPLE					
Present		vocāns			
Perfect				vocātus, -a, -um	
Future		vocātūrus, -a, -um			
INFINITIVE					
Present		vocāre		vocārī	
Perfect		vocāvisse		vocātus esse	
Future		vocātūrus esse		vocātum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		vocandī		vocandus, -a, -um	
Dat.		vocandō			
Acc.		vocandum			
Abl.		vocandō			
SUPINE					
vocātum, vocātū					

THE SECOND OR \bar{E} -CONJUGATION**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		habeō	habeam	habeor	habear
		habēs	habeās	habēris	habeāris
		habet	habeat	habētur	habeātur
		habēmus	habeāmus	habēmur	habeāmur
		habētis	habeātis	habēmini	habeāmini
		habent	habeant	habentur	habeantur
Im- perfect		habēbam	habērem	habēbar	habērer
		habēbās	habērēs	habēbāris	habērēris
		habēbat	habēret	habēbātur	habērētur
		habēbāmus	habērēmus	habēbāmur	habērēmur
		habēbātis	habērētis	habēbāmini	habērēmini
		habēbant	habērent	habēbantur	habērentur
Future		habēbō		habēbor	
		habēbis		habēberis	
		habēbit		habēbere	
		habēbimus		habēbimur	
		habēbitis		habēbimini	
		habēbunt		habēbuntur	
Perfect		habuī	habuerim	habitus sum	habitus sim
		habuisti	habueris	habitus es	habitus sis
		habuit	habuerit	habitus est	habitus sit
		habuimus	habuerimus	habiti sumus	habiti simus
		habuistis	habueritis	habiti estis	habiti sitis
		habuerunt	habuerint	habiti sunt	habiti sint
		habuere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	habueram	habuissem	habitus eram	habitus essem
		habuerās	habuissēs	habitus erās	habitus esset
		habuerat	habuisset	habitus erat	habitus esset
	{	habuerāmus	habuissēmus	habiti erāmus	habiti essemus
		habuerātis	habuissētis	habiti erātis	habiti essētis
		habuerant	habuissent	habiti erant	habiti essent
Future Perfect	{	habuerō		habitus erō	
		habueris		habitus eris	
		habuerit		habitus erit	
	{	habuerimus		habiti erimus	
		habueritis		habiti eritis	
		habuerint		habiti erunt	

IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		habē	habēte	habēre	habēmini
Future	{	habētō	habētōte	habētor	
	{	habētō	habentō	habētor	habentor

PARTICIPLE

Present	habēns	
Perfect		habitus, -a, -um
Future	habitūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	habēre	habēri
Perfect	habuisse	habitus esse
Future	habitūrus esse	habitum iri

		GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.		habendī	habendus, -a, -um
Dat.		habendō	
Acc.		habendum	
Abl.		habendō	

SUPINE

habitum, habitū

THE THIRD OR Ē-CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, misi, missus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	mittō	mittam	mittor	mittar
		mittis	mittās	mitteris	mittāris
		mittit	mittat	mittere	mittāre
	{	mittunt	mittant	mittitur	mittātur
		mittimus	mittāmus	mittimur	mittāmur
		mittitis	mittātis	mittimini	mittāmini
Im- perfect	{	mittēbam	mitterem	mittēbar	mitterer
		mittēbās	mitterēs	mittēbāris	mitterēris
		mittēbat	mitteret	mittēbātur	mitterētur
	{	mittēbamus	mitterēmus	mittēbāmur	mitterēmur
		mittēbātis	mitterētis	mittēbāmini	mitterēmini
		mittēbant	mitterent	mittēbantur	mitterentur
Future	{	mittam		mittar	
		mittēs		mittēris	
		mittet		mittēre	
	{	mittent		mittētur	
		mittēmus		mittēmur	
		mittētis		mittēmini	
Perfect	{	misi	miserim	missus sum	missus sim
		misiſti	miseris	missus es	missus sis
		misiſit	miserit	missus est	missus sit
	{	misiſimus	miserimus	missi sumus	missi simus
		misiſtis	miseritis	missi estis	missi sitis
		misiſerunt	miserint	missi sunt	missi sint
		misiſere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	miseram	mīsissem	missus eram	missus essem
		miserās	mīsisseās	missus erās	missus esseās
		miserat	mīsisset	missus erat	missus esset
	{	miserāmus	mīsisseēmus	missi erāmus	missi esseēmus
		miserātis	mīsisseētis	missi erātis	missi esseētis
		miserant	mīsisserant	missi erant	missi essent
Future Perfect	{	miserō		missus erō	
		miseris		missus eris	
		miserit		missus erit	
	{	miserimus		missi erimus	
		miseritis		missi eritis	
		miserint		missi erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	mitte	mittite	mittere	mittimini
Future	{ mittitō	mittitōte	mittitor	
	{ mittitō	mittuntō	mittitor	mittuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	mittēns	
Perfect		missus, -a, -um
Future	missūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	mittere	mitti
Perfect	mīsisse	missus esse
Future	missūrus esse	missum iri

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	mittendī	mittendus, -a, -um
Dat.	mittendō	
Acc.	mittendum	
Abi.	mittendō	

SUPINE

missum, missū

THE THIRD OR E-CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, misi, missus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		mittō	mittam	mittor	mittar
		mittis	mittās	mitteris	mittāris
				mittere	mittāre
		mittit	mittat	mittitur	mittātur
		mittimus	mittāmus	mittimur	mittāmur
		mittitis	mittātis	mittimini	mittāmini
Im- perfect		mittunt	mittant	mittuntur	mittantur
		mittēbam	mitterem	mittēbar	mitterer
		mittēbās	mitterēs	mittēbāris	mitterēris
				mittēbāre	mitterēre
		mittēbat	mitteret	mittēbātur	mitterētur
		mittēbāmus	mitterēmus	mittēbāmur	mitterēmur
Future		mittēbātis	mitterētis	mittēbāmini	mitterēmini
		mittēbant	mitterent	mittēbantur	mitterentur
		mittam		mittar	
		mittēs		mittēris	
				mittēre	
		mittet		mittētur	
Perfect		mittēmus		mittēmur	
		mittētis		mittēmini	
		mittent		mittentur	
		misi	miserim	missus sum	missus sim
		misiſti	miseris	missus es	missus sis
		misiſit	miserit	missus est	missus sit
Perfect		misiſimus	miserimus	missi sumus	missi simus
		misiſtis	miseritis	missi estis	missi sitis
		misiſerunt	miserint	missi sunt	missi sint
		misiſere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	miseram	miserem	missus eram	missus essem
		miserās	miserēs	missus erās	missus esēs
		miserat	miseret	missus erat	missus esset
	{	miserāmus	miseremus	missi erāmus	missi essemus
		miserātis	miserētis	missi erātis	missi esētis
		miserant	miserent	missi erant	missi essent
Future Perfect	{	miserō		missus erō	
		miseris		missus eris	
		miserit		missus erit	
	{	miserimus		missi erimus	
		miseritis		missi eritis	
		miserint		missi erunt	
IMPERATIVE					
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
Present		mitte	mittite	mittere	mittimini
Future	{	mittitō	mittitōte	mittitor	
		mittitō	mittuntō	mittitor	mittuntor
PARTICIPLE					
Present		mittēns			
Perfect				missus, -a, -um	
Future		missūrus, -a, -um			
INFINITIVE					
Present		mittere		mitti	
Perfect		miserisse		missus esse	
Future		missūrus esse		missum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		mittendī		mittendus, -a, -um	
Dat.		mittendō			
Acc.		mittendum			
Abi.		mittendō			
SUPINE					
missum, missū					

THE THIRD OR Ē-CONJUGATION (-iō VERBS)

rapīō, rapere, rapui, raptus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	rapīō	rapiam	rapior	rapiar
		rapis	apiās	raperis	apiāris
		rapit	apiat	rapere	apiāre
	{	rapitur	apiuntur	apiātur	apiātur
		rapimus	apiāmus	rapimur	apiāmur
		rapitis	apiātis	rapimini	apiāmini
		apiunt	apiant	apiuntur	apiantur
Im- perfect	{	rapīebam	raperem	rapīebar	raperer
		rapīebās	raperēs	rapīebāris	raperēris
		rapīebat	raperet	rapīebāre	raperēre
	{	rapīebatur	raperentur	rapīebātur	raperētur
		rapīebāmus	raperēmus	rapīebāmur	raperēmur
		rapīebātis	raperētis	rapīebāmini	raperēmini
		rapīebant	raperent	rapīebantur	raperentur
Future	{	rapiam		rapiar	
		apiēs		apiēris	
		apiet		apiēre	
	{	apietur		apiētur	
		apiēmus		apiēmur	
		apiētis		apiēmini	
Perfect	{	apient		apientur	
		rapui	rapuerim	raptus sum	raptus sim
		rapuisti	rapueris	raptus es	raptus sis
	{	rapuit	rapuerit	raptus est	raptus sit
		rapuimus	rapuerimus	rapti sumus	rapti simus
		rapuistis	rapueritis	rapti estis	rapti sitis
		rapuerunt	rapuerint	rapti sunt	rapti sint
	{	rapuere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	rapueram	rapuissem	raptus eram	raptus essem
		rapuerās	rapuissēs	raptus erās	raptus essēs
		rapuerat	rapuisset	raptus erat	raptus esset
	{	rapuerāmus	rapuissēmus	rapti erāmus	rapti essemus
		rapuerātis	rapuissētis	rapti erātis	rapti essētis
		rapuerant	rapuissent	rapti erant	rapti essent
Future Perfect	{	rapuerō		raptus erō	
		rapueris		raptus eris	
		rapuerit		raptus erit	
	{	rapuerimus		rapti erimus	
		rapueritis		rapti eritis	
		rapuerint		rapti erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	rape	rapite	rapere	rapimini
Future	{ rapitō	rapitōte	rapitor	
	{ rapitō	rapiantō	rapitor	rapiantor

PARTICIPLE

Present	rapiens	
Perfect		raptus, -a, -um
Future	rapturus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	rapere	rapī
Perfect	rapuisse	raptus esse
Future	rapturus esse	raptum iri

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen.	rapienti	raplendus, -a, -um
Dat.	rapientō	
Acc.	rapientum	
Abl.	rapientō	

SUPINE

raptum, raptū

THE FOURTH OR I-CONJUGATION

audiō, audire, audiui, auditus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
		audis	audias	audiris	audiāris
		audit	audiat	audire	audiāre
	{	auditis	audiant	audītur	audiātur
		audimus	audiamus		
		auditis	audiat		
Im- perfect	{	audire	audiamur	audīmur	audiāmur
		auditis	audiamini	audīmini	audiāmini
		audiant	audiantur	audīuntur	audiāntur
	{	audirebam	audirem	audirebar	audirer
		audirebās	audirēs	audirebāris	audirēris
		audirebat	audiret	audirebāre	audirēre
Future	{	audirebatur	audireretur	audirebātur	audireretur
		audirebāmus	audireremus	audirebāmur	audireremur
		audirebātis	audirerētis	audirebāmini	audirerēmini
	{	audirebant	audirent	audirebantur	audirentur
		audiam		audiar	
		audies		audieris	
Perfect	{	audiet		audiere	
		audietis		audierit	
		audient		audierint	
	{	audierim	audierim	auditus sum	auditus sim
		audieris	audieris	auditus es	auditus sis
		audierit	audierit	auditus est	auditus sit
Perfect	{	audierimus	audierimus	auditi sumus	auditi simus
		audieritis	audieritis	auditi estis	auditi sitis
		audierint	audierint	auditi sunt	auditi sint
		audierunt	audierunt		

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	audiveram	audivissem	auditus eram	auditus essem
		audiverās	audivissēs	auditus erās	auditus essēs
		audiverat	audivisset	auditus erat	auditus esset
	{	audiverāmus	audivissēmus	auditi erāmus	auditi essemus
		audiverātis	audivissētis	auditi erātis	auditi essētis
		audiverant	audivissent	auditi erant	auditi essent
Future Perfect	{	audiverō		auditus erō	
		audiveris		auditus eris	
		audiverit		auditus erit	
	{	audiverimus		auditi erimus	
		audiveritis		auditi eritis	
		audiverint		auditi erunt	

		IMPERATIVE			
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		audi	audite	audire	audimini
Future	{	audītō	audītōte	auditor	
	{	audītō	audiuntō	auditor	audiantur

		PARTICIPLE			
Present		audiēns			
Perfect				auditus, -a, -um	
Future		audītūrus, -a, -um			

		INFINITIVE			
Present		audire		audiri	
Perfect		audivisse		auditus esse	
Future		audītūrus esse		auditum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		audiendī		audiendus, -a, -um	
Dat.		audiendō			
Acc.		audiendum			
Abi.		audiendō			

SUPINE
auditum, audītū

DEPONENTS

As a verb of each conjugation has already been given in full, the corresponding deponents are here presented largely in synopsis.

	I		II	
	moror, morārī morātus sum		polliceor, pollicēri pollicitus sum	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	moror	morer	polliceor	pollicear
Imperf.	morābar	morārer	pollicēbar	pollicērer
Future	morābor		pollicēbor	
Perfect	morātus sum	morātus sim	pollicitus sum	pollicitus sim
Pluperf.	morātus eram	morātus essem	pollicitus eram	pollicitus essem
Fut. Perf.	morātus erō		pollicitus erō	
IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	morāre	morāmini	pollicēre	pollicēmini
Future	morātor		pollicētor	
	morātor	morantor	pollicētor	pollicentor
PARTICIPLE				
Present	morāns		pollicēns	
Perfect	morātus, -a, -um		pollicitus, -a, -um	
Future	morātūrus, -a, -um		pollicitūrus, -a, -um	
INFINITIVE				
Present	morārī		pollicēri	
Perfect	morātus esse		pollicitus esse	
Future	morātūrus esse		pollicitūrus esse	
	GERUND	GERUNDIVE	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	morandī	morand(us, -a), -um	pollicendī	pollicendus, -a, -um
Dat.	morandō		pollicendō	
Acc.	morandum		pollicendum	
Abl.	morandō		pollicendō	
SUPINE				
	morātum, morātū		pollicitum, pollicitū	

III

IIIa

**proficiscor, proficisci
profectus sum**

**patior, pati
passus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	proficiscor	proficiscar	patior	patiar
Imperf.	proficiscēbar	proficiscerer	patiēbar	paterer
Future	proficiscar		patiar	
Perfect	profectus sum	profectus sim	passus sum	passus sim
Pluperf.	profectus eram	profectus essem	passus eram	passus essem
Fut. Perf.	profectus erō		passus erō	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	proficiscere	proficiscimini	patere	patimini
Future	{ proficiscitor proficiscitor	proficiscuntor	patitor	patiuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	proficiscēns	patiēns
Perfect	profectus, -a, -um	passus, -a, -um
Future	profectūrus, -a, -um	passūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE

Present	proficisci	pati
Perfect	profectus esse	passus esse
Future	profectūrus esse	passūrus esse

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	proficiscendī	proficiscend[us, -a]	patiendī	patiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	proficiscendō	-um	patiendō	
Acc.	proficiscendum		patiendum	
Abl.	proficiscendō		patiendō	

SUPINE

profectum, profectū	passum, passū
---------------------	---------------

IV

adorior, adoriri, adortus sum¹

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	adorior	adoriar
Imperfect	adoriēbar	adorirer
Future	adoriar	
Perfect	adortus sum	adortus sim
Pluperfect	adortus eram	adortus essem
Future Perfect	adortus erō	
	IMPERATIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	adorire	adorimini
Future	{ adoritor adoritor	adoriantor
	PARTICIPLE	
Present	adoriēns	
Perfect	adortus, -a, -um	
Future	adorturus, -a, -um	
	INFINITIVE	
Present	adoriri	
Perfect	adortus esse	
Future	adorturus esse	
	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	adoriendi	adoriendus, -a, -um
Dat.	adoriendō	
Acc.	adoriendum	
Abl	adoriendō	
	SUPINE	
	adortum, adortū	

SEMI-DEPONENTS

audeō, 2, ausus sum, dare, venture. **gaudeō, 2, gāvissus sum, rejoice.**
fidē, 3, fisis sum, trust. **soleō, 2, solitus sum, be accustomed.**

¹ On the analogy of audiō, it might be expected that the perfect participle of deponents of the fourth conjugation would end in -itus; but the commonest deponents of this conjugation take a different form in the perfect passive participle.

IRREGULAR VERBS

		sum, esse, fui		possum, posse, potui	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	sum	sim	possum	possim
		es	sis	potes	possis
		est	sit	potest	possit
	{	sumus	simus	possumus	possimus
		estis	sitis	potestis	possitis
		sunt	sint	possunt	possint
Im- perfect	{	eram	essem (forem)	poteram	possem
		erās	essēs (forēs)	poterās	poscēs
		erat	esset (foret)	poterat	posset
	{	erāmus	essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
		erātis	essētis	poterātis	possētis
		erant	essent (forent)	poterant	possent
Future	{	erō		poterō	
		eris		poteris	
		erit		poterit	
	{	erimus		poterimus	
		eritis		poteritis	
		erunt		poterunt	

Perfect tenses regular.

Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	es	este
Future	{ estō	estōte
	{ estō	suntō

PARTICIPLE

Future	futūrus, -a, -um
--------	------------------

INFINITIVE

Present	esse	posse
Perfect	fuisse	potuisse
Future	futūrus esse, fore	

NOTE. Of the compounds of **sum**, **prōsum** ("avail") exhibits no peculiarities, excepting that, before a vowel, **prō-** everywhere becomes **prōd-**, *e.g.* **prōdesse**, **prōdessem**, etc. **Præsum**, another compound, has the present participle **præsens**, **præsentia**, though **sum** itself lacks the corresponding form.

		eō, ire, ii, itum est		volō, velle, volui	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	eō	eam	volō	velim
		is	eās	vis	velis
		it	eat	vult	velit
	{	imus	eāmus	volumus	velimus
		itis	eātis	vultis	velitis
		eunt	eant	volunt	velint
Im- perfect	{	ibam	īrem	volēbam	vellem
		ibās	īrēs	volēbās	vellēs
		ibat	īret	volēbat	vellet
	{	ibāmus	īrēmus	volēbāmus	vellēmus
		ibātis	īrētis	volēbātis	vellētis
		ibant	īrent	volēbant	vellent
Future	{	ibo		volam	
		ibis		volēs	
		ibit		volet	
	{	ibimus		volēmus	
		ibitis		volētis	
		ibunt		volent	

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Perfect	{ iī	ierim, etc.	voluī, etc.	voluerim, etc.
	{ iētī			
	{ iīt			
	{ iīmus			
	{ iētīe			
	{ iērunť			
	{ iēre			
Pluperf.	ieram, etc.	īsem, etc.	volueram, etc.	voluissem, etc.
Fut. Perf.	ierō, etc.		voluerō, etc.	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	ī	ite
Future	{ itō	itōte
	{ itō	euntō

PARTICIPLE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	iēns, gen. euntis	volēns
Perfect	it(us, -a), -um	
Future	itūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	īre	vellē
Perfect	īsse	voluisse
Future	itūrus esse	

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	eundi	eund(us, -a), -um
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	
Abl.	eundō	

		mālō, mälle, mālui		nōlō, nōlle, nōlui	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	mālō	mālim	nōlō	nōlim
		māvis	mālīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs
		māvult	mālit	nōn vult	nōlit
	{	mālumus	mālimus	nōlumus	nōlimus
		māvultis	mālītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
		mālunt	mālint	nōlunt	nōlint
Imperfect	{	mālēbam	māllem	nōlēbam	nōllem
		mālēbās	mālles	nōlēbās	nōlles
		mālēbat	māllet	nōlēbat	nōllet
	{	mālēbāmus	māllemus	nōlēbāmus	nōllemus
		mālēbātis	mālletis	nōlēbātis	nōlletis
		mālēbant	māllet	nōlēbant	nōllet
Future	{	[mālam]		[nōlam]	
		mālēs		nōlēs	
		mālet		nōlet	
	{	mālēmus		nōlēmus	
		mālētis		nōlētis	
		mālent		nōlent	
Perfect tenses regular.			Perfect tenses regular.		

IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		nōli	nōlīte
Future		{ nōlitō nōlitō	{ nōlitōte nōluntō

PARTICIPLE

Present	nōlēns
---------	--------

INFINITIVE

Present	mälle	nōlle
Perfect	māluisse	nōluisse

dō, dare, dedi, datus

This verb deviates from the first conjugation principally in that the **a** of its stem is regularly short in situations where the first conjugation requires **ā**. The only exceptions are found in the forms **dās, dā, and dāns**.

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		dō	dēm	—	—
		dās	dēs	dāris	dēris
		dare		dēre	
		datur		dētur	
		dāmus	dēmus	dāmur	—
Imperfect		dātis	dētis	dāmini	dēmini
		dant	dent	dantur	dentur
		dabam	darem	dabar	darer
		dabās	darēs	dabāris	darēris
		dabāre		darēre	
Future		dabāt	daret	dabātur	darētur
		dabāmus	darēmus	dabāmur	darēmur
		dabātis	darētis	dabāmini	darēmini
		dabant	darent	dabantur	darentur
		dabō		dabor	
Future		dabis		daberis	
		dabit		dabere	
		dabitur		dabitur	
		dabimus		dabimur	
		dabitis		dabimini	
		dabunt		dabuntur	

Perfect tenses regular (excepting for the **ā** of **datus**).

		IMPERATIVE			
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	dā		date	dare	dāmini
Future	datō		datōte	dator	
	datō		dantō	dator	dantor

PARTICIPLE

Present	dāns	
Perfect		datus, -a, -um
Future	datūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	dare	dari
Perfect	dedisse	datus esse
Future	datūrus esse	datum iri
	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	dandī	dandus, -a, -um
Dat.	dandō	
Acc.	dandum	
Abl.	dandō	

SUPINE

datum, datū

edō, ēsse (edere), ēdī, ēsus

The peculiarities of *edō* are due to the fact that its regular forms are often contracted (as the infinitive above). Otherwise the verb conforms to the third conjugation, and only so much of it is here given as is needed to display the contracted forms.

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	edō	edam	edor	edar
	ēs	edās	ederis	edāris
	edit		edere	edāre
	ēst	edat	ēstur	edātur
	editur		editur	
	edimus	edāmus	edimur	edāmur
	ēstis	edātis	edimini	edāmini
	editis			
	edunt	edant	eduntur	edantur

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Im- perfect		edēbam	ēssem ederēm	edēbar	ederer
		edēbās	ēsset ederēs	edēbāris	ederēris
		edēbat	ēsset ederet	edēbātur	ederētur
		edēbāmus	ēssemus ederēmus	edēbāmur	ederēmur
		edēbātis	ederētis	edēbāmini	ederēmini
		edēbant	ēsset ederent	edēbantur	ederentur

IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		ēs (ede)	ēste (editē)	edere	edimini
Future	{	ēstō (editō)	ēstōte (editōte)	editor	
		ēstō (editō)	eduntō	editor	eduntur

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

Present	{	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
		fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
		fert	ferat	ferre	ferāre
	{	ferimur	ferāmur	ferimur	ferāmur
		fertis	ferātis	ferimini	ferāmini
		ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Im- perfect	{	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
		ferēbās	ferres	ferēbāris	ferrēris
		ferēbat	ferret	ferēbātur	ferrētur
	{	ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmur
		ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāmini	ferrēmini
		ferēbant	ferrent	ferēbantur	ferrēntur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
INDICATIVE		INDICATIVE
Future	feram	ferar
	ferēs	ferēris
	feret	ferēre
		ferētur
	ferēmus	ferēmur
	ferētis	ferēmini
	ferent	ferentur

Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fer	ferite	ferite	ferimini
Future	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

PARTICIPLE		
Present	ferēs	
Perfect		lātus, -a, -um
Future	lāturus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE		
Present	ferre	ferri
Perfect	tulisse	lātus esse
Future	lāturus esse	lātum iri

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	ferendi	ferendus, -a, -um
Dat.	ferendō	
Acc.	ferendum	
Abl.	ferendō	

SUPINE
lātum, lātū

fio, fieri, factus sum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	fio	fiam
	fis	fias
	fit	fiat
	[fimus]	fiamus
	[fitis]	fiatis
	fiunt	fiant
Im- perfect	fiēbam	fierem
	fiēbās	fierēs
	fiēbat	fieret
	fiēbāmus	fierēmus
	fiēbātis	fierētis
	fiēbant	fierent
Future	fiam	
	fies	
	fiet	
	fīemus	
	fietis	
	fient	

Perfect tenses identical with those of the passive of *facio*.

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fi	fite

PARTICIPLE

Perfect	factus, -a, -um
---------	-----------------

INFINITIVE

Present	fieri
Perfect	factus esse
Future	[factum iri] futurus esse, fore

inquam		
INDICATIVE		
Present	inquam	Future
	inquis	
	inquit	

	inquitant	
		inquiōs
		inquiet

NOTE. The forms of *inquam* here given are the only ones in common use. The present indicative is employed freely with the force of the perfect, *e.g.* *inquam*, "*said* I," *inquit*, "*said* he," etc.

LIST OF VERB CONSTRUCTIONS

The ambiguity of English "that" and "to" tends to obscure the difference between complementary infinitive, indirect discourse, and purpose clause. The following summary, therefore, may be found helpful as showing the construction required by various verbs needed for the translation of the English-Latin Exercises.

GOVERNING THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

audeō	cōnsuēscō	parō
coepl	dubitō	patior
cōgō	iubeō	possum
cōnor	mālō	soleō
cōstituō	nōlō	volō

GOVERNING INDIRECT DISCOURSE

animadve. tō	faciō (certiōrem, etc.)	putō
arbitror	glōrior	ratus
audiō	intelleō	respondeō
cōgnōscō	nārrō	sciō
crēdō	nesciō	sentīō
dicō	nūntiō	simulō
doceō	polliceor	spērō
		videor

GOVERNING A PURPOSE CLAUSE (ut, nē)

hortor	imperō	persuādeō
--------	--------	-----------

OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS

1. After verbs of fearing, ut and nē apparently interchange functions.
2. Fit ("it happens") is construed with ut and the subjunctive (substantive clause).



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses following a definition indicate the Lesson in which that particular meaning is found.)

- ā, ab, prep. with abl.,** by, at the hands of: from; from the vicinity of; from among (106); of, from (72, 81, 129). See also **aliēnus, pars, petō, repetō,** and **tergum.**
- abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est,** go away, go, depart, leave.
- abhinc, adv.,** ago.
- abiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus,** throw aside, throw overboard; throw (56); shoot (113).
- abripīō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus,** tear away, carry away; pull up, tear up.
- absciō, 3, -cidi, -cisus,** cut off.
- absconditus, -a, -um, partic. as adj.,** hidden.
- absum, -esse, āfuī,** be away, be distant (remote), be absent.
- ac, see atque.**
- accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est,** approach, draw near; come, advance (138); *with ad and acc.,* approach (115). *Used impersonally,* be added (106).
- accidō, 3, -cidi, befall, happen, turn out, develop.**
- accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus,** receive, greet; learn (80); sustain, suffer (loss, indignity, etc.).
- ācer, -cris, -cre,** fierce, spirited, energetic, vigorous; sharp, shrill, piercing, penetrating.
- acerbus, -a, -um,** harsh, bitter; gall-ing (137), outrageous (57).
- aciēs, -ēī, f.,** line of battle, battle line, battle array, line, ranks; regular engagement (36, 40). **ex aciē,** from the field; **in primā aciē,** in the forefront of the fight.
- ācriter, adv.,** fiercely, furiously; energetically, vigorously; with spirit, with vigor; relentlessly (41); eagerly, with eagerness (140).
- ad, prep. with acc.,** to, for; toward, to the neighborhood of, before (52); against, upon, on; at, on, near, in the neighborhood of, before: until, till, up to. *Often used with the gerundive or gerund to express purpose.*
- See also **accēdō, appellō (-ere), eō (verb), perfugiō, pertineō, perveniō, speciēs, ūnus,** and **usque.**
- ad . . . versus,** toward, in the direction of, for. *With acc. of town name, shortened to versus* (130).
- addō, 3, -didī, -ditus,** add; make mention in addition.
- addūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus,** lead on, bring on, bring; influence (119), rouse (135).
- adeō, adv.,** to such a degree, so.
- adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** visit, touch at (70); meet (135); run into, fall into (37).
- adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** bring, transport, bear; carry, take, deliver (letter): *with dat.,* inspire (in) (36).

- Pass.*, come; *with ad and acc.*, come to, reach (63, 76, 90).
- adhærescō**, 3, -haesi, -haesum est, stick; ground (of a boat).
- adhūc**, *adv.*, up to this time, still, yet, hitherto.
- adiuvō**, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus, help, aid, assist, support.
- admīror**, 1, view with admiration, be filled with admiration for.
- admoneō**, 2, -monuī, -monitus, remind.
- admoveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move up (84); ignēs (-em) *admovēre*, *with dat.*, set (apply) fire (to).
- adorior**, 4, -ortus sum, attack, assail; make an assault (86).
- adsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up with, overtake.
- adstō**, 1, -stitī, stand by, be in attendance.
- adsum**, -esse, -fuī, be present, be (close) at hand, be in attendance; be on the field (128); be come (100, 131); be there (113); be upon (one) (99); be back (again) (22); come up (124).
- Aduātucī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- adulēscēna**, -entis, *adj.*, young. *As masc. noun*, (a) youth.
- advena**, -ae, *c.*, stranger, newcomer.
- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival, coming; presence (63); inroad (140).
- adversus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, contrary. See also *flūmen*.
- advesperāscit**, 3, -vesperāvit (*impersonal verb*), grow dark, begin to grow dark.
- aedēs**, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, house, home.
- aedificō**, 1, build, build up.
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, sick, ill. *As noun*, aegrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the sick.
- aegrē**, *adv.*, with difficulty.
- aequus**, -a, -um, favorable, suitable, good (121): *of mental states*, pleasant, resigned, undaunted, composed. **haud aequus**, no pleasant.
- aes** (*aeris*, *n.*) **aliēnum** (-ī), debt.
- aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
- aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, lifetime, life; age, period (74).
- Āfer**, -fra, -frum, negro. *As noun*, Āfrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Africans.
- afficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, attack; treat, overwhelm (26). *Pass.*, be filled (84).
- Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, Africa.
- Āfricānus**, -a, -um, African, of Africa.
- ager**, -grī, *m.*, field; country (45); territory (75).
- agmen**, -inis, *n.*, (marching) column, (marching) line. **prīmum agmen**, vanguard; **novissimum agmen**, rear guard.
- agō**, 3, ēgī, āctus, drive, drive off (43, 117); do; treat, make overtures; carry out (project), keep (watch), pass (time), give, render (thanks), wear out (life). **inter sē agere**, talk to one another; **vītam agere**, live.
- agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer, planter, rustic.
- Alexander**, -drī, *m.*, the name of (1) an Indian chief, brother of King Philip; (2) a king of Macedonia.
- alibi**, *adv.*, elsewhere, in other places, in other quarters, at other points. See also **alius**.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, another's, of another

- (133); inclined away. *With ab and abl.*, unfriendly (to), averse (to); *with gen.*, unfriendly (to). See also *aes*.
- aliquamdiū**, *adv.*, for some time, for a time; for a considerable period (74.)
- aliqui (aliquis)**, *aliqua*, *aliquod* (*aliquid*), *adj.*, some, any; *noun*, some one, any one, something, anything. *Pl.*, any.
- alius**, *alia*, *aliud*, other, another. *As noun*, some one else, some other, another (120); anything else (91); *pl.*, others (86). **alius super alium**, one on top of another; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . others (17, 139); **alii alibi**, some in one place, some in another (136); **alii in aliam**, some into one . . . some into another (67); **neque alius**, and no other (45).
- Allobrogēs**, *-um, m.*, the name of a people of southeast Gaul.
- alter**, *-era, -erum*, the other, a second, another, one (of two). *As noun*, the other, one (of two), the one (of two); *pl.*, the other party (120). **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.
- altus**, *-a, -um*, tall, high, lofty, elevated; deep (85). *As noun*, **altum**, *-i, n.*, the deep (sea), the ocean (12).
- Amānus**, *-i, m.*, the name of a mountain range of eastern Cilicia.
- Ambiorix**, *-igis, m.*, the name of a Gallic chieftain.
- ambō**, *-ae, -ō* (*declined as duo*, except for the *ō*), both.
- ambulō**, *1, -āvi, -ātum est*, walk, stroll; roam (65); crawl (50).
- America**, *-ae, f.*, America.
- Americānus**, *-a, -um*, American, of America. *As noun*, **Americānus**, *-i, m.*, (an) American; *pl.*, the Americans.
- amicitia**, *-ae, f.*, friendship, confidence.
- amicus**, *-a, -um*, friendly. *As noun*, **amicus**, *-i, m.*, friend; *pl.*, **Amici**, *-ōrum, m.*, the Friends.
- āmittō**, *3, -misi, -missus*, lose.
- amō**, *1*, love, like, fancy, cherish; be in love with (48). *Pass.*, be beloved (63). *Partic.*, **amāns**, *-antis*, *with gen.*, loyal (to).
- amplector**, *3, -plexus sum*, embrace, accept.
- amplius**, *adv., compar.*, further, more.
- ancora**, *-ae, f.*, anchor.
- angustus**, *-a, -um*, narrow.
- animadvertō**, *3, -verti, -versus*, notice, note, perceive, observe, catch sight of, witness, see; discover, find out.
- animus**, *-i, m.*, mind, spirit, soul, heart; manner, fashion, spirit: frame of mind; purpose; courage (56, 120), confidence (135). *Pl.*, courage, feeling (119), insubordinate spirit (140). See also **dēmittō** and **habēō**.
- Annēius**, *-ēi, m.*, (Marcus) Anneius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
- annus**, *-i, m.*, year.
- ante**, *adv.*, before, earlier, previously. See also **iam** and **paulō**.
- ante**, *prep. with acc.*, before; in front of, ahead of.
- anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously.
- antequam**, *conj.*, before.
- Antiochēa**, *-ae, f.*, Antioch, a city of Syria.
- antiquitus**, *adv.*, in ancient times, in early times.

- Antistius**, -tī, *m.*, the name of a Roman physician.
- Antōnius**, -nī, *m.*, Anthony (Wayne), an officer in the Révolutionary War.
- Apamēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- aperiō**, 4, **aperuī**, **apertus**, disclose; explain (2). *Partic. as adj.*, **apertus**, -a, -um, open, unprotected.
- appellō**, 1, call, name, address by name; call upon, call (122). *Pass.*, be known as.
- appellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, bring, steer, row. *ad litus appellere*, beach, run aground upon the shore.
- appetō**, 3, -petivī or -petiī, -petītus, attack, aim a thrust at.
- appōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, set on, bring on, serve (food).
- appropinquō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, approach, draw near; be close at hand (47).
- apud**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the country of, with; near, at; at (in) the house of; in the presence of.
- aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.
- Arabēs**, -um, *m.*, the Arabs.
- Ārae** (-ārum, *f.*) **Alexandrī**, the name of an ancient camp site in Cilicia (*lit.* the Altars of Alexander).
- arbitror**, 1, think, believe, judge.
- arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree.
- arceō**, 2, -uī, keep out, ward off, keep back, keep off.
- arcēssō**, 3, -ivī, -ītus, call in; call up (136).
- Ardeātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of Ardea (an ancient town about 20 miles south of Rome).
- ārdēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, blazing.
- argenteus**, -a, -um, of silver, silver.
- argentum**, -ī, *n.*, silver, silver plate.
- arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons.
- armātus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, armed, in arms, arms in hand (20); arms and all (88). *Pl., as noun*, **armātī**, -ōrum, *m.*, armed men, warriors, braves.
- Arnoldius**, -dī, *m.*, (Benedict) Arnold, an officer in the Revolutionary War.
- Arpinēius**, -ēī, *m.*, (Gaius) Arpineius, a Roman soldier (102).
- arripiō**, 3, -ripuī, -reptus, catch up, seize; rescue (106).
- ars**, *artis*, *f.*, business, profession. **ars magica**, black art, magic.
- ascendō**, 3, **ascendī**, **ascēnsus**, ascend, clamber up, scale; *with in and acc.*, make the ascent of (139).
- asciscō**, 3, **ascivī**, **ascitus**, win over; adopt (67).
- Asia**, -ae, *f.*, (1) Asia; (2) Asia Minor (132, 138).
- Asiāticus**, -a, -um, Asiatic, of Asia.
- asper**, -era, -erum, rough; severe (101); troublesome (135).
- assēnsus**, -ūs, *m.*, approval.
- at**, *conj.*, but, whereas, still, however.
- Atlanticus**, -a, -um, Atlantic.
- atque**, *ac*, *conj.*, and. See also **simul**.
- Atrebatēs**, -um, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- Attius**, -tī, *m.*, (Publius) Attius (Varus), one of Pompey's generals.
- auctōritās**, -ātis, *f.*, influence, dignity, impressiveness.
- audācia**, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring, temerity, hardihood; insubordination, lawlessness (140); (act of) daring (88).
- audācter**, *adv.*, boldly, with boldness.
- audāx**, -ācis, *adj.*, bold, daring, audacious; of daring (99).
- audeō**, 2, **ausus sum**, dare, venture.

audiō, 4, -ivī, -itus, hear, learn; listen, listen to, heed, give ear to.

augeō, 2, auxī, auctus; pass., increase, grow (93); grow brighter (126).

auris, -is, f., ear.

aurum, -ī, n., gold.

ausus, -a, -um, see **audeō**.

aut, conj., or; *sometimes represented in English by "and."* **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.

autem, conj., however, but, whereas; moreover, and.

auxilium, -ī, n., aid, help, assistance, reinforcement, relief, protection. *Pl.*, auxiliary forces, supplementary force (detachments), allied force, allies, assistants, reinforcements, help. **auxiliō esse**, with a second *dat.*, (freely) help, benefit, support, protect, rescue. See also **ferō** and **veniō**.

avaritia, -ae, f., greed, covetousness.

āvertō, 3, -vertī, -versus; pass., turn (one's self) aside. *Partic. as adj.*, **āversus, -a, -um**, turned away (131).

avis, -is, f., bird.

bāca, -ae, f., berry.

Bagrada, -ae, m., the name of a river of northern Africa.

ballista, -ae, f.; pl., artillery.

Balventius, -tī, m., (Titus) Balventius, a Roman standard bearer (106).

barbarus, -a, -um, barbarian. *As noun*, **barbarī, -ōrum, m.**, savages.

Batāvi, -ōrum, m., the Dutch.

Bēcō, -ōnis, m., (Nathaniel) Bacon, a hero of colonial times.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., the name of a people of northern Gaul.

bellum, -ī, n., war, warfare; fighting (116). See also **gerō**.

Bēnbrigius, -gī, m., (William) Bainbridge, an American naval officer.

bene, adv., well, successfully, satisfactorily. See also **gerō, habeō**, and **polliceor**.

beneficium, -cī, n., act of kindness, kindness, favor.

Bibulus, -ī, m., (Marcus) Bibulus, a (Roman) governor of Syria.

bīdium, -ī, n., two days.

Bithŷnia, -ae, f., the name of a district of Asia Minor.

bonus, -a, -um, good. *As noun*, **bona, -ōrum, n.**, goods, possessions, belongings, things.

bōs, bovis, c. (dat. and abl. pl., būbus or būbus); pl., cattle.

Bostō, -ōnis, m., Boston.

Braddoc, -ocis, m., (Edward) Braddock, an English commander in the French and Indian War.

brevī, adv., shortly, (with) in a short time, soon, in a moment, before long, quickly; soon afterward (67).

Britannī, -ōrum, m., the English, the British, Englishmen.

Britannia, -ae, f., England; Britain (101). **Britannia Nova**, New England.

Britannicus, -a, -um, English, British, of the English. See also **vir**.

Brūtus, -ī, m., (1) Marcus Brutus, one of the murderers of Julius Caesar; (2) Decimus Brutus, husband of Sempronia (135).

Bŷzantium, -tī, n., the ancient name of Constantinople.

C., abbreviation of **Cāius, -āī, m.** (Gaius).

Cabot, -otis, m., (1) John Cabot,

- (2) Sebastian Cabot; two early explorers, father and son.
- cadō**, 3, *cecidī*, fall; turn out, fall out (14).
- caedēs**, -is, *f.*, slaughter, carnage, massacre, murder.
- caelum**, -ī, *n.*, (the open) sky, heaven; (the open) air; climate.
- Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul; (2) Lucius Caesar, an officer in Pompey's navy (117).
- caespes**, -itis, *m.*, sod.
- callidus**, -a, -um, clever.
- Camillus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Camillus, a hero of ancient Rome.
- Canada**, -ae, *f.*, Canada.
- Caninius**, -nī, *m.*, (Gaius) Caninius (Rebilus), lieutenant to Curio in the civil war.
- canis**, -is, *c.*, dog.
- canō**, 3, *cecinī*, play, sing.
- cantus**, -ūs, *m.*, singing, chanting, chant.
- capiō**, 3, *cēpī*, *captus*, catch, seize, capture, take, occupy; take prisoner, make prisoner; secure, get (13); adopt (plan), follow (course), make for (hills), take up (arms). *Pass.*, be attracted. *pedibus captus*, lame; *vī capere*, take by storm.
- Capitōlium**, -lī, *n.*, the citadel of ancient Rome, the Capitol.
- Cappadocia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.
- captivus**, -ī, *m.*, prisoner, captive.
- caput**, -itis, *n.*, head; capital. See also *damnō*.
- carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison.
- careō**, 2, -uī, *with abl.*, be without, lack; spare.
- Carletō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Sir Guy) Carleton, a British officer in the Revolutionary War.
- carō**, *carnis*, *f.*, meat, flesh.
- Carolaena**, -ae, *f.*, Carolina.
- carpō**, 3, *carpsī*, *carptus*, gather, pluck.
- carrus**, -ī, *m.*, wagon, cart.
- cārus**, -a, -um, beloved, precious, prized.
- casa**, -ae, *f.*, hut, shack. *Pl.*, barracks.
- Casca**, -ae, *m.*, the name of two brothers implicated in the murder of Julius Caesar.
- castellum**, -ī, *n.*, blockhouse, fort, post; stronghold (133, 139).
- Castor**, -oris, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- castra**, -ōrum, *n.*, (entrenched) camp, fortress, fortified post, encampment. See also *faciō*, *habeō*, and *pōnō*.
- Castra** (-ōrum, *n.*) **Cornēlia** (-ōrum), the name of the site of a camp established in Africa by Publius Cornelius Scipio at the time of the second Punic War.
- cāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, fall (86); accident (94), plight (84, 134), calamity (97), disaster (115), emergency (105). *Abl. as adv.*, *cāsū*, by chance as chance would have it.
- Catilina**, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius Sergius) Catiline, a politician who conspired to overthrow the government of Rome.
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, grounds, excuse, occasion; case (41). *Abl. causā. with gen. of the gerundive, gerund. or abstract noun*, for the purpose (of), for the business (of), for purposes (of), with the idea (of), with a view to, etc. **ob eam causam**, for that reason.

cavus, -a, -um, hollow.

cecidi, see **cadō**.

cēdō, 3, cessi, cessum est, fall back.

locō cēdere, leave (one's) station, abandon (one's) position, give way.

celebrō, 1, celebrate.

celeritās, -ātis, f., swiftness, speed, swift action, haste.

celeriter, adv., quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, fast; in haste, hastily. *Superl.*, at top speed, with great speed, with all speed.

cēna, -ae, f., dinner.

cēnō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), dine, take dinner.

cēnseō, 2, -uī, (cēnsus), express (the) opinion, give as (one's) opinion; urge (120).

centuriō, -ōnis, m., captain, lieutenant, sergeant; centurion (103 ff.).

cēpī, see **capiō**.

Cercās, -ae, m., (Benjamin) Church, a celebrated Indian fighter.

cernō, 3, (crēvī, certus), see, descry, discern, observe; watch (128).

certē, adv., at any rate, certainly; as a matter of fact (90).

certus, -a, -um, certain, definite; assured (135); (a) particular (89). See also **cōgnōscō, faciō, and fiō**.

cēteri, -ae, -a, the other, the rest (of). *As masc. noun*, the others, the rest, the other men.

Centronēs, -um, m., the name of a people of northern Gaul.

cibus, -ī, m., food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the preceding.

Cilicia, -ae, f., the name of a district in Asia Minor.

Timber, -brī, m., see **Tillius**.

circiter, adv., about.

circuitus, -ūs, m., circuit, detour; circumference (110).

circum, prep. with acc., around, about, in the neighborhood of (116).

circumdō, 1, -dedī, -datus, surround, girdle, encircle.

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, make the rounds of.

circumsistō, 3, -stitī or -stetī, rally (gather, crowd) around.

circumstō, 1, -stitī, stand about; surround, encircle.

circumveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, surround, encircle, hem in, bring to bay; flank, turn the flank (of).

citrō, adv., see **ultrō**.

civis, -is, c., citizen, fellow-citizen, countryman. *Pl.*, (one's) countrymen, people, townsmen.

civitās, -ātis, f. (gen. pl. -um or -ium), state, country.

clādēs, -is, f., disaster.

clam, adv., secretly, stealthily, quietly; unnoticed, unobserved.

clāmō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, cry out, call out.

clāmor, -ōris, m., cry, shout.

clārus, -a, -um, famous, prominent; loud (86).

classis, -is, f., fleet.

claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, close; shut up, confine (91).

Cn., abbreviation of **Cnaeus, -ī, m.**, (Gnaeus).

coēgī, coāctus, -a, -um, see **cōgō**.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, began, commenced; proceeded (130).

coerceō, 2, -ercuī, -ercitus, hold in check.

cōgitō, 1, think, imagine; with dē and abl., have (any) thought (of) (51).

cōgnōscō, 3, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnītus**, get acquainted with, learn (of), fathom, find, observe; be informed, hear, gain information; get information of, gain (some) conception of (110); realize (93, 122); recognize (63, 89): try (case). *Pass.*, become known, be known. **certius cōgnōscere**, get more definite information (115).

cōgō, 3, **cōgī**, **cōāctus**, compel, force, oblige, constrain, impel, lead (126); collect, gather, bring together, call together, call in, get together; concentrate, crowd; muster, organize.

cohors, -rtis, *f.*, cohort. **cohors praetoria**, bodyguard.

cohortor, 1, rally, cheer on; urge, exhort. **inter sē cohortārī**, exhort one another (127).

collis, -is, *m.*, hill.

collocō, 1, place, put, deposit; station, locate, quarter, settle; establish, build: arrange, place, lay (ambuscade); mount (artillery); pitch (camp); stack (arms). **in acie collocāre**, form in line.

colloquium, -ī, *n.*, conference, interview.

colloquor, 3, -locūtus sum, converse, talk, have an interview.

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony.

colōnus, -ī, *m.*, colonist, settler.

Columbus, -ī, *m.*, (Christopher) Columbus, the discoverer of America.

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion, attendant, follower; hanger-on, minion (71). *Pl.*, (one's) men (22, 74), (one's) fellows (86).

cōmitās, -ātis, *f.*, kindliness, courtesies.

cōmiter, *adv.*, courteously (29), kindly (62); on friendly terms (23).

Commāgēnus, -a, -um, of Commagene (a northern district of Syria).

commemorō, 1, relate, rehearse, state, note.

committō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, join, consign. **proelium committere**, join battle, begin battle, engage in battle, offer battle, fight; *pass.*, (battle) take place; **proeliō rem committere**, risk an engagement, bring on an engagement.

commodus, -a, -um, easy, expeditious (130). *As noun*, **commodum**, -ī, *n.*, well-being.

Commoris, -is, *f.* (*acc. sing. -im*), the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

commoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, stir (75), alarm (138). *Partic.*, **commōtus**, -a, -um, disturbed, excited, upset, startled, alarmed; concerned, stirred up, wrought up; spurred on, moved. **irā commovērī**, become angry.

communis, -is, -e, common.

compellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, drive, force.

compleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētus, fill, fill up; swamp (4), choke (122); supply (118).

complūrēs, -ēs, -a, several, several of, some, (quite) a number of, quite a few, numerous; to a considerable number (139); several (in number) (90).

comportō, 1, bring together, gather together, get together, collect; get in, lay in (109).

comprehendō, 3, -prehendī, -prehēsus, arrest (132); catch (fire).

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, attempt.

concedō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, allow, grant, concede.

- concilium**, -i, *n.*, council (of war), powwow; (deliberative) body (34).
- concurrō**, 3, -curri, -cursum est, rush (together), run. *inter sē concurrere*, charge upon one another (117).
- condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, terms; proposal (110); condition, plight (91).
- condō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, store, deposit, hide away; found, establish (city, state).
- conducō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, hire, engage.
- cōnferō**, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, bring together (117). *sē cōnferre*, betake (one's) self, make (one's) way, proceed; withdraw, return.
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, dense (107), solid (63); (the) thick (of) (136).
- cōnfestim**, *adv.*, at once, quickly, forthwith, immediately, without delay; in haste, hastily, in a hurry, hurriedly.
- cōnficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass; push to a conclusion (140); wear out, exhaust, weaken, overcome.
- cōnfirmō**, 1, assert, declare; cheer (up), encourage, reassure, fortify, steady (120).
- cōnfodiō**, 3, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce, slay.
- coniciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, discharge, hurl, shoot, throw, cast; shower, pour in (missiles). *in fugam conicere*, put to flight, rout.
- coniungō**, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join. *sē coniungere*, join, unite, effect (a) junction, join forces; ally one's self (103), cast in one's lot (130).
- cōnfrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy.
- cōnor**, 1, try, attempt, endeavor.
- cōnscendō**, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus, climb up (64); go on board, come on board, embark upon; man (rampart); mount (horse); scale (wall).
- cōnsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up, come up; catch up with, come up with; follow (90).
- cōnservō**, 1, preserve (116), save, look out for; husband (101), spare (130).
- cōnsidō**, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, settle, take up quarters; encamp, bivouac; take up (a) position (112); come to a halt (114).
- cōnsilium**, -li, *n.*, plan, plans, plan of action, policy, course; design, purpose, scheme, project, venture; device, expedient, plot, stratagem, trick: advice, counsel; council (of war), conference. *Pl.*, course (135). See also *mūtō*.
- cōnsistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, stop, halt, come to a halt; take (one's) stand, station (one's) self; stand, ride, remain (at anchor). *in orbem cōnsistere*, form in a circle.
- cōnsōlor**, 1, comfort, reassure; address kindly (130).
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view.
- cōnspiciō**, 3, -spēxī, -spectus, see, catch sight of; look on (87).
- cōnstantia**, -ae, *f.*, firmness, resolution, steadfastness, reliability; coolness (83).
- cōnstituō**, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus, decide, determine, plan; designate, appoint (89); fix, establish, organize; draw up, station (115).
- cōnsuēscō**, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus); *perf.* (with *force of present*), be accustomed, be wont, be in the habit (of); *translated impersonally*, be (one's) custom.

- cōsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.*, practice, custom, policy; the ordinary (133).
- cōsulō**, 3, -sului, (-sultus), take measures, make provision, look out.
- cōsultō**, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.
- cōsūmō**, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, use up: eat, eat up; destroy; spend, pass (time). **ignī cōsūmere**, burn.
- contendō**, 3, -tendī, (-tentus), proceed, march, make one's way; press (push) on, keep on, forge ahead, hurry: beg (129).
- continēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, continuous, unremitting, unbroken. *As noun*, **continēns**, -entis, *f.* (sc. terra), mainland (100, 101).
- contineō**, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, confine, coop up, restrain.
- cōntiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, address; assembly, meeting.
- contrā**, *prep. with acc.*, against, in the direction of (126).
- contulī**, see **cōnferō**.
- contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, indignity, illtreatment; taunt.
- conveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, meet, interview, have interview with, see; come together, gather, assemble.
- convertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus, turn (128); direct (114), convert (96). **sē convertere**, turn, give attention (90).
- convocō**, 1, call together, get together, convene, call, summon.
- coorior**, 4, -ortus sum, arise, come up, spring up; close in (106).
- cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; outfit. *Pl.*, supplies, stores; force, forces, troops, companies, army; (one's) following (138).
- Coriolānus**, -ī, *m.*, (Gaius) Coriolanus, a Roman who fought against his country.
- Cornēlius**, -a, -um, see **Castra Cornēlia**.
- Cornivallis**, -is, *m.*, (Lord) Cornwallis, a British general in the Revolutionary War.
- corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body.
- cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day.
- Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius) Cotta, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.
- Crassus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Crassus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.
- crēdō**, 3, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, believe, think.
- cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.*, torture, pain, suffering, agony.
- crūdēlis**, -is, -e, cruel, savage.
- crūdēlitās**, -ātis, *f.*, cruelty, barbarity, savagery.
- cruentus**, -a, -um, bloody.
- Cūba**, -ae, *f.*, Cuba.
- cum**, *conj.*, (time and circumstance) when, while, after, as; at a time when (10): (cause) since, inasmuch as, as: (concession) though, although. *With subjunctive, often best rendered by a participial phrase.*
- cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also;
- cum primum**, as soon as, when . . . first.
- cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with. See also **habeō** (**sēcum**), **simul**, and **ūnā**.
- cuneus**, -ī, *m.*, wedge, stake.
- cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly, with great eagerness.
- cūr**, *adv.*, why, on account of which.
- Cūriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Gaius) Curio, commander of Caesar's forces in Africa.
- cūrō**, 1, care for; treat (wounds); watch over (47): care for, have regard for (91).
- currō**, 3, **cucurrī**, **cursum est**, run,

- rush; run about (90); run, play (of fire) (90).
- cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course, stretch.
- custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody. *Pl.*, guards, watch, pickets.
- custōdiō, 4, -īvi, -ītus, guard, watch. *memoriā custōdire*, remember.
- custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, sentinel.
- Cybiatra, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- D.**, abbreviation of Decimus, -ī, *m.*
- damnō, 1, condemn. *capitis damnāre*, condemn to death.
- dē, *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning, of, with reference to; down from, from.
- decem, *indeclinable adj.*, ten.
- decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
- dedī, see dō.
- dēditīō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender. See also *veniō*.
- dēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus, give up, surrender. *Partic. as noun*, dēditī, -ōrum, *m.*, surrendered men, prisoners. *sē dēdere*, surrender, give one's self up, capitulate.
- dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth, transport, conduct, escort, take, bring, lead; withdraw, lead away, call away, recall; draw down (131).
- dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend, protect.
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, defense.
- dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear down (56), carry, bear, bring; report. *Pass.*, be carried, drift.
- dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, tired out, worn out.
- dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, (-fectus), give out, fail, run low.
- dēfigō, 3, -fixī, -fixus, fix, plant, set up.
- dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, hurl down, hurl back (86); tear down, destroy (99). *Partic.*, dēiectus, -a, -um, *with abl.*, (*freely*) disappointed (in).
- dēinde, *adv.*, then, next, later, subsequently.
- Dēiotarus, -ī, *m.*, the name of a native king who favored Roman rule in Asia Minor.
- dēlātus, -a, -um, see dēferō.
- dēlēō, 2, -ēvi, -ētus, destroy, make away with; demolish, raze.
- dēligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select, pickout, appoint, delegate. *Partic. as adj.*, dēlēctus, -a, -um, chosen (34).
- dēmittō, 3, -misi, -missus, lower. *Partic. as adj.*, dēmissus, -a, -um, downcast, crestfallen; *animō dēmissus*, disheartened, discouraged. *sē animō dēmittere*, lose heart (83).
- dēmōnstrō, 1, point out, mention; explain (108).
- dēmum, *adv.*, at length, finally, at last. See also *iam*.
- dēnique, *adv.*, finally, in fine.
- dēnuō, *adv.*, anew, again, once more, a second time.
- dēpōnō, 3, -posui, -positus, put down (load), lay down, surrender (office), give up (hope).
- dēscendō, 3, -scendi, -scēnsus est, descend, come down, charge down (121).
- dēserō, 3, -serui, -sertus, desert, leave, leave in the lurch.
- dēsistō, 3, -stiti, stitum est, desist, cease. *proeliō dēsistere*, cease fighting, withdraw.
- dēsūm, *deesse*, dēfui, be wanting (84), be disloyal (14).
- dēterreō, 2, -terrui, -territus, keep off, scare away; intimidate.

dētrahō, 3, -trāxi, -tractus, pull (tear, strip) off; drag out (85).

dētrimentum, -i, *n.*, disaster, reverse, calamity, loss, harm, misfortune, mishap, accident; source of danger (100).

dētrūdō, 3, -trūsi, -trūsus, push off, shove off.

dētuli, see **dēferō**.

deus, -i, *m.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, **deī**, **diī**, or **dis**), god.

dēversōrium, -i, *n.*, inn, tavern.

dēvius, -a, -um, out of the way.

dēvorō, 1, devour.

dexter, -tra, -trum, right. *As noun*, **dextra**, -ae, *f.* (*sc.* manus), right hand.

dicō, 3, **dixi**, **dictus**, say, speak, declare, tell, communicate, announce, report, mention, remark, suggest; express (sentiment, view), make (suggestion). *male dicere*, swear, curse.

diēs, -ēi, *m. and f.*, day. *in diēs*, from day to day.

differō, -ferre, **distuli**, **dilātus**, scatter; put off, postpone.

difficilis, -is, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome; delicate (business), obstructed (slope).

dignitās, -ātis, *f.*, reputation, standing.

diligenter, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, with care; busily (100); with all diligence (137).

diligentia, -ae, *f.*, care, pains (99), carefulness, vigilance.

dimicō, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, fight, contend, struggle, be at war; do (one's) fighting (101).

dimittō, 3, -misi, -missus, let go, release; let slip (through one's fin-

gers), miss (121), lose possession of; give up, abandon (36), forego (97); dismiss, send away, allow to depart; send out (108); send on (128).

discōdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, withdraw, depart, go (off), march away, retreat, leave; recede (66); move (103, 105). *With ab or ex and abl.*, leave, desert. *ab armis discēdere*, discard (one's) arms (110); *inferior discēdere*, be beaten (39).

discessus, -ūs, *m.*, withdrawal, recall.

discō, 3, **didici**, learn, acquire.

dispōnō, 3, -posui, -positus, arrange, station.

disputō, -āvi, -ātum est, discuss, continue (the) discussion (104).

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time (period); (discuss) at length. **neque . . . diūtius**, and . . . no longer; nor very long (129); **nōn diūtius**, no longer. See also **iam**.

diversus, -a, -um, different, various.

dividō, 3, -vīsi, -vīsus, divide, split up.

dō, **dare**, **dedi**, **datus**, give, grant, present; communicate, supply, provide; afford, offer, allow (109, 12); sound (signal). *Pass.*, present (it)self (121). *in custōdiam dare*, have arrested, arrest; *in fugam dare*, put to flight, rout, disperse; **operam dare**, give attention (91, 108); try, see to it (135); **poenā dare**, (pay the penalty), be punished; **sēsomnō dare**, go to sleep, betake one's self to rest; **vēla dare**, set sail.

docēō, 2, -uī, **doctus**, show, point out; inform, tell; state, remind.

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, distress, grief; matter of chagrin.

dominus, -i, *m.*, master, owner.

Domitius, -ti, *m.*, (Gnaeus) Domitius, a cavalry officer in Curio's army.

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home, residence, dwelling, dwelling place; **domī**, at home; **domō**, from home (see also **ēgredior**); **domum**, homeward, home, toward home, for home; to (their) homes (96).

dōnec, *conj.*, until.

dōnum, -i, *n.*, gift, present.

dubitō, i, -āvī, -ātum est, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain.

As noun, **dubium**, -i, *n.*, doubt (126).

ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.

dūcō, 3, **dūxī**, ductus, lead, command, be commander of (9, 34); bring, conduct, take; draw, pull (56); stretch (chain). in **mātrimōnium** **dūcere**, marry, take in marriage.

dum, *conj.*, while, as, during the time when; provided only.

duo, **duae**, duo, two, the two.

duodecim, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

dux, **ducis**, *c.*, leader, commander, chief, captain, officer; conductor, guide.

ē, *ex*, *prep.* with *abl.*, (separation, source), from, (out) of, from out, out from; beyond (sight); after, in accordance with; (*material*), of, from; (*partitive*), of, out of, from. See also **aciēs**, **discēdō**, and **para**.

Eborācopolis, -is, *f.*, Yorktown.

Eborācum (-ī, *n.*) **Novum** (-ī), New York (City).

ecfrēnātē, *adv.*, wildly.

edō, 3, **ēdi**, **ēsus**, eat.

ēdō, 3, -**didī**, -**ditus**, utter, give forth, give voice to.

efferrō, -ferre, **extulī**, **ēlātus**, carry forth, carry out, bring (forth).

efficiō, 3, -**fēcī**, -**fectus**, accomplish, bring (it) to pass; construct (99).

effugiō, 3, -**fūgī**, escape, make (one's) escape, make good (one's) escape, succeed in escaping, slip away, get away; find relief from (134).

ēgī, see **agō**.

ego, **meī**, I.

ēgredior, 3, -**gressus sum**, go out; disembark, come ashore; march forth, file out, step out, pass out, make (one's) way out, come forth, go forth; retire, depart; set out (107); start out (122). **domō** **ēgredī**, leave home.

ēlātus, -a, -um, see **efferrō**.

Eleutherocilicēs, -um, *m.*, the Free Cilicians.

ēliciō, 3, -**licū**, -**licitus**, lure forth, lure. **Elizabetha**, -ae, *f.*, Elizabeth.

ēlūdō, 3, -**lūsī**, -**lūsus**, outwit, cheat, get the better of.

ēmigrō, i, -**āvī**, -**ātum est**, emigrate, move away.

ēmittō, 3, -**mīsī**, -**missus**, send forth, send out.

emō, 3, **ēmī**, **emptus**, buy, purchase; buy up (91).

emptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, buying; with *gen.*, traffic (in).

enim, *conj.*, for.

eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place, there.

eō magis, (on this account the more), all the more; **eō . . unde**, to a point where.

eō, **īre**, **ii**, **itum est**, go, advance.

With *ad* and *acc.*, go to meet (107).

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place (spot); to this same point (73); for the same point (destination) (117).

- Epiphanēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- eques**, -itis, *m.*, horseman, knight. *Pl.*, cavalry, horsemen; cavalry detachment (117).
- equitātus**, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry, cavalry force, cavalry detachment, force of cavalry; horsemen, horse.
- equus**, -ī, *m.*, horse. See also **vehō**.
- Erana**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.
- ēripiō**, 3, -ripi, -reptus, wrest, recover, rescue. *With dat.*, take away (from) (71).
- errō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, wander (about), stray.
- ērumpō**, 3, -rūpī, (-ruptus), burst (rush) forth, burst (rush) out, dart (out); break out, break through (43), break away (64), make a dash (68).
- ēruptiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, sally, sortie.
- et**, *conj.*, and. **et . . . et**, both . . . and.
- etiam**, *adv.*, even, also, too. See also **quā etiam** and **solum**.
- etsi**, *conj.*, although, even though.
- Eurōpa**, -ae, *f.*, Europe.
- ēvādō**, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est, get out, escape; emerge (82).
- ēveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, turn out, go, proceed.
- ēventus**, -ūs, *m.*, outcome, sequel; net result (110).
- ex**, see **ē**.
- exāctus**, -a, -um, see **exigō**.
- excidō**, 3, -cidī, -cīsus, cut down.
- excipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, except; withstand (35); await, meet (37, 101).
- excitō**, 1, rouse, rouse up.
- exeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum est, go out (forth), come out (forth), go (out), march forth; depart, retire.
- exercitus**, -ūs, *m.*, army, force, command.
- exigō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctus, collect (taxes); pass (time). *Partic.*, **exāctus**, -a, -um, completed, ended.
- exiguus**, -a, -um, small, weak; faint (sound).
- existimō**, 1, think, believe, judge, fancy, feel.
- extiālis**, -is, -e, deadly, fatal.
- exitus**, -ūs, *m.*, means of egress; solution.
- expediō**, 4, -ivī, -itus, make ready, get ready, get out; prime (weapons).
- expeditus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, unencumbered (by baggage), in light marching order. *As noun*, **expeditī**, -ōrum, *m.*, light-armed troops.
- expellō**, 3, -pullī, -pulsus, drive out; dispel (doubt).
- explicō**, 1, -āvī or -uī, -ātus or -itus, deploy, arrange.
- explōrātor**, -ōris, *m.*, scout, explorer, frontiersman.
- explorō**, 1, explore, reconnoitre, examine, inspect.
- expugnō**, 1, take by storm, storm, capture, take.
- exsiliō**, 4, -siluī, leap out; spring up (20); leap (80).
- exsilium**, -ī, *n.*, exile.
- expectō**, 1, await, wait for, await the coming (arrival) of, delay for (111); look forward to, anticipate; wait (67, 121).
- exstruō**, 3, -struxī, -strūctus, construct, build.
- extinguō**, 3, **extinxi**, **extinctus**, extinguish, put out.
- extrā**, *prep. with acc.*, outside of, outside, without; beyond (127).

Faber, -bri, *m.*, (Captain John) Smith.

Fabius, -bi, *m.*, (1) Gaius Fabius, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war; (2) Fabius Paelignus, a soldier in Curio's army; (3) Quintus Fabius Sanga, a lawyer who helped Cicero in the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline.

facile, *adv.*, easily, with great ease, without trouble, without difficulty, readily.

facinus, -oris, *n.*, crime, outrage; deed, exploit, feat.

faciō, 3, *fēci*, *factus*, do, perform, make; commit, perpetrate; build, construct; choose, elect, appoint, make: carry out (massacre); make, lay, place (ambuscade); make, deliver (announcement); afford (opportunity); inflict (injury); leave (tracks); take (departure). *castra facere*, encamp; *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*, inform, enlighten, send word to, notify (see also *fiō*); *impetum facere*, charge; *iniūriās facere*, with *dat.*, illtreat (4); *iter facere*, travel, journey, march, advance, proceed, push on; range (21); *stipendia facere*, serve (in army). See also *fiō*.

facultās, -ātis, *f.*, opportunity, chance.

Faesulānus, -a, -um, of Faesulae (a town of Etruria). *As noun*, *Faesulānus*, -ī, *m.*, (a) citizen of Faesulae.

fallō, 3, *fefellī*, *falsus*, disappoint. *Partic. as adj.*, *falsus*, -a, -um, false, fictitious (137).

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. See also *necō*.

faveō, 2, *fāvi*, *fautum est*, with *dat.*, be favorably disposed (to), feel sympathy (for), side (with).

fefellī, see *fallō*.

fēliciter, *adv.*, successfully, well, prosperously. *nec fēliciter*, and unsuccessfully. See (*rem*) *gerō*.

fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window.

fera, -ae, *f.*, wild animal (creature, beast).

Ferdinandus, -ī, *m.*, Ferdinand, king of Spain.

ferē, *adv.*, about, nearly, almost.

ferō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, carry, bear, bring; endure, put up with, bear, withstand, brave, hold out against; permit (139), call for (127): advance (standards); cast (vote), pass (measure). *Pass.*, be carried (hurled, thrown), roll. *auxilium ferre*, bring relief, bring help, give assistance, lend aid, lend a hand, assist; with *dat.*, support, help; *molestē ferre*, be irritated, be indignant, be in a state of indignation, be aggrieved, feel (it) keenly (60), regret (95, 97); chafe under, chafe at, bear with irritation (34, 55).

fidēlis, -is, -e, faithful, loyal, reliable.

fidēs, -eī, *f.*, credence; loyalty (120).

filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

filius, -lī, *m.*, son; the younger, junior (5).

finis, -is, *m.*, end, objective point (89). *Pl.*, boundaries, border; territory, land, lands, country.

finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, nearby, adjacent. *As noun*, *finitimī*, -ōrum, *m.*, adjacent peoples (138).

fiō, *fieri*, *factus sum*, be done, take place; be accomplished, be gone through with (109); happen, occur, come to pass, arise, come on; be, become, grow; be made, be appointed. *certior* (-ēs) *fieri*, be informed, learn. See also *faciō*.

firmō, *i*, secure, strengthen.
 firmus, -a, -um, strong.
 Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, (Titus Quinctius)
 Flamininus, a Roman ex-consul.
 flēō, 2, flēvī, flētum est, weep, cry.
 Flōrida, -ae, *f.*, Florida.
 flōs, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.
 fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave.
 flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river, stream, current (73). *adversō flūmine*, up the river, up (the) stream, (on) up the stream (98); *secundō flūmine*, with the current, downstream.
 fluō, 3, flūxī, (fluxus), flow.
 folium, -ī, *n.*, leaf.
 fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring.
 foris, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, door.
 forte, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally, casually, as it chanced; perchance (77).
 fortis, -is, -e, brave, courageous, heroic.
 fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, courageously, valiantly, stoutly; with courage, with bravery, with fortitude (52); like a man (68).
 fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*, fortitude, heroism; spirit (61).
 fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, fate, luck; good fortune (135). *Pl.*, well-being. *As proper name*, Fortūna, -ae, *f.*, the name of the goddess of fortune.
 forum, -ī, *n.*, market place. *In particular*, the market place at Rome, the Forum.
 fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, moat.
 frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck; break down (26); break, humble (140), discourage, dishearten (33).
 frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*; *pl.*, in large numbers.
 fretum, -ī, *n.*, strait, channel, sound.
 frigidus, -a, -um, icy.
 frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold. *Pl.*, cold weather (7).
 frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain, corn.
 frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without success.
 frūstum, -ī, *n.*, bit, piece.
 fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, rout, retreat, escape; defection (117). See also *coniciō* and *dō*.
 fugiō, 3, fūgī, flee, retreat, retire, slip away; hurry, run. *Partic. as adj.*, fugiēns, -entis, flying (59, 70), in retreat (127).
 fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke.
 Gabīnius, -nī, *m.*, (Publius) Gabinius (Capito), a person implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.
 Gallia, -ae, *f.*, France; Gaul (101 ff.).
 Gallicus, -a, -um, French; Gallic (126 ff.).
 Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic. *As noun*, Gallus, -ī, *m.*, (a) Gaul: *pl.*, the Gauls (45 ff.); the French, Frenchmen.
 gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, be delighted (pleased, glad).
 gaza, -ae, *f.*, treasure.
 gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, groan.
 gēns, gentis, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.
 genus, -eris, *n.*, class; birth, family (136).
 Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germans.
 gerō, 3, gessī, gestus, do, accomplish, manage (4), carry through to completion (129): have (quarrel); wear (22, 99). *Pass.*, take place, happen, go on, proceed. *bellum gerere*, wage war, fight, carry on

- war, be at war, take the field, go on the warpath. *rem bene* (fēliciter) gerere, be successful, have (any) success, act successfully; *sē gerere*, behave, act, comport (one's) self. See also *rēs*.
- glaciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, ice.
- gladius**, -ī, *m.*, sword.
- glōria**, -ae, *f.*, luster, renown.
- glōrior**, *i.*, boast.
- Gorgia**, -ae, *f.*, Georgia.
- Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek.
- grātia**, -ae, *f.*, favor (89). *Pl.*, thanks.
- grātus**, -a, -um, acceptable, satisfactory, attractive; grateful (45).
- gravis**, -ia, -e, heavy; trying (110), pressing (111); extortionate, ruinous (137): serious, dangerous (disease); heavy, deep, sound (sleep).
- graviter**, *adv.*, seriously, deeply, severely; much, greatly, exceedingly.
- Grudiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- gubernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, steering oar. *Pl.*, steering gear, tiller, helm.
- gubernātor**, -ōris, *m.*, helmsman, pilot.
- habēō**, 2, -uī, -itus, have, hold, keep; hold, regard; get, make (135): deliver, make (speech), set forth (argument); attain (renown, credence). *bene sē habēre*, have a good time; *castra habēre*, remain encamped; *in animō habēre*, intend, plan; think of, consider (doing a thing); *in incertō habēre*, be undecided; *rēs ita sē habēre*, matters stand thus (53); *sēcum habēre*, harbor (132).
- habitō**, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), live, dwell, be located.
- Hadrūmētum**, -ī, *n.*, the name of a town of northern Africa.
- Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, the name of a famous Carthaginian general.
- harēna**, -ae, *f.*, sand.
- haud**, *adv.*, by no means, not very, not. See also *aequus*, *invītus*, *libenter*, *longinquus*, *longus*, *magnus*, and *procul*.
- Henricus**, -ī, *m.*, Henry, king of Portugal.
- herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass.
- hīberna**, -ōrum, *n.*, winter quarters, winter camp, winter encampment.
- hīc**, *adv.*, here.
- hīc**, *haec*, *hoc*, this, that; *abl.*, *hāc* (sc. *viā*), by this route. *As noun*, he, they, this, these; *neut.*, this (thing, action, consideration, story, etc.).
- hiemō**, 1, -āvī, -atum est, pass the winter, winter, be quartered for the winter.
- hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter, winter time, winter season.
- Hispanī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Spanish, the Spaniards.
- Hispania**, -ae, *f.*, Spain.
- Hispaniēnsis**, -is, -e, of Spain. *As noun*, *Hispaniēnsis*, -is, *m.*, (a) native of Spain.
- homō**, -inis, *c.*, man, fellow, individual, person, body; he, the man. *Pl.*, people, mankind (23).
- honor**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, mark of distinction; esteem, honor; deference (81).
- hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour.
- Horātius**, -tī, *m.*, Horatius (Cocles), a hero of early Rome.
- horrendus**, -a, -um, awful, frightful.
- hortor**, 1, urge, exhort, direct; encourage, cheer, rally; beg (102, 104).

hortus, -ī *m.*, garden.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, thither.

Hudsō, -ōnia, *m.*, (1) Henry Hudson, the explorer; (2) the name of a river of New York state.

humus, -ī, *f.*, ground; **humī**, on the ground, upon the ground; in(to) the ground (90).

ibi, *adv.*, there, at that point, in that region, right there.

Iconium, -nī, *n.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, the same, that same, this same; the very (7). *As noun*, the same man; *neut.*, the same (thing, story, procedure, etc.). **idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable, proper, satisfactory, well-adapted; favorable (wind).

Idūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides (the 13th of some months, the 15th of others).

igitur, *conj.*, therefore, accordingly, and so.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire, light, camp fire. *Pl.*, flames. See also **cōnsūmō**.

Ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, humiliation.

Ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unexplored, strange.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, that, this, the. *As noun*, he, she, the one, they, these; *neut.*, this.

illūcēscō, 3, -lūxī, dawn.

impedimenta, -ōrum, *n.*, baggage, baggage train, stores; personal effects (110).

impediō, 4, -ivī, -itus, hinder, molest, delay; put a damper upon (138). *Partic. as adj.*, **impeditus**, -a, -um, hampered, weighed down, at a dis-

advantage; blockaded, obstructed, choked: difficult (ground) (128).

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander, commanding general (officer), commander in chief.

imperium, -rī, *n.*, order (129), command (44); sway, control (81), government, rule (140).

imperō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *with dat. case, if any*, give orders (command, direction, directions), issue orders, order, direct.

impetrō, 1, win, gain, secure; buy (41).

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault, charge, onset, onslaught.

impōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with dat. or in and acc.*, place, load (upon, on).

imus, -a, -um, see **inferior**.

in, *prep.*; (1) *with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, on board, on the surface of; within, in the midst of, among; (2) *with acc.*, into, to, in, into the territory of; against, upon, on, at, among; toward, for; out upon (51).

incendium, -dī, *n.*, fire, conflagration.

incendō, 3, -cendī, -cēsus, burn (up), destroy by fire; set fire to, fire.

incertus, -a, -um, irregular, devious (107); insecure (135). *As noun*, **incertum**, -ī, *n.*, uncertainty (135) (see **habeō**).

incitō, 1, spur on, stir up. **sē incitāre**, work one's self up (48).

incola, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant, native.

incolō, 3, -coluī, inhabit, occupy, populate, be settled in.

incolumis, -is, -e, safe, unharmed, in safety, unscathed, unmolested; scot free.

- incommodum**, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience (54), check, set-back, disaster, reverse.
- incrēdibilis**, -is, -e, fabulous, astonishing.
- inde**, *adv.*, thence, from thence; from there; from that point; from it.
- Indiāna**, -ae, *f.*, Indiana.
- indicō**, 3, -dixī, -dictus, declare (war).
- Indus**, -a, -um, Indian. *As noun*, Indus, -ī, *m.*, (an) Indian; *pl.*, the Indians.
- inferior**, -ior, -ius, inferior, lower, weaker. *Superl.*, īmus, -a, -um, (the) lowest (part of) (131). See also discēdō.
- inferō**, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, inflict; *with dat.*, inflict (upon), do (to), make (war upon). iniūriās inferre, *with dat.*, maltreat.
- infestus**, -a, -um, threatening, opposing.
- ingredior**, 3, -gressus sum, enter, effect an entrance.
- inimicus**, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile, ill-disposed. *As noun*, inimicus, -ī, *m.*, enemy, ill-wisher; *superl.*, deadly foe.
- iniquus**, -a, -um, unfavorable.
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, damage; *pl.*, injuries, violence. *Abl. as adv.*, iniūriā, unjustly, wrongfully, without just cause (45). See also faciō and inferō.
- iniussū**, *abl. of defective noun, with gen.*, without the order (of), against the order (of), without orders (from).
- inlīdō**, 3, -līsī, -līsus, dash. *Pass.*, be dashed, crash.
- inmittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send, throw, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire. **tēlum inmittere**, fire.
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, lack, need, scarcity.
- inquam**, —, -quī, say, exclaim, cry; inquire, reply, retort.
- inrumpō**, 3, -rūpī, (ruptus), break (into), burst (into), rush (into), dash (into); burst in, break in.
- insequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, pursue, follow. **vestigīs insequi**, follow the trail.
- insidiae**, -ārum, *f.*, ambush, ambush; treachery, underhand means (72). See also lateō.
- instar**, *indeclinable noun, with gen.*, the size (of), as large as.
- instruō**, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up, form, marshal; fit out, equip.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island. **insula Longa**, Long Island.
- integer**, -gra, -grum, untouched. *As noun*, integri, -ōrum, *m.*, fresh troops.
- intellegō**, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus, realize, see, perceive, gather, understand, know.
- intempestus**, -a, -um, *lit.*, unseasonable. See nox.
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the midst of; between. See also agō, cohortor, and concurrō.
- intercipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut off; capture.
- interdiū**, by day, by daylight.
- interdum**, *adv.*, at times, from time to time; sometimes, occasionally; in some cases (91).
- intereā**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
- intereō**, -ire, -iī, perish, be killed.
- interficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, kill, slay, put to death; murder, massacre,

kill off, cut off, cut down, cut to pieces. **tēlō interficere**, shoot dead. **interim, adv.**, meanwhile, in the meantime, the while.

intermittō, 3, -**misī**, -**missus**, check; leave between (126).

interpōnō, 3, -**posuī**, -**positus**, interpose, put (place, hold) between. *Pass.*, lie between, intervene.

intervāllum, -**ī**, *n.*, distance.

intrā, *prep.*, with *acc.*, within, behind; (over) within (113).

intrō, 1, enter, make (one's) way into; step in (49): enter, gain (harbor).

intus, adv., within, inside; on board (70).

inveniō, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventus**, find, find out, discover.

invisus, -**a**, -**um**, odious; hated (48, 75).

invītus, -**a**, -**um**, unwilling, against (one's) will, against (one's) inclination, with reluctance; exceedingly loath, much against (one's) will. **haud invītus**, nothing loath.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, herself, itself, themselves, *gen.*, own: (the city) proper, (this, that) particular: on their own motion (24); in person; with his own hand (136): very, mere, even. *As noun*, he, the man himself, they, *gen.*, his (own), their (own).

ira, -**ae**, *f.*, anger, wrath.

irātus, -**a**, -**um**, angry, in anger, in a passion, in (one's) wrath; hotly, angrily (103).

is, ea, id, this, that. *As noun*, he, a man (103), she, they, these, those, (the) people, (the) men; *neut.*, it, this, that; this thing, this purpose (54), the things, the events, those

things; a thing (132), a project (139): *gen.*, his, her, their; of theirs (138). **id quod**, what.

Isabella, -**ae**, *f.*, the name of a queen of Spain.

iste, ista, istud, that, this; that . . . of yours (134). *As noun*, he, this (131).

ita, adv., thus, so; in this way, in the following way; with matters standing thus (119); by this means (104): in such a manner (122); at such speed (139): so very (121).

Italia, -**ae**, *f.*, Italy.

itaque, conj., and so, accordingly.

iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, way, road, route, march, traveling, trip, stage (138). **in itinere**, on the march, on the road, on the line of march, during the journey; **iter magnum**, forced march. See also **faciō**.

iterum, adv., again, a second time, once again; the second time (64). See also **semel**.

iaceō, 2, -**uī**, lie, lie neglected (131). *Partic. as adj.*, **iacēns**, -**entis**, prostrate.

iaciō, 3, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw, cast, shoot; throw out (anchors).

Iacō, -**ōnis**, *m.*, (Andrew) Jackson.

iam, adv., now, already, at length.

iam ante, previously; **iam dēmum**, now at length, at length; **iam diū**, now for a long time, long since; **iam pridem**, long since, long before.

Iāniculum, -**ī**, *n.*, the name of a hill separated from Rome by the Tiber.

Iasper, -**erī**, *m.*, (Sergeant) Jasper, a daring soldier of the Revolution.

Iuba, -**ae**, *m.*, the name of an African king.

- iubeō**, 2, **iussī**, **iussus**, order, command, direct, bid, tell, say (89); give orders, leave orders. *Pass.*, be under orders, be ordered.
- iudicō**, 1, think, infer, believe, feel, be of the opinion.
- Iūnius**, -nī, *m.*, (Gaius) Junius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.
- Iūnō**, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods, as being the wife of Jupiter.
- iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, law, rules (132); court (45): *pl.*, rights, privileges, prerogatives. *Adv.* as *adv.*, iūre, rightfully, with good right. See also **vocō**.
- iuvenis**, -is, *m.*, young man, youth, young fellow; with *adj.* force, youthful (25).
- iuvō**, 1, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, aid, help, assist, relieve, help out.
- K.**, abbreviation of **Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends (*i.e.* the first day of a month).
- L.**, abbreviation of **Lūcius**, -cī, *m.*
- Labiēnus**, -ī, *m.*, (Titus) Labienus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.
- labor**, -ōris, *m.*, hardship, difficulty, trial; strain, toil, labor, work, exertion, effort, fatigue (124).
- labōrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, work, toil; be hard pressed (136).
- lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, tear.
- lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake.
- laetus**, -a, -um, joyful, glad, happy, rejoicing, delighted; with joy, with alacrity (96), in high spirits (50).
- Lādicāa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- largior**, 4, -ītus sum, give freely, sacrifice.
- Lārīsa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town in Greece.
- latebrae**, -ārum, *f.*, hiding place, sheltered spot (99); ambush (105). in **latebris**, in hiding (32).
- lateō**, 2, -uī, hide, skulk, be in hiding, lie in wait. in **insidiis lateō**, lie in wait.
- latus**, -eris, *n.*, flank (of army).
- lātus**, -a, -um, see **ferō**.
- laudō**, 1, praise, commend.
- lectus**, -ī, *m.*, bed, couch.
- lēgātus**, -ī, *m.*, captain, commander, lieutenant, officer, staff officer (44), subordinate officer (33); ambassador, messenger, envoy (42, 110, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 138); governor (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 62, 75, 76).
- legiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, regiment; legion (102 ff.). *Pl.*, troops.
- lēniter**, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.
- Lexingtō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Lexington, a town in Massachusetts.
- libenter**, *adv.*, readily, cheerfully, with pleasure, happily, gladly, with alacrity. **haud libenter**, with discontent; **nec libenter**, and unhappily.
- liberī**, -ōrum, *m.*, children.
- Līberia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Africa.
- liberō**, 1, free, relieve.
- libertās**, -ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom, emancipation.
- liburnica**, -ae, *f.*, sloop, cutter, brigantine.
- licet**, 2, **licuit** or **licitum est**, *imperpersonal verb*, be permitted.
- lignātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, felling (of) timber.
- Līma**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town of South America.
- lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

littera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet).

Pl., letter, communication, message; document, paper (112); alphabet (113).

litus, -oris, n., coast, shore.

Livius, -vī, m., (Titus) Livy, a famous Roman historian.

locuplēs, -ētis, adj., rich, wealthy, well-to-do.

locus, -ī, m. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, n.), place, spot, point, region, locality, location, ground, position, post; part (110): station (in life) (79); position, light (118). *Pl.*, district, country (31, 33); location (65); quarters (91). *omnibus locis*, everywhere. See also *cēdō* and *natūra*.

locūtus, -a, -um, see *loquor*.

Londinium (-nī, n.) Novum (-ī), New London, a town in Connecticut.

longē, adv., far, (to) a considerable distance, to a great distance; *with superl. or compar. of adj. or adv.*, (by) far, much.

longinquus, -a, -um, distant, remote, far away, at a distance. **haud longinquus**, at no great distance.

longus, -a, -um, long. **haud longus**, no great (distance); **longum est**, it is too long (127), 'twould be a long tale (87). See also *insula* and *nāvis*.

loquor, 3, locūtus sum, talk, speak, converse; state (126); *with cum and abl.*, talk (to).

Lovisiāna, -ae, f., Louisiana.

Lūcānius, -nī, m., (Quintus) Lucanius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum est, play, sport.

lūna, -ae, f., moon.

Lūsitānia, -ae, f., the ancient name of Portugal.

lūx, lūcis, f., light, the light of day, dawn, daybreak. **prima lūx**, early dawn, dawn, daybreak.

Lycāonia, -ae, f., the name of a district in Asia Minor.

M., abbreviation of *Mārcus*, -ī, m.

maestus, -a, -um, sad, dejected, sorrowful, sorrowing; in dejection, in gloom, in (the garb of) mourning (42); disappointed (86).

magicus, -a, -um, magic, magical. See also *ars*.

magis, adv., compar., more (129); see also *eō (adv.)*. *Superl.*, **maximē**, particularly, especially; exceedingly, in the highest degree: *sometimes prefixed to give superlative force to an adj. or adv.*

magister, -trī, m., captain. **puerōrum magister**, tutor, school teacher.

magnopere, adv., earnestly; unreasonably (103).

magnus, -a, -um, great, large, big, of large size, huge, immense, extensive: abundant (stores), dead (earnest), excessive (heat), good (courage), grave (peril), hearty, heartfelt (thanks), heavy, severe, serious (loss), heavy, severe, violent (earthquake, storm), heroic (spirit), high (column, hope), important (exploit), keen (anticipation), liberal (reward), loud (noise), long (distance), much (assistance), strong (force, guard, spirit, etc.), tremendous (curse), valuable (treasure), wide (river). **haud magnus**, no great; **nōn magnus**, of no great size. See also *iter*.

- Compar., maior, -or, -us, (all the)**
greater (84); a considerable (55), some considerable (120); elder, older. *As noun, maiōrēs, -um, m., fathers* (13).
- Superl., maximus, -a, -um, extreme,**
utmost, supreme, exceedingly great, immense, mighty; much (104); general, wholesale, frightful (slaughter).
- maior, -or, -us, see magnus.**
- male, adv., not fully (140). See also**
dicō.
- mālō, mälle, mālui, prefer, choose.**
- malus, -a, -um, wicked, evil, unprin-**
cipated, vile. *As noun, malum, -ī, n., evil, misfortune, trouble, difficulty.*
- māne, in the morning, on the morrow,**
next morning; early in the morn-
ing (49).
- maneō, 2, mānsi, mānsum est, re-**
main, stay, tarry, live.
- manipulāris, -is, -e, of the rank and**
file. *As noun, manipulāris, -is, m., soldier of the rank and file, private; pl., men.*
- Mānlius, -li, m., (1) Marcus Manlius, a**
Roman who defended the Capitol
against the Gauls; (2) Gaius Man-
lius, lieutenant to Catiline.
- manus, -ūs, f., hand; band, company,**
detachment, force.
- Mārcius, -ci, m., Mārcius (Rufus), an**
officer in Curio's army.
- Mārcus, -i, m., Marcus.**
- mare, -is, n., sea, ocean; the high**
seas (92).
- Marta, -ae, f., Martha.**
- Mārtius, -a, -um, of March.**
- māter, -tris, f., mother.**
- mātrīmōnium, -ī, n., marriage. See**
also dūcō.
- mātrōna, -ae, f., lady.**
- mātūrē, adv., early, soon; speedily**
(94).
- Mauri, -ōrum, m., the Moors.**
- maximē, see magis.**
- maximus, -a, -um, see magnus.**
- Mediterrāneus, -a, -um, Mediter-**
ranean.
- medius, -a, -um, middle (of), center**
of. See also **nox.**
- melior, see bonus.**
- memor, -oris, adj., with gen., with a**
thought (of), thinking (of), re-
membering.
- memorābilis, -is, -e, noteworthy, re-**
markable.
- memoria, -ae, f., memory, remem-**
brance. See also **custōdiō** and
teneō.
- mēnsis, -is, m., month.**
- mentior, 4, -itus sum, make up (a)**
story, fabricate.
- meridiēs, -ēi, m., midday, noon (129);**
the south (40, 43, 77).
- metus, -ūs, m., fear (122); thought**
of danger (119).
- meus, -a, -um, my; my own (138);**
on my part (140).
- Miantōnimō, -ōnis, m., the name of**
an Indian chief.
- mīles, -itis, m., soldier, common sol-**
dier, soldier in the ranks. *Pl., men, privates. See also tribūnus.*
- mille, indeclinable adj.; pl., (noun)**
mīlia, -ium, n., thousand. mīlle
passūs, mile; mīlia passuum, miles.
- minimē, see minus.**
- minus, see parvus.**
- minor, -or, -us, see parvus.**
- minus, adv., compar., less; not very**
(80). *Superl., minimē, not at all,*
by no means; no (87).

- mīrus**, -a, -um, wonderful, strange.
misceō, 2, -ui, **mistus** or **mixtus**, mingle.
miser, -era, -erum, wretched, pitiful, unfortunate, luckless, poor; hard (42). *As noun*, poor fellow, poor woman, poor wretches, etc.
mittō, 3, **misi**, **missus**, send, dispatch; shoot, hurl, fire; throw away, discard, lose (129). *Partic. as noun*, **missi**, -ōrum, *m.*, messengers, *lit.* those sent (109).
modo, *adv.*, just before, just now, lately; just, but just: only (20, 131). **modo . . . modo**, at one time . . . at another. See also **sī**.
modus, -i, *m.*, manner, fashion, way, means, chance. **eius modī**, of this sort; **nūllō modō**, not at all (83); **quō modō**, thus.
molestē, *adv.*, with irritation; see **ferō**.
monēō, 2, -uī, -itus, warn, advise, inform (49).
mōns, **montis**, *m.*, mountain, eminence, height.
mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, hesitation. **sine morā**, instantly (64).
morbus, -i, *m.*, disease, illness, sickness.
moribundus, -a, -um, dying, at the point of death.
moriōr, 3, **mortuus sum**, die. *Partic. (and adj.)* **mortuus**, -a, -um, having died, dead: *as noun*, **mortuus**, -ī, *m.*, dead man; *pl.*, the dead.
moror, 1, delay, tarry, linger, dally, lounge; hold back, remain, wait, stop; be detained (9, 10).
mors, **mortis**, *f.*, death, dying, execution.
mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, custom. *Pl.*, ways (28), character (72).
moveō, 2, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, move; break (camp).
mox, *adv.*, soon, shortly, quickly.
Mūcius, -cī, *m.*, (Gaius) Mucius, a hero of ancient Rome.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, throng, crowd, company, band, force, number, numbers; rain (of weapons).
multō, *adv.*, (by) much, (by) far.
multum, *adv.*, much, greatly. *Superl.*, **plūrimum**, very frequently (135).
multus, -a, -um, much. *Pl.*, many; many of, a large number of; in large numbers (28): *as masc. noun*, many, many persons, many people; *neut.*, many (things), many (stories), much (property). *Compar.*, **plūs**, **plūris**, *neut. (noun)*, more (88): *pl.*, **plūrēs**, -ēs, -a, more, several (131); *as noun*, more (122). *Superl.*, **plūrimī**, -ae, -a, very many, numerous, a large number of; in large (great) numbers, in strong force: a cloud (multitude, shower) of.
mūniō, 4, -iū, -itus, intrench, strengthen, fortify. *Partic. as adj.*, **mūnītus**, -a, -um, strong, (strongly) fortified.
mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification, intrenchment. *Pl.*, fortifications, siege works (115, 123).
mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall, (stone) fence (55).
mūtō, 1, change. **cōnsilium mūtāre**, change (one's) mind.
nam, *conj.*, for.
nanciscor, 3, **nactus sum**, find, discover; gain, secure; reach (83). *Perf. tense*, have (119).
narrō, 1, relate, narrate, tell (of).
nāscor, 3, **nātus sum**, be born.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, tribe.

natō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, float.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, natural inclination. *Abl. as adv.*, nātūrā, naturally (134). **nātūra locī**, natural situation (41).

nātus, -a, -um, *see* nāscor.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor, deck hand. *Pl.*, crew.

nāvigium, -ī, *n.*, vessel.

nāvigō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, sail, cruise, coast, ply; head, journey, travel (11): be on shipboard (91); go to sea (5), ship (2).

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat. **nāvis longa**, warship, man-of-war. *See* also solvō.

ne, *sign of a question.*

nē, *conj.*; (*purpose*) so as not to, not to, in order not to, so that . . . not, to the end that . . . not, lest; (*after verbs of fearing*) that, lest; (*after recūsāre*) that (132). **nē quis**, so that no one (54, 57); **nē qua**, so that no (102); **nē quid**, so that . . . not . . . anything (47); **nē ūllus**, that no (84).

nē . . . quidem, not even; not . . . either (93).

nec, *see* neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, essential, needed, needful.

necō, 1, put to death, kill. **fame necāre**, starve to death.

necopināns, -antis, *adj.*, off (one's) guard.

negō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), declare that . . . not, say "no."

negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader.

negōtiōr, 1, trade, have (business) dealings; be a trader (134).

negōtium, -tī, *n.*, business, commission.

nēmō, *defective noun, m.*, no one, none, not a man. *Gen. and abl. supplied by nūllius and nūllō.*

neque, *nec, conj.*, and . . . not, nor; *when followed by enim or (sometimes) by vērō*, not. **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor; not . . . nor yet (126). *See* also alius, diū, feliciter, libenter, quisquam, sciō, tamen, ūllus, umquam, and volō.

Nervius, -vī, *m.*, a Nervian. *Pl.*, the Nervii (a people of northern Gaul).

nesciō, 4, -scīvī, not understand, not know, be ignorant of.

nihil, *indeclinable noun*, nothing. *Acc. as adv.*, not . . . at all (68).

Nīna, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

nisi, *conj.*, unless; *as adv.*, except, excepting.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, swim, float.

noctū, *adv.*, at night, by night, in the night, during the night, under cover of night; one night (68).

nocturnus, -a, -um, during the night, night (*adj.*).

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī, be unwilling, not be willing, not wish, not desire, not want; object, decline, refuse.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; honor (35).

nōn, *adv.*, not.

uōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, a number of. *As noun*, some.

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.

noster, -tra, -trum, our. *As noun*, nostrī, -ōrum, *m.*, our men (soldiers, troops, forces, force).

nōtus, -a, -um, partic. as adj., known.

Noveborācēnsis, -is, -e, of New York, New York (*adj.*).

novus, -a, -um, new, strange, odd, unexpected; revolutionary, upstart (138); *as part of a town or country name*, New. (*ali*)**quid novī** (*as neut. noun*), anything new (*lit.* of new). *Superl.*, last, hindermost (127). See also *agmen* and *rēs*.

nox, noctis, f., night, darkness, night-fall. *Abt. as adv.*, **nocte**, under cover of the darkness (130). **media nox**, midnight; **nocte intempestā**, at dead of night.

nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, without clothing.

nūllus, -a, -um, no, not a; **nūllō**, (*as masc. noun*), supplying the lacking *abl. of nēmō*, no one, none (39, 58, 82). See also *modus* and *pars*.

numerus, -ī, m., number, numbers, company, contingent, class; amount (66). **quōrum in numerō**, among whom.

Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidians; *with adj. force*, Numidian (117).

numquam, adv., never. **nōn numquam**, sometimes (63).

nunc, adv., now, to-day.

nūntiō, i, announce, report, send word; *with dat.*, inform.

nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, envoy, herald; news, information, message.

nūper, adv., lately, just before.

ob, prep. with acc., on account of. See also *causa* and *rēs*.

oblīvīscor, 3, **oblītus sum**, forget; *with gen.*, be forgetful (of).

obscūrus, -a, -um, dim; lowly (79).

obses, -idis, c., hostage.

obsideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus, besiege, beset, blockade, hem in, surround; guard, watch.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., siege.

obstinātus, -a, -um, determined, dogged.

obtineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, hold, have, enjoy (34). **rēgnum obtinēre**, rule.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., opportunity, chance.

occidēns, -entis, m., the west.

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cisus, kill, slay, put to death, murder, slaughter, massacre; cut down, cut to pieces, cut off.

occupō, i, occupy, take possession of, capture, seize, seize (upon); fill (89). *Partic. as adj.*, **occupātus, -a, -um**, guarded (133); busy, busied; interested (129).

occurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est, with dat., meet, head off.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.

octō, indeclinable adj., eight.

Octōber, -bris, -bre, of October.

oculus, -ī, m., eye.

officiū, -ī, n., duty, task; respect (131).

ōlim, adv., once upon a time, once, at one time, on one occasion, one day, one time.

omninō, adv., altogether, entirely.

omnis, -is, -e, all, every; whole, the whole (of), all (of); any (113, 129). *As noun, masc. pl.*, all, every one, everybody, they all; all (those) (118); *neut. pl.*, everything, all the (those) things, every expedient (120), all sorts of things (123). See also *locus* and *sciō*.

onerāria, -ae, f., transport, merchant vessel.

onustus, -a, -um, laden, loaded.

opera, -ae, *f.*, services; coöperation (135); attention (91, 108). See also **dō**.

oppidānī, -ōrum, *m.*, townspeople, townsmen, inhabitants of (the, one's) town.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, city.

opportūnus, -a, -um, auspicious, favorable, opportune.

opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, crush, overwhelm; catch (139).

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, attack, assault; (the) attacking (122).

oppugnō, 1, attack, assail, besiege, beset, invest; press the siege (140).

optimus, -a, -um, see **bonus**.

opus, -eris, *n.*, work, task; (earth) work. *Pl.*, fortifications, defenses, (siege) works. **opus est**, there is need (46).

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, argument, representations, remarks, words.

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle. See also **cōn-sistō**.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, (regular) order; rank, class; command, position (63). *Pl.*, ranks (107, 125); centurions (127).

ōrō, 1, beg.

ostendō, 3, ostendī, ostentus, display, disclose, show, point out, set forth; impart (the) information (133). **sē ostendere**, appear, show one's self.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, at leisure, off duty; quiet (33).

P., abbreviation of **Pūblius**, -lī, *m.*

pācō, 1, reduce to order. *Partic. as adj.*, **pācātus**, -a, -um, subdued, submissive.

Paelignus, -ī, *m.*, see **Fabius**.

paene, *adv.*, almost.

palam, *adv.*, openly, in full view;

frankly, freely, boldly; with no show of secrecy (126).

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh, glade.

pandō, 3, pandī, passus, spread.

Partic. as adj., **passus**, -a, -um, full spread (sails), outstretched (hands).

parcō, 3, **pepercī**, with *dat.*, be merciful (to), have pity (on), have mercy (upon), spare.

pāreō, 2, -uī, obey, comply; with *dat.*, give heed (to), obey, respond (to); be in subjection (to) (140).

pariō, 3, **peperi**, **partus**, win, gain.

parō, 1, prepare, get ready, make preparations for (51); fit out, make ready, put in order; with *infin.*, prepare, make preparations, plan. *Partic. as adj.*, **parātus**, -a, -um, in readiness, ready.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part, proportion, division, section, remnant; quarter, direction, side. *Pl.*, rôle (131). **ab eā parte**, in that quarter, on that side;

ex omnibus partibus, on all sides; in **omnīs partēs**, in every direction;

in **alterā parte** . . . in **alterā**, on the one hand . . . on the other; in **utramque partem**, pro and con

(103); **nūllam in partem**, no (sign be made) one way or the other (119);

quāscumque in partēs, whithersoever; **unā ex parte**, on one side.

Parthī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians.

parvus, -a, -um, small, little, scant; weak (force), low (hill). *Compar.*, minor, -or, -us, less, of no great size (85); lighter (shock); younger (68).

Superl., **minimus**, -a, -um, very small, (but) the slightest (91).

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace. See **mille**.

passus, -a, -um, see **pandō** and **pator**.

patefaciō, 3, -fēcī, -factus, throw

FIRST LATIN READER

2

- open; disclose, divulge. *Partic. as*
adj., patefactus, -a, -um, open (64).
 ater, -tris, *m.*, father.
 patior, 3, passus sum, allow, permit,
 suffer; endure, bear, suffer.
 patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, country;
 ancestral domain (75), rightful
 country (93).
 pauci, -ae, -a, few, a few (of), the few.
As masc. noun, a few, a mere hand-
 ful, (only) a few (45); *neut.*, a few
 (things, words, questions).
 paulatim, *adv.*, slowly, by slow de-
 grees, gradually.
 paulo, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. paulo
 ante, a little before (earlier), shortly
 before, a little while before; a little
 while ago (69); paulo post, a little
 later, shortly afterward, a short time
 afterward.
 paulum, *adv.*, a little, a little way, a
 little (short) distance; a short
 time.
 pax, pācia, *f.*, peace, state of peace.
 Pecsnot, -otis, *m.*, the name of an Ind-
 ian killed by Miles Standish.
 pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, funds; pay
 (94), bribe (94). See also solvō.
 pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier. *Pl.*, in-
 fantry, footmen, foot soldiers.
 pedetemptim, *adv.*, gradually, little by
 little, warily, slowly.
 peditātus, -ūs, *m.*, foot soldiery, infan-
 try, foot, foot soldiers, footmen; force
 of infantry (138).
 Pennsylvēnia, -ae, *f.*, Pennsylvania.
 per, *prep. with acc.*; (of space) through,
 across, over, along; around in (the
 grass), on (the sea); (of time)
 through, for; (agency) through
 (translated freely "from" or "by").
 See also simulatiō and tenebrae.
- percutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussus, strike,
 strike down.
 perducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, conduct.
Pass., be protracted, last (129).
 peregrinus, -ī, *m.*, foreigner.
 pereō, -īre, -ii, perish, die, lose (one's)
 life, be killed, fall.
 perficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, complete,
 finish, carry to completion, carry
 out; do, perform; construct, build.
 perfidia, -ae, *f.*, treachery, treason;
 perfuga, -ae, *c.*, renegade, traitor;
with adj. force, desert, flee; *with ad*
 perfugiō, 3, -fūgī, desert, flee; *with ad*
and acc., take refuge (with) (111).
 periculōsus, -a, -um, perilous, beset
 with dangers.
 periculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril, risk;
 crisis (104), dangerous state (112).
 perlegō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, read through.
 permōtus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*,
 startled, surprised, taken aback, con-
 fused; stirred (up), alarmed, shaken,
 worried, concerned; incensed (66),
 inspired (83), shamed (120).
 perpauci, -ae, -a, very few, a very
 few.
 perpetuus, -a, -um, everlasting, ever
 troublesome (139). in perpetuum
 (as *neut. noun*), for all time (108).
 perrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, break
 through, break down, destroy.
 perseverō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, persist,
 remain firm; *with infin.*, continue
 (to do a thing), persist (in doing a
 thing).
 persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est,
with dat., make it agreeable (to)
 persuade, induce.
 perterritus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj*
 terrified, thoroughly frightened,
 great fear, panic-stricken, thro

(o
 pert
 ei
 per
 t
 i
 pe
 m

- into a panic, in terror, scared out of (one's) wits; in their terror (129).
- pertinācia**, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy, persistence.
- pertineō**, 2, -tinui, *with ad and acc.*, be not far from (129); have a bearing upon, be of importance for (140).
- perturbō**, 1, throw into confusion, disconcert.
- pervenio**, 4, -veni, -ventum est, arrive, come, venture, make (one's) way: *with ad and acc.*, reach, arrive (at); be reduced (to) (125): *with in and acc.*, reach; effect an entrance (into) (85). **pervenire in potestatem**, *with gen.*, surrender (to).
- pēs**, **pedis**, *m.*, foot. See also **captus** (under **capiō**).
- pessimus**, -a, -um, see **malus**.
- petō**, 3, -ivi, -itus, look for, seek; ask, ask for, beg, sue for (peace); desire, try to get; get, find, secure: head for, make for (128, 139); hunt down (133); attack (131): *with ab and abl.*, request (132).
- Petrēius**, -ei, *m.*, (Marcus) Petreius, commanding officer of the army that defeated Catiline.
- Petrosidius**, -di, *m.*, (Lucius) Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army in Gaul.
- Philadelphia**, -ae, *f.*, Philadelphia.
- Philippus**, -i, *m.*, (King) Philip, an Indian chief.
- Philomēlium**, -li, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- pilum**, -i, *n.*, javelin.
- Pindenissus** (or -um), -i, *m.* or *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- Pinta**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- pīrāta**, -ae, *m.*, pirate, robber.
- piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish.
- plānē**, *adv.*, clearly, full well; fully, utterly.
- plānitiēs**, -ei, *f.*, plain, level ground.
- plērique**, **plēraque**, **plēraque**, most of, the majority of. *As masc. noun*, the majority, the most part, nearly all.
- plūrimī**, -ae, -a, see **multus**.
- plūrimum**, see **multum**.
- plūs**, **plūris**, *n.*, see **multus**.
- Pōcahonta**, -ae, *f.*, the name of an Indian princess.
- pōculum**, -i, *n.*, cup.
- poena**, -ae, *f.*, penalty. See also **dō** and **repetō**.
- Poenī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Carthaginians.
- polliceor**, 2, **pollicitus sum**, promise, agree, declare (89); offer, make offer of. **bene pollicērī**, make fair promises (135).
- Pollūx**, -ūcis, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- Pompēiānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Pompeians (*i.e.* adherents of Pompey).
- Pompēius**, -ei, *m.*; (1) Gnaeus Pompey, the opponent of Caesar in the civil war; (2) Gnaeus Pompey, an interpreter attached to Caesar's army in Gaul; (3) Pompey, a slave name (99).
- Pomptinus**, -i, *m.*, (Gaius) Pomptinus, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
- pōnō**, 3, **posui**, **positus**, place, put, station, fix; establish, build: *with in and abl.*, stake (upon) (112). *Partic. as adj.*, **positus**, -a, -um, located, situated. **castra pōnere**, encamp, pitch camp.
- Pontiac**, -acis, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

- populus**, -ī, *m.*, people (*i.e.* nation).
porrigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus, hold out, stretch out; display.
Porsinna, -ae, *m.*, the name of a king of Etruria.
porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.
portō, 1, carry, bring; accommodate (91).
portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, bay, port.
possum, posse, potuī, be able (can, etc.).
post, *adv.*, after, afterward, later. See also paulō and postquam.
post, *prep. with acc.*, after, later than; behind. See also tergum.
postea, *adv.*, afterward, later, thereafter.
(posterus), -a, -um, next, following. *As noun*, posterī, -ōrum, *m.*, descendants, posterity.
postquam or **post** . . . **quam**, *conj.*, after, when; when at length (64), as soon as (82).
postrēmō, *adv.*, finally, at last, at length, in the end.
postridiē, *adv.*, the next day, on the following day. **postridiē eius diēi**, on the following day (123).
postulō, 1, demand, require, ask.
potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power, control, possession; opportunity (109, 121). See also perveniō.
potior, 4, -ītus sum, *with abl.*, gain, get, secure; capture, gather in (117), get (take) possession of; occupy (129).
praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty, prize.
praedium, -ī, *n.*, estate, plantation, ranch, farm.
praefectus, -ī, *m.*, commander; captain (70, 74, 81), general (123), officer (70, 125), governor (4).
praemittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead, send forward.
praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, present, bonus, largess; bribe (71).
praecoccupō, 1, forestall, anticipate; reach first (125).
praepōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with dat.*, put in charge (of).
praesēns, -entis, see praesum.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
praesidium, -ī, *n.*, garrison, guard, escort; guard(ing) (138).
praestō, 1, -stitī, -stitus, show, exhibit, manifest, display; perform (105); guarantee (107).
praesum, -esse, -fui, be in charge, be in command; *with dat.*, be in charge (of), be in command (of). *Partic.* **praesēns**, -entis, present (135); *as adj.*, instant (death).
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, by, past, beyond.
praeterea, *adv.*, besides, furthermore, in addition.
praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, pass by; *perf. tense*, be past, be gone (131).
praetervehor, 3, -vectus sum, sail past.
praetōrius, -a, -um, of the commander; see cohors.
premō, 3, pressī, pressus, press hard, harass, beset.
pridem, see iam.
prīdiē, *adv.* (*sometimes as prep. with an acc.*), (on) the day before.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first, at the outset, in the beginning.
primum, *adv.*, first. See also cum (*conj.*) and ubi (*conj.*).
primus, -a, -um, first, chief, foremost, leading; the beginning of, the first part of; early, earliest; the very

- (88). **in primis** (*as masc. noun*), in the front rank (136). See also **aciēs**, **agmen**, and **lūx**.
- princeps**, -**ipis**, *m.*, chief citizen. *Pl.*, chief men, leading men.
- Prissilla**, -**ae**, *f.*, Priscilla.
- pristinus**, -**a**, -**um**, former, old-time; past (133).
- prius**, *adv.*, first, previously.
- priusquam**, *conj.*, before; *after a negative*, until (88, 109).
- prō**, *prep. with abl.*, in return for, instead of; *as*, for (10, 16, 83); *for*, in behalf of, in defense of (14, 35, 61, 63); *before*, in front of (107).
- probō**, *i*, approve.
- procul**, *adv.*, far, far away, remote, at a distance; in the distance (94, 113); *from a distance* (87, 125). **haud procul**, at no great distance, near at hand, near by.
- prōcurrō**, 3, -**cucurrī** or -**currī**, -**cursum** **est**, run forward, charge.
- prōdō**, 3, -**didī**, -**ditus**, betray; disclose (52).
- prōdūcō**, 3, -**dūxī**, -**ductus**, bring out, lead out, (cause to) march out.
- proelium**, -**i**, *n.*, battle, fight, fighting, (scene of) battle; battle (in the open) (122). See also **committō** and **dēsistō**.
- profectiō**, -**ōnis**, *f.*, departure.
- proficiscor**, 3, **profectus sum**, set out, set forth, start, start off, start out, proceed; depart (27), slip away (62).
- progredior**, 3, -**gressus sum**, advance, progress, proceed, move forward, move on, take up (the) march, go forward, go ahead; go forth (75); march, travel; sail, coast; push out (2), venture (3, 6).
- prōiciō**, 3, -**icēī**, -**iectus**, throw (out), hurl; throw over (98); lay down (arms). *Pass.*, fall forward (130).
- prōlābor**, 3, -**lapsus sum**, fall forward, slip down (57).
- prōmunturium**, -**i**, *n.*, promontory, cape.
- prōnūntiō**, *i*, announce, make announcement.
- prope**, *adv.*, near, near by. *Compar.*, rather near, quite near, very near, too near; *as prep. with acc.*, quite near to (107).
- prope**, *prep. with acc.*, near, close to, by, in the neighborhood of.
- properō**, *i*, -**āvī**, -**ātum est**, hasten, hurry, scurry; *with infin.*, make haste (78).
- propinquus**, -**a**, -**um**, near-by, near. *As noun*, **propinqui**, -**ōrum**, *m.*, relatives.
- prōpōnō**, 3, -**posuī**, -**positus**, set forth, explain.
- propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; through (fear).
- prōsper** (or -**erus**), -**era**, -**erum**, good (fortune, luck).
- prōspiciō**, 3, -**spēxī**, (-**spectus**), look forth, look out.
- prōtinus**, *adv.*, straight on; forth-with (129).
- prōvideō**, 2, -**vidī**, -**vīsus**, foresee, determine; look after, look out for (136).
- prōvincia**, -**ae**, *f.*, province, colony, territory, district.
- proximus**, -**a**, -**um**, next, nearest, adjoining, neighboring, near-by; next, following, next succeeding; that (night) (119).
- Frūsia** (or -**ās**), -**ae**, *m.*, the name of a king of Bithynia.

pūblicus, -a, -um, public, official (112). See also **rēs**.

puella, -ae, f., girl, maiden, maid.

puer, -erī, m., boy, lad; slave (133).

See also **magister**.

pueritia, -ae, f., boyhood, childhood.

pugna, -ae, f., battle.

pugnō, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, fight, war; keep up (the) fight (106).

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fair, pretty, charming; splendid, fine, (2, 98).

pulvis, -eris, m., dust (90, 118); powder.

putō, 1, think, believe.

Q., abbreviation of **Quīntus**, -ī, m.

quadrīduum, -ī, n., four days, a period (space) of four days.

quaerō, 3, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, seek, search, look for, hunt for; secure, get, find, recover; ask, inquire (122).

quaestus, -ūs, m., profit, gain.

quam, conj. and adv., than, rather than; with the *superl.* of *adjs.* and *advs.*, as . . . as possible.

quamquam, conj., although.

quandō, adv., see **sī**.

quantus, -a, -um, how great; what, what a. As *noun*, **quantum**, -ī, n., how much? See also **tantus**.

quārē, conj., therefore, wherefore, (and) accordingly, (and) so, (and) consequently; because of which, on which account, (and) on this account, as a consequence of which; whereat, whereupon.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, conj., with *partic.*, as if, pretending (to).

quattuor, *indeclinable adj.*, four.

-que, conj., and; and (so) (139).

queror, 3, **questus sum**, complain.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which (*gen.*, whose). With *antecedent implied*: *masc. pl.*, (some) who, (people) who, (those) who (90, 93, 120, 129, 140); *neut. sing.*, (a thing) which (37), (one) which (131); *neut. pl.*, (the things) which (110).

At the beginning of a sentence: as *noun*, who, which, he, she, it, this, they, these; *neut.*, this thing, these things, this: as *adj.*, which, what, this. (When a personal or demonstrative pronoun is used to render a relative, it is often desirable to supply a conjunction, such as "and," "but," etc.) See also **modus**. For the corresponding *interrog.* and *indef. pron.*, see **quis**.

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (**quidam**), a certain; a (3); a sort of (137). *Pl.*, some, certain, certain of. As *masc. noun*, a certain one; *pl.*, certain, some (people).

quidem, adv., indeed; at any rate (93).

See also **nē** . . . **quidem**.

quiescō, 3, **quiesvī**, (**quiesus**), rest, repose; take (one's) nap (71). **somnō quiescere**, be sunk in sleep.

quīn etiam, indeed, in fact, as a matter of fact, nay more, even; why (not *interrog.*).

Quīnctius, -tī, m., see **Flāminius**.

quindecim, *indeclinable adj.*, fifteen.

quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um, fiftieth.

quīnquāgīntā, *indeclinable adj.*, fifty.

quīnque, *indeclinable adj.*, five.

Quīntus, -ī, m., Quintus.

(**quis**) **quī**, **quae**, (**quid**) **quod**, *indef. pron.*, any one, any, etc. (see **nē** and **sī**).

(**quis**) **quī**, **quae**, (**quid**) **quod**, *indef.*

- terrog.* *pron.*, who? what? (*the latter, both noun and adj.*).
- quisquam**, —, **quicquam**, *in negative clauses*, any one, anything. **nec quisquam**, and no one; **nec quicquam**, and . . . nothing.
- quisque, quaeque, quodque** (**quidque**): *adj.*, each, every; *noun*, each (man) (120).
- quivis, quaevis, quodvis** (**quidvis**): *adj.*, any whatsoever; *noun*, any one whatsoever, anything whatsoever (77).
- quō**, *adv.*, whither, to which place; to which, into which: to the place to which (118); thither, there.
- quō**, *conj.*, in order that, so that.
- quod**, *conj.*, because, since, as, because of the fact that; on the ground that; that (60, 100); as for the fact that (45).
- quondam**, *adv.*, once, in days gone by, at one time, on one occasion, one time; previously (33).
- quoniam**, *conj.*, since, inasmuch as.
- quoque**, *adv. and conj.*, also, too, as well; even.
- quotiēna**, *conj.*, as often as.
- rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch.
- rapīō**, 3, **rapuī**, **raptus**, seize, catch, catch up, snatch away; carry away, steal, plunder (38).
- rārus**, -a, -um, (*in pl.*), scattered, far apart, few.
- ratīō**, -ōnis, *f.*, manner, way.
- ratus**, -a, -um, see **roor**.
- Rebilus**, -ī, *m.*, see **Caninius**.
- recipiō**, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus, receive, admit, harbor (140); regain, recover, retake. *in nāvigium recipere*, get (take) on board: *sē recipere*, with- draw, retreat, retire, return, go back, march back, fall back; march, proceed (117); *with in and acc.*, take refuge (in) (115).
- recūsō**, 1, object to, reject; shun, shrink from (15).
- redeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum est, return, come back, get back, make (one's) way back, go back; come again (125); *with ad and acc.*, be reduced (to) (112). **domum redire**, arrive home (5).
- redintegrō**, 1, renew.
- redūcō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, lead back, conduct back, withdraw, remove (122), bring back, carry back, take back, pull back; bring (123); *with ad and acc.*, restore (to) (93).
- referō**, -ferre, **rettulī**, -lātus, carry (back); repay (favor).
- refugiō**, 3, -fūgi, flee for protection; retire in haste (129).
- rēgina**, -ae, *f.*, queen.
- regiō**, -ōnis, *f.*; *sing. and pl.*, region, territory, district, locality, country, neighborhood.
- rēgnum**, -ī, *n.*, sway, control; kingdom, realm. See also **obtinēō**.
- regredior**, 3, -gressus sum, return, withdraw.
- religiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, religion, (religious) belief, religious system; religious considerations (131).
- religō**, 1, fasten, bind.
- relinquō**, 3, -liqui, -lictus, leave, leave behind, abandon; leave, set sail from; raise (siege): leave, allow (116). *Partic. as adj.*, **relictus**, -a, -um, remaining (88).
- reliquiae**, -arum, *f.*, remnants.
- reliquus**, -a, -um, the rest of, the remaining. *Pl.*, the other, other, the

- remaining, the rest of; the following (109); *as noun*, the others, those remaining, the remnant, the remainder, the rest. *reliquus esse*, be left, remain (115, 125).
- remittō**, 3, -*misi*, -*missus*, send back; subtract (114).
- reor**, 2, *ratus sum*, expect (136). *Partic.*, *ratus*, -*a*, -*um*, thinking, believing.
- repente**, *adv.*, suddenly, (all) of a sudden.
- repentinus**, -*a*, -*um*, sudden, unexpected.
- reperiō**, 4, *repperī*, *repertus*, find, discover.
- repetō**, 3, -*petīvī*, -*petītus*, exact (*lit.* demand back). *poenās repetere*, with *ab* and *abl.*, discipline, punish.
- reportō**, 1, carry back, bring back. *repperī*, see *reperiō*.
- reprimō**, 3, -*pressī*, -*pressus*, stop, suppress, check.
- rēs**, *rei*, *f.*, thing, things, action; affair, business, circumstance, fact, happening, matter, matters; act (121), casualty (106), concession (50), development (103); engagement, the fighting (129, 136); errand (14), event (42), incident (88), issue (72), observation (48), occurrence (71), performance (58), plan (94), point (129), proceeding (69), result (99), situation (108, 114), transaction (118), turn (of events) (92, 125), undertaking (40), venture (100). *Pl.*, business (139), cause (126), demonstration (121), means (127), things, appliances (122). *haec rēs* or *quae rēs* (*all cases, sing. and pl.*), this; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, and so, accordingly; *rēs gestae*, exploits; *rē vērā*, in very truth; *rēs novae*, insurrection, revolution (25); *rēs publica*, commonwealth, state, (one's) country (60). See also *committō* and *gerō*.
- resistō**, 3, -*stitī*, -*stitum est*, with *dat. case*, if any, resist, offer resistance, oppose, make opposition; hold (one's) own, stand (one's) ground, make a stand (136); go (against), hold out (against), hold (one's) ground (against).
- respondeō**, 2, -*spondī*, -*spōnsus est*, answer, reply; make answer, send answer; declare.
- respōnsum**, -*i*, *n.*, answer, reply.
- retineō**, 2, -*tinuī*, -*tentus*, hold back; hold down (91); keep (101); maintain, hold fast to (113); save (133).
- rettulī**, see *referō*.
- revocō**, 1, recall, call back.
- rēx**, *rēgis*, *m.*, king, chief, ruler.
- Rhēnus**, -*i*, *m.*, the ancient name of the Rhine.
- rideō**, 2, *risī*, (*risus*), laugh, smile.
- rīpa**, -*ae*, *f.*, (river) bank, bank (of river).
- rīvus**, -*i*, *m.*, stream; brook (82).
- rogō**, 1, ask, beg, request.
- Rōma**, -*ae*, *f.*, Rome.
- Rōmānus**, -*a*, -*um*, Roman. *As noun*, *Rōmānī*, -*ōrum*, *m.*, the Romans. See also *vir*.
- Rūfus**, -*i*, *m.*, see *Mārcius*.
- rursus**, *adv.*, again, in turn, once more.
- Sabinus**, -*i*, *m.*, (Quintus) Sabinus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.
- Saburra**, -*ae*, *m.*, the name of a gen-

- eral in the army of the African king Juba.
- sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *c.*, priest, priestess; medicine man; minister (97).
- saepe**, *adv.*, often, oftentimes, on many occasions, many times, frequently, repeatedly. *Compar.*, over and over again (87), repeatedly (122).
- saevitia**, -ae, *f.*, brutality, roughness, savagery, barbarity, bloodthirstiness.
- sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
- sagum**, -ī, *n.*, cloak.
- saltem**, *adv.*, at least, at any rate.
- saltō**, ī, -āvī, -ātum est, dance.
- salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety, well-being (91); salvation, escape, saving the day (125); life, lives (50, 72, 130).
- salūtī esse**, *with a second dat.*, save, prove the salvation (of), save the day (for) (63).
- Samarobrīva**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of northern Gaul.
- Sanga**, -ae, *m.*, see Fabius.
- Santa** (-ae) **Marīa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- Saratōga**, -ae, *f.*, Saratoga.
- satis**, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough; quite, rather (58), very (56). See also **sciō**.
- Savanna**, -ae, *f.*, Savannah.
- saxum**, -ī, *n.*, rock, cliff.
- scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, open boat, row-boat.
- scelerātus**, -a, -um, rascally, wicked, villainous.
- scilicet**, *adv.*, of course, to be sure, naturally; evidently (133).
- sciō**, 4, scīvī, scītus, know, understand. *nec satis scīre*, and be somewhat undecided (104); *omnia scīre*, know all (about the subject) (31).
- scribō**, 3, scripsī, scriptus, write; state (114).
- sē, sēsē**, see **suī**.
- secundum**, *prep. with acc.*, along.
- secundus**, -a, -um, following; favorable (131). See also **flūmen**.
- secūris**, -is, *f.*, battle-ax, ax, tomahawk.
- secūtus**, -a, -um, see **sequor**.
- sed**, *conj.*, but; *resuming*, now (136).
- sēdecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixteen.
- sedeō**, 2, sēdī, sessum est, take a seat, sit.
- sēdēs**, -is, *f.*, seat (of war) (82). *Pl.*, location, abode (65); district, habitation (66).
- semel**, *adv.*, once. **semel atque iterum** or **semel iterumque**, time and again, several times.
- semper**, *adv.*, always, ever, at all times.
- Semprōnia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a woman implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline.
- senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, Parliament (34, 35); Congress (39, 43, 44); session of Congress (44); (the Roman) senate (42, 132, 134, 137).
- senex**, **senis**, *m.*, old man; *with adj.* *force*, aged.
- sententia**, -ae, *f.*, view, sentiment, opinion, suggestion.
- sentiō**, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus, realize, know, feel; see, perceive, notice; find (96).
- septem**, *indeclinable adj.*, seven.
- September**, -bris, -bre, of September.
- septimus**, -a, -um, seventh. **septimus quinquāgēsimus**, fifty-seventh.
- septuāgēsimus**, -a, -um, seventieth.
- septuāgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, seventy.
- Sepyra**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

sequor, 3, **secutus sum**, follow. **vestigii sequi**, follow the trail (61).

servo, 1, save, rescue, preserve, keep.

servus, -i, *m.*, slave; helper (74).

sex, *indeclinable adj.*, six.

sexaginta, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty.

Sextilis, -is, -e, of August.

sī, *conj.*, if, in case; if perchance, on the chance that, in the hope that; (to see) if (121). **sī modo**, if only, provided (that); **sī quando**, if at any time, whenever; **sī quī** (*noun*), if any; **sī quid novī**, if anything new.

sic, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner, in this way, through (by) this means; in such a way (54, 133).

sica, -ae, *f.*, dagger.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.

Siculus, -i, *m.*, (a) Sicilian.

sicut, *conj.*, just as; thus, for example.

signum, -i, *n.*, sign, signal; watchword, countersign (99). *Pl.*, standards.

silentium, -i, *n.*, silence, quietness (86). *Abl. as adv.*, **silentiō**, silently, in silence.

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, wood, grove.

similis, -is, -e, similar; *with dat.*, similar (to), resembling, like.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time, simultaneously; at one and the same time (105, 136). **simul atque**, as soon as (124); **simul cum**, together with (139).

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, pretense, show. **per simulatiōnem**, under pretense (122).

simulō, 1, pretend, make believe, make it appear (49); affect, pretend (135).

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. See also *mora* and *timor*.

singuli, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one, isolated (66).

socius, -a, -um, allied (137). *As noun*, **socius**, -i, *m.*, ally, assistant, partner (98). *Pl.*, **allices**, friends; participants (135); friendly natives (140).

solēō, 2, **solitus sum**, be accustomed, be wont, be apt, be in the habit (of doing a thing); *imperf. and perf. tenses*, used. *Translated impersonally*, be (one's) wont, be (one's) custom.

solum, *adv.*, only. **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

solus, -a, -um, alone, in solitude; unaided, single-handed; in single combat (72).

solvō, 3, **solvī**, **solutus**, unfetter (91); pay (debt). **nāvem (-ēs)olvere**, cast off, set sail; **pecūniamolvere**, defray expense (89).

somnus, -i, *m.*, sleep, slumber, nap. See also **dō**.

sonus, -i, *m.*, sound, noise.

sōpītus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, asleep.

spatium, -i, *n.*, space, room; period (120), respite (129).

speciēs, -ēi, *f.*, show, display, parade, pretense, guise. **ad speciem**, as a blind (122).

spectō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), look, verge, lie.

speculor, 1, spy, view.

spernō, 3, **sprēvī**, **sprētus**, scorn, disregard.

sperō, 1, hope, hope for.

spēs, -ēi, *f.*, hope, reliance (125); expectation (128), anticipation (135); chance (125), prospect (126), promise (111).

spoliō, 1, spoil, plunder, despoil, pilage; prey upon (81, 92, 98).

sprētus, -a, -um, see **spernō**.

- Spurinna**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a priest who predicted the death of Julius Caesar.
- Standisius**, -sī, *m.*, (Miles) Standish.
- statim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately, instantly, promptly, without delay, without parley (71); at the very outset (120).
- statuō**, 3, **statuī**, **statūtus**, set up (35); decide, determine, make up (one's) mind.
- stipendium**, -ī, *n.*, pay. *Pl.*, military service; see **faciō**.
- stō**, 1, **stetī**, stand, be stationed; ride (at anchor); stand, stop, halt (85).
- strēnuus**, -a, -um, active, energetic, sturdy.
- streptus**, -ūs, *m.*, bustle, noise, confusion.
- sub**, *prep. with abl.*, under, beneath; *with acc.*, toward.
- subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.
- sublātus**, -a, -um, see **tollō**.
- subsequor**, 3, -**secūtus sum**, follow rapidly; follow (124).
- subsidiū**, -ī, *n.*, support, reinforcement, relief, help. See also **veniō**.
- sui**, **sibi**, himself, him; herself, her; itself, it; themselves, them. See also: **sē** with **cōferō**, **coniungō**, **dēdō**, **dēmittō**, **dō**, **gerō**, **habēō**, **ostendō**, **recipiō**, **tegō**, and **teneō**: **inter sē** with **agō**, **cohortor**, and **concurrō**: **sēcum** with **habēō**.
- sum**, **esse**, **fui**, be, become (111), prove to be; remain, stop (137); stand, be located; happen (127). See also **auxilium**, **salūs**, and **ūsus**.
- summus**, -a, -um, see **superior**.
- sūmō**, 3, **sūmpsi**, **sūmptus**, take, procure, get; swallow (133); put on (100).
- super**, *prep. with acc.*, above, over (72); upon, on top of (56).
- superbia**, -ae, *f.*, haughtiness, arrogance.
- superior**, -ior, -ius, superior, stronger; higher (130); past, former, earlier, previous. **Superl.**, **suprēmus**, -a, -um, supreme, and **summus**, -a, -um, greatest, very great, great; the top of (86): acute (crisis); full (speed), all (speed), the top of (one's speed); grave (peril), hardest, heaviest (work), hearty (approval), (commander) in chief, most distressing (scarcity), most splendid (valor), pressing (need), severest (hardship), utmost (daring), utter (despair, lawlessness).
- superō**, 1, surpass, excel, prevail (104); defeat, overcome, outdo, worst, beat.
- supīnus**, -a, -um, on (one's) back, upon (one's) back, face upward; placed flat on (one's) back (94).
- suprā**, *adv.*, above.
- suprēmus**, -a, -um, see **superior**.
- surgō**, 3, **surrēxi**, **surrēctum est**, rise up, arise, rise.
- suscipiō**, 3, -**cēpi**, -**ceptus**, undertake.
- suspēnsus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, anxious.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion; impression (127).
- suspīcor**, 1, suspect, think.
- sustineō**, 2, -**tinui**, -**tentus**, withstand, sustain, break the force of (118); stay (hunger).
- sustulī**, see **tollō**.
- suus**, -a, -um, his, of his, her, their, of theirs; his own, her own, etc. *As noun*, **sui**, -**ōrum**, *m.*, his men

- (followers, following, forces, force); their men (followers): his own people (16); their own lines (121).
- Synnada**, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- Syria**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Asia.
- T.**, abbreviation of **Titus**, -ī, *m.*
- tabernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, tent, wigwam.
- tacitus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, silent, motionless; quiet, in silence.
- Taeconderōga**, -ae, *f.*, Ticonderoga.
- Tallapūsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tallapoosa, a river of Alabama.
- tam**, *adv.*, so.
- tamen**, *adv. and conj.*, however, but, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still.
- nec tamen**, and yet . . . not.
- tantopere**, *adv.*, so greatly.
- tantum**, *adv.*, merely, only, but.
- tantus**, -a, -um, so great, so large, such, such great, such large; so base, such base (41), so grievous (34), so remarkable (110), so severe (33), such (absolute) (86), such serious (134); overwhelming (134). **quantō . . . tantō**, (*with two comparatives*) the . . . the; **tantus . . . quantus**, such . . . as.
- tardē**, *adv.*, slowly, with little speed.
- Taurus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a mountain range of Asia Minor.
- Tebarānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of Asia Minor.
- tēctum**, -ī, *n.*, roof; structure, building.
- Tecumsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tecumseh, an Indian chief.
- tegō**, 3, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, cover, conceal; bury (64). **sē tegere**, get under cover.
- tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon; shaft shot, bullet. *Pl.*, ammunition (59, 83, 92). See also **inmittō** and **interficiō**.
- temerē**, *adv.*, rashly, hastily, incautiously, lightly (82).
- temeritās**, -ātis, *f.*, rashness, rash action, hasty act, incautiousness, folly.
- tempestās**, -ātis, *f.*, storm.
- templum**, -ī, *n.*, temple (71); church.
- tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time, period, season, occasion, hour (100); circumstances (139). *Pl.*, days, times; ages (45).
- tenebrae**, -arum, *f.*, darkness. **per tenebrās**, in the darkness (gloom).
- teneō**, 2, -uī, hold, occupy, garrison; have (128); keep to (139). **memoriā tenēre**, remember (34); **sē tenēre**, remain constantly (133).
- tergum**, -ī, *n.*, back. **ā tergō** and **post tergum**, in the rear. See also **vertō**.
- terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth, land; country, land, district; the ground; dirt, earth (110).
- terreō**, 2, -uī, -itus, frighten, intimidate, overawe, scare. *Partic. as adj.*, **terrītus**, -a, -um, frightened, terror-stricken, alarmed, abashed.
- tertius**, -a, -um, third.
- Thracēs**, -um, *m.*, the Thracians, a nation dwelling to the north of ancient Greece.
- Tiberis**, -is, *m.* (*acc. sing.*, -ī), the Tiber.
- Tillius**, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tillius (Cimber), one of the murderers of Julius Caesar.
- timeō**, 2, -uī, be afraid, fear, be apprehensive; fear, be afraid of, be in fear of.

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, apprehension, alarm, panic (117), demoralization (122). *sine timōre*, with no thought of danger, unconcerned.

tolerō, *i*, keep at bay; tide over (112).

tollō, *3*, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, raise, put up, lift; set up (shout, cry); weigh (anchor): dislodge, drive away (139). *Pass.*, (hope) be dispelled (given up, gone). *Partic. as adj.*, **sublātus**, -a, -um, puffed up (108).

tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, the whole of, total, all, entire.

tractō, *i*, handle, manage; have on (one's) hands, be engaged in (40).

trādō, *3*, -didī, -ditus, give up, surrender, hand over, pass over; pass (hand) up (86); cede; transfer (91): assign (112); impart (27): say (88), state (131). *trāditum est*, it is related (stated, *lit.* handed down); the story runs (88).

trādūcō, *3*, -dūxī, -ductus, take across, bring across.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, dart.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, over.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, cross, cross over, come over, go over; come over, desert (119).

trānsportō, *i*, take over, carry over; carry away (91, 92).

Trasumennus, -ī, *m.*, the name of a lake of central Italy.

trēs, **trēs**, **tria**, three.

Trēverī, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* (with or without **militum**), captain (27), major (28), staff-officer (32); (military) tribune (103 ff.).

tribūtum, -ī, *n.*, tribute, tax.

trīdūm, -ī, *n.*, three days.

trīgintā, *indeclinable adj.*, thirty.

tū, **tui**, you; *reflexive*, yourself (14).

tuli, see **ferō**.

Tullius, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tullius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time, on that occasion, on this occasion; at the time (28, 83); at such times (7); for the time being (122); now (139): thereupon, whereupon; later (113): furthermore, in the second place (16, 114). See also **cum** (*conj.*).

tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, alarm, confusion.

turma, -ae, *f.*, company (of cavalry), squadron. (*A turma enrolled about 30 men.*)

turris, -is, *f.*, (*acc. sing. -im*), tower.

tūtō, *adv.*, safely, in safety.

tūtus, -a, -um, safe; (place) of safety.

ubi, *adv.*; (*interrogative*) where? (*Relative*) where; upon which (11), in which (33); *beginning a new sentence*, there, (and) there, (but) there, etc. (*cf. what is said of the translation of the relative quī*).

ubi, *conj.*, when. **ubi primum**, on the first occasion that, the first time that.

ūllus, -a, -um, any; some (65); a single (137). **nē ūllus**, that no; **nec ūllus**, and . . . no, and . . . none.

ulterior, -ior, -ius, farther; *in some proper names*, South (60, 70).

Superl., **ultimus**, -a, -um, last, final.

ultimus, -a, -um, see **ulterior**.

ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, actually. **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth, up and down.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, cry, shriek, war-whoop.

Umbrenus, -ī, *m.*, (Publius) Umbrenus, a freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever. **neque umquam**, and never.

ūnā, *adv.*, together. **ūnā cum**, *with abl.*, along with, together with, in company with, with; side by side with (83).

Uncās, -ae, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which, from whence; from thence (39).

undecimus, -a, -um, eleventh.

undēviginti, *indeclinable adj.*, nineteen.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides, in all quarters, everywhere, all about, in all directions, in every direction; from every side, from all sides, from every quarter, from all quarters.

universi, -ae, -a, all, one and all, in a body.

ūnus, -a, -um, one, a single; (but) one (125); the one, the single (126). *As noun, masc. sing.*, one (132).

ad ūnum, to a man, to the last man, utterly.

urbs, *urbis*, *f.*, city; the city (*i.e.* Rome) (42, 45, 86).

usque, *adv.*, even. **usque ad**, *with acc.*, as far as, even to; until.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, assistance, service; experience (133). **ūsui esse**, (*freely*), be useful, be helpful, be used; be needed, be needful (110, 122, 123). See also **veniō**.

ūsus, -a, -um, see **ūtor**.

ut, uti, *conj.*; (*causal*) inasmuch as (126): (*purpose*) to, in order to, in order that, so that, that; for the

purpose (of doing a thing), with the idea (of doing a thing): (*relative*), as; (just) as (135): (*result*) so that, that, as to: (*substantive*) that (110): (*temporal*) when (131, 138).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), either, both. *As noun, masc. sing.*, each, each man (of two).

utī, see **ut**.

Utica, -ae, *f.*, the name of an African city.

ūtor, 3, **ūsus sum**, *with abl.*, use, make use of, enjoy, have, employ, have recourse to, have occasion to use, bring into play, put into execution: accept, profit by (129), depend upon (71); devote (109); give utterance to (92); keep up (127); stoop to (63); *with a second abl.*, use (have) . . . (as) (129).

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife; squaw.

vagor, 1, wander, drift.

valētūdō, -inis, *f.*, health.

validus, -a, -um, strong, hardy, powerful; large (army).

vallēs, -is, *f.*, valley, glade.

vāllum, -ī, *n.*, wall, rampart, intrenchment.

varius, -a, -um, varying, various, of various kinds.

Vārus, -ī, *m.*, see **Attius**.

Vasingtō, -ōnis, *m.*, (George) Washington.

-ve, conj., or; and (120).

vectus, -a, -um, see **vehō**.

vehementer, *adv.*, exceedingly much; deeply (42), energetically (94), earnestly (104), highly (139), zealously (135).

vehō, 3, **vēxī**, **vectus**, carry, bring.

- convey, ferry over. *Pass.*, be carried, proceed, sail, ride. *equō vocatus*, on horseback.
- vel**, *conj. and adv.*; with *superl. of adjs. or advs.*, even (98). *vel . . . vel*, either . . . or, both . . . and.
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, sail. See also *dō*.
- vēndō**, 3, *vēndidi*, *vēnditus*, sell.
- venēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison.
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon.
- veniō**, 4, *vēni*, *ventum est*, come, proceed, march; arrive (126); draw near (118); with *in and acc.*, arrive (in). *auxiliō venīre*, (*freely*) come to help; with *a second dat.*, come to the help (of): in *dēditiō-nem venīre*, surrender; in *manūs venīre*, with *gen.*, fall into the hands (of): *subsidiō venīre*, (*freely*) come to the rescue; with *a second dat.*, come (go) to the help (of): *ūsū venīre*, be experienced, happen (133) (*ūsū* is *perhaps an irregular dat. form*).
- vēnor**, 1, hunt.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word.
- vereor**, 2, -itus *sum*, fear, be afraid. *Partic.*, *veritus*, -a, -um, fearing, apprehensive; apprehensive of, alarmed at.
- vērō**, *conj.*, indeed, but, nevertheless, however, whereas; in truth, as a matter of fact, in fact: moreover (27); and (29, 42, 120).
- Verrēs**, -is, *m.*, (Gaius) Verres, a (Roman) governor of Sicily.
- versor**, 1, be involved, be; move about; bear a part (79).
- versus**, see *ad . . . versus*.
- Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of a Gaul friendly to the Romans.
- vertō**, 3, *verti*, *versus*, turn. *terga vertere*, wheel about.
- vesper**, -eri and -eris, *m.*, evening. *sub vesperum*, toward evening.
- vestigium**, -ī, *n.*, track, mark. See also *insequor* and *sequor*.
- vestimentum**, -ī, *n.*, garment. *Pl.*, clothing, clothes, dress.
- vestis**, -is, *f.*, clothing.
- veterāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, veterans, veteran soldiers, veteran troops.
- vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old-time, one-time.
- via**, -ae, *f.*, route, road, way, highway, track, trail, path; journey (126).
- vicinus**, -ī, *m.*, neighbor.
- victōria**, -ae, *f.*, victory.
- victus**, -a, -um, see *vincō*.
- vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village, hamlet.
- videō**, 2, *vidi*, *visus*, see, view, behold, observe, watch; catch sight of, sight; see, find, discover (134).
- videor**, 2, *visus sum*, seem, appear. *Used impersonally*, *vidētur*, seem best (103).
- vigilia**, -ae, *f.*, watch (*i.e.* division of the night). *Pl.*, wakefulness (104).
- vigilō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum *est*, keep awake, be alert, be awake; sit up (39).
- viginti**, *indeclinable adj.*, twenty.
- villa**, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse; farm (53).
- vincō**, 3, *vici*, *victus*, defeat, conquer, subdue, overcome, worst, beat, repulse; be victorious, prevail. *Partic. as adj.*, *victus*, -a, -um, defeated, beaten.
- vinculum**, -ī, *n.*, chain. *Pl.*, fetters, chains.
- vir**, *virī*, *m.*, man, gentleman; husband (73). *vir Britannicus*, (an) Englishman; *vir Rōmānus*, (a) Roman.
- Virgīnia**, -ae, *f.*, Virginia.

- virtūs, -ūtis, f.**, valor, bravery, courage, grit; coolness (110).
- vis, —, f.**, force (73), violence (131); vigor (136), (dead) earnest (136); amount (70, 74, 82), cloud (of dust) (118). *Pl.*, strength. See also **capiō**.
- vita, -ae, f.**, life. *Sing. often found where Engl. would use pl.* See also **agō**.
- vītō, i**, avoid, make (one's) way around; avert (danger) (122).
- vivō, 3, vixi, victum est**, live; eke out an existence (39).
- vīvus, -a, -um**, alive (132). *As noun*, **vīvī, -ōrum, m.**, the living (91).
- vix, adv.**, scarcely, hardly.
- vocō, i**, call, summon, invite; call, name. *in iūs vocāre*, prosecute, bring to trial (45).
- volō, velle, volui**, desire, wish, please; be anxious, want, aim, plan; be willing, be ready. *nec velle*, and . . . be unwilling, and . . . refuse (86).
- vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice; tones (95), articulation (131); remark, question (14).
- vulnerō, i**, wound. *Partic. as adj.*, **vulnerātus, -a, -um**, wounded; *as noun*, **vulnerāti, -ōrum, m.**, the wounded.
- vulnus, -eris, n.**, wound, injury.
- vultus, -ūs, m.**, countenance, expression.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses refer to sections of the English-Latin Exercises. For numerals, see the list included in the Summary of Forms, p. 353 ff.)

- a, an, **quidam, quaedam, quoddam** ;
but usually not translated.
a certain, **quidam, quaedam, quoddam.**
- able, be, **possum, posse, potui.**
about, *adv.*, **circiter.**
about, *prep.*, **dē** with *abl.*
about to: *translate by the future participle.*
- abundance, **cōpia, -ae, F.**
accomplish, **efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.**
accustomed, be, *perf. tense of cōn-*
suēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).
- across, **trāns** with *acc.*
address, **appellō, 1.**
adopt (*plan*), **capiō, 3, cēpī, captus.**
advance, **prōgredior, 3, -gressus sum.**
afraid, be, **timeō, 2, -uī.**
Africa, **Āfrica, -ae, F.**
after, *adv.*, **post.**
after, *conj.*, **cum.** *In connection with a participle, often well rendered by an ablative absolute construction.*
afterward, **post; postea** (96).
again, **iterum.**
against, *in with acc.*
age, **aetās, -ātis, F.**
of age, *use* **nātus, -a, -um.**
ago, **abhinc.**
aid, *noun*, **auxilium, -li, N.** *See also under send.*
- aid, *verb*, **adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus.**
See also come to aid.
alarm, **terreō, 2, -uī, -itus.**
Alexandria, **Alexandrēa, -ae, F.**
all, **omnis, -is, -e.**
all (*speed*), **summus, -a, -um;**
superl. of magnus, -a, -um.
allow, **patior, 3, passus sum.**
almost, **paene.**
alone, **sōlus, -a, -um.**
along with, **ūnā cum** with *abl.*
already, **iam.**
also, **quoque.**
although, **quamquam.**
always, **semper.**
ambassador, **légātus, -ī, M.**
America, **America, -ae, F.**
American, **Americānus, -a, -um.**
Americans, the, **Americānī, -ōrum, M.**
among, **apud** with *acc.*; *in with abl.* (75, 77); **inter** with *acc.* (109).
and, **et; -que; atque, ac.**
and never, **neque umquam.**
and nobody, and no one, **nec quisquam.**
and not, **neque, nec.**
and . . . not any one, **nec quisquam.**
and nothing, **nec quicquam.**
and so, **itaque.**
animal, **animal, -ālis, N.**

announce, *nūntiō*, 1.

another, *alius*, *aliā*, *aliud*.

answer, *inquam*; *respondeō*, 2,
-*spondī*, -*spōnsum est* (130).

Antonius, *Antōnius*, -*nī*, M.

anxious, *be*, *volō*, *velle*, *volui*.

any, *ūllus*, -*a*, -*um*. *The word is omitted in such phrases as "if there are any who," etc.*

any one: *see* and . . . not any one,
and if any one.

anybody, anything: *see under if*.

appear, *videor*, 2, *visus sum*.

appoint, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*.

approach, *noun*, *adventus*, -*ūs*, M.

approach, *verb*, *appropinquō*, 1, -*āvī*,
-*ātum est* (*with dat.*, or *ad and acc.*); *accēdō*, 3, -*cessī*, *cessum est* (*with ad and acc.*).

arms, *arma*, -*ōrum*, N.

army, *exercitus*, -*ūs*, M.

Arnold, *Arnoldius*, -*dī*, M.

arrival, *adventus*, -*ūs*, M.

arrive, *pervenio*, 4, -*vēnī*, -*ventum est*.

arrive at, *pervenio*, 4, -*vēnī*,
-*ventum est*, *with ad and acc.*

arrow, *sagitta*, -*ae*, F.

as, *temporal and causal conj.*, *cum*.

as to, *introducing a result clause*, *ut*.
as yet, *adhūc*.

Asia, *Asia*, -*ae*, F.

ask, ("inquire") *inquam* (4, 6);
rogō, 1; *quaerō*, 3, *quaesivī*,
quaesitus, *with ex and abl. of the person questioned*: ("request") *hortor*, 1.

assassinate, *occidō*, 3, -*cidī*, -*cisus*.

assault, *impetus*, -*ūs*, M.

assist, *adiuvō*, 1, -*iūvī*, -*iūtus*. *See also* come to assist.

assistance: *see under go*.

at, *in with acc.* *See also* arrive at.

at any rate, *certē*.

at home, *domī*.

at last, at length, *postrēmō*.

at night, *noctū*.

at once, *statim*.

at times, *interdum*.

Atlantic, *Atlanticus*, -*a*, -*um*.

attack, *noun*, *impetus*, -*ūs*, M.

attack, *verb*, *adorior*, 4, -*ortus sum*.

attempt, *cōnor*, 1.

Aurelian, *Aurēlius*, -*a*, -*um*.

authority, *auctoritās*, -*ātis*, F.

away, *be*, *absum*, -*esse*, *āful*.

ax, *secūris*, -*is*, F.

back, *tergum*, -*ī*, N.

bad, *malus*, -*a*, -*um*.

badly, *male*.

baggage, *impedimenta*, -*ōrum*, N.

Balbus, *Balbus*, -*ī*, M.

band, *manus*, -*ūs*, F.

bank, *rīpa*, -*ae*, F.

basket, *corbula*, -*ae*, F.

battle, *proelium*, -*ī*, N.; *pugna*, -*ae*,
F.

battle line, *aciēs*, -*ēī*, F.

battle rage, there be a fierce battle,
pass. of *pugnō*, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātum est*, *with ācritēr*.

battlefield, *proelium*, -*ī*, N.

bay, *portus*, -*ūs*, M.

be, *sum*, *esse*, *ful*.

bear, *noun*, *ursa*, -*ae*, F.

bear, *verb*, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.

beat, *vincō*, 3, *vici*, *victus*.

beautiful, *pulcher*, -*chra*, -*chrum*.

because, *quod*.

become, *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*.

before, *adv.*, *ante*.

began, *coepī, coepisse, coeptus*.
 believe, *crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditus*;
 putō, 1.
 bench, *subsellium, -ī, N*.
 berry, *bāca, -ae, F*.
 better, best: *see* good *and* well.
 bier, *feretrum, -ī, N*.
 bird, *avis, -is, F*.
 black, *āter, -tra, -trum*.
 board, *cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus*.
 boast, *glōrior, 1*.
 bold, *audāx, gen. -ācis*.
 boldly, *audācter*.
 boldness, *audācia, -ae, F*.
 book, *liber, -brī, M*.
 boy, *puer, -erī, M*.
 brave, *fortis, -is, -e*.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bravery, *virtūs, -ūtis, F*.
 break, break down, *frangō, 3, frēgī, fractus*.
 break camp, *castra moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus*.
 bridge, *pōns, pontis, M*.
 bring, ("carry") *adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus*; *by animals, ships, etc., vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus*: ("lead")
 dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus.
 bring back, *redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus*.
 British, the British, *Britannī, -ōrum, M*.
 broad, *lātus, -a, -um*.
 brother, *frāter, -tris, M*.
 Brundisium, *Brundisium, -sī, N*.
 build, *faciō, 3, fecī, factus*.
 bullet, *tēlum, -ī, N*.
 burn, *incendō, 3, -cendī, -cēnsus*.
 burst forth, *ērumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum est*.
 busied, busy, *occupātus, -a, -um*.
 but, *sed; autem*.

buy, *emō, 3, ēmī, emptus*.
 by, *ā, ab with abl*.
 by chance, *forte*.
 Cabot, *Cabot, -otis, M*.
 Caesar, *Caesar, -aris, M*.
 call, ("name") *appellō, 1 (the participle "called" may often be rendered by the abl. nōmine, lit. "by name")*: ("summon")
 vocō, 1; arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
 call for, *arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus*.
 camp, *castra, -ōrum, N*.
 can, *possum, posse, potui*.
 Canada, *Canada, -ae, F*.
 captain, *lēgātus, -ī, M*; (*of ship*)
 praefectus, -ī, M.
 capture, *capiō, 3, cēpī, captus*.
 Capua, *Capua, -ae, F*.
 care, *noun, diligentia, -ae, F*.
 care for, *cūrō, 1*.
 not care, *nōlō, nōlle, nōlui*.
 Carpenter, *Faber, -brī, M*.
 carry, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; portō, 1; adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus* (24, 60); *by animals, ships, etc., vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus*.
 carry back, *redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus*.
 Carthage, *Carthāgō, -inis, F*.
 Carthaginians, the, *Poenī, -ōrum, M*.
 Castor, *Castor, -oris, M*.
 catch, *capiō, 3, cēpī, captus*.
 Catiline, *Catilīna, -ae, M*.
 cattle, (*masc.*) *pl. of bōs, bovis, C*.
 cavalry, *cavalrymen, pl. of eques, -itis, M*.
 centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis, M*.
 certain: *see* a certain.
 certainly, *certē* (2, 8); *profectō* (77, 128).

chance, *facultās, -ātis, F.*

by chance, *forte.*

chicken, *gallīna, -ae, F.*

children, *liberī, -ōrum, M.*

Cicero, *Cicerō, -ōnis, M.*

circumstance, *rēs, rei, F.*

citizen, *civīs, -is, C. (pl., M.).*

city, the city, *urbs, urbis, F.*

Claudia, *Claudia, -ae, F.*

climb, *cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -acēnsus.*

Cloelia, *Cloelia, -ae, F.*

close, *claudō, 3, clausi, clausus.*

cloud, *nūbēs, -is, F.*

coast: *see* shore.

Columbus, *Columbus, -ī, M.*

come, *veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est; perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est (40, 60, 74, 102).*

come back, *redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.*

come nearer, *propius accedō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est.*

come to aid, come to assist, come to help, *auxiliō veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est (with a second dative).*

come to reinforce, *subsidiō (or auxiliō) veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est (with a second dative).*

come together, *conveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.*

come up, *accedō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est.*

commander, *dux, ducis, M.; imperātor, -ōris, M.; lēgātus, -ī, M.; praefectus, -ī, M.*

companion, *comes, -itis, C.*

company, *cohors, -rtis, F.*

compel, *cōgō, 3, coēgī, coactus.*

conduct, *dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.*

confusion, *strepitus, -ūs, M.*

conquer, *superō, 1.*

consequently, *itaque.*

consul, *cōnsul, -ulis, M.*

Cornwallis, *Cornivallis, -is, M.*

country, *rūs, rūris, N.*

countryman, *civīs, -is, C. (pl., M.).*

courage, *virtūs, -ūtis, F.; animus, -ī, M.; fortitūdō, -inis, F.*

Crassus, *Crassus, -ī, M.*

crops, *pl. of frumentum, -ī, N.*

cross, cross over, *trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus.*

crush, *opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus.*

cry: *see* weep.

cry out, *clāmō, 1.*

Cuba, *Cūba, -ae, F.*

Curio, *Cūriō, -ōnis, M.*

Custer, *Custer, -trī, M.*

custom, be (one's), *perf. tense of cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).*

dagger, *sica, -ae, F.*

daily, *cotidiē.*

dally: *see* delay (*verb*).

dare, *audeō, 2, ausus sum.*

daring, *audācia, -ae, F.*

daughter, *filia, -ae, F.*

day, *diēs, -ēī, M. (sing. sometimes F.).*

days, *pl. of tempus, -oris, N. (8, 54, 72).*

one day, *ōlim.*

dead, *mortuus, -a, -um. See also* shoot dead.

decide, *cōstituō, 3, -stitui, -stitutus.*

declare war upon, *bellum indicō, 3, -dixi, -dictus, with dat.*

defeat, *vincō, 3, vici, victus.*

defend, *dēfendō, 3, -fendi, -fēnsus.*

delay, *noun, mora, -ae, F.*

delay, *verb, moror, 1.*

depart, *abeō*, -ire, -iī, -itum est.
 departure, *discessus*, -ūs, M.
 desert, *relinquō*, 3, -līquī, -lictus.
 deserter, *perfuga*, -ae, M.
 design, *cōnsilium*, -lī, N.
 desire: *see want*.
 destroy, *dēlēō*, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.
 detained, be, *moror*, 1.
 determine: *see decide*.
 die, *morior*, 3, *mortuus sum* (*future partic. moritūrus*).
 diligence, *diligentia*, -ae, F.
 dine, *cēnō*, 1, -āvī, (-ātus).
 dinner, *cēna*, -ae, F.
 direction, *pars*, *partis*, F.
 in every direction, *undique*.
 discover, *inveniō*, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.
 disembark, *ē nāvī* (*nāvibus*) *ēgre-*
 dior, 3, -gressus sum.
 distant, *longinquus*, -a, -um.
 disturbed, *commōtus*, -a, -um.
 do, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus* (*pass. fiō*,
 fieri, *factus sum*).
 do not, don't, *in prohibitions*, *nōlī*,
 nōlīte (*from nōlō*).
 doctor, *medicus*, -ī, M.
 dog, *canis*, -is, M.
 draw, *dūcō*, 3, *dūxī*, *ductus*.
 draw near, *appropinquō*, 1, -āvī,
 -ātum est (*with dat., or ad and*
 acc.).
 drive, *pellō*, 3, *pepulī*, *pulsus* (III);
 expellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus (67,
 126).
 drive back, *pellō*, 3, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.
 drive out, *expellō*, 3, -pulī, -pulsus.

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*.
 each man, *masc. sing. of quisque*.
 eagle, *aquila*, -ae, F.
 earlier, *ante*.

easily, *facile*.
 eat, *edō*, 3, *ēdī*, *ēsus*.
 Egypt, *Aegyptus*, -ī, F.
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*.
 embark upon: *see board*.
 encamp, *castra pōnō*, 3, *posuī*, *positus*.
 endeavor: *see try*.
 enemy, *hostis*, -is, C.; *mostly pl. (M.)*.
 England, *Britannia*, -ae, F.
 English, the, *Britannī*, -ōrum, M.
 enough, *satis* (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).
 enraged, *irātus*, -a, -um.
 enthusiasm, *studium*, -ī, N.
 entire, the entire, *tōtus*, -a, -um.
 equal, *pār*, *gen. paris*.
 escape, *ēvādō*, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est.
 establish, *cōstituō*, 3, -stitūī, -stitū-
 tus.
 Europe, *Eurōpa*, -ae, F.
 even, *etiām*. *See also not even*.
 ever, *umquam*.
 every, *pl. of omnis*, -is, -e.
 excel, *superō*, 1; *superior* (-ior, -ius)
 sum, *esse*, *fuī*.
 Fabius, *Fabius*, -bī, M.
 fall, *cadō*, 3, *cecidī*.
 fall back, *mē recipiō* (3, -cēpī,
 -ceptus; *mostly in the third per-*
 son, sē recipere).
 far, *longē*.
 not far, not far away, *haud procul*.
 not far away, not far distant, (*modi-*
 fying a noun) *haud longin-*
 quus, -a, -um.
 farmer, *agricola*, -ae, M.
 farmhouse, *villa*, -ae, F.
 fashion, *modus*, -ī, M.
 fasten to, *dēligō*, 1, *with ad and acc.*
 father, *pater*, -tris, M.

fear, *noun*, timor, -ōris, M.

in fear of, be, timeō, 2, -uī.

fear, *verb*, timeō, 2, -uī; vereor, 2, veritus sum.

feel, sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus.

few, a few; paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, -grī, M.

field of battle, proelium, -ī, N.

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre. *See also*
under battle and fight (noun).

fiercely, ācritēr.

fight, *noun*, pugna, -ae, F.

fierce fight be in progress, ācritēr,
with the pass. of pugnō, 1, -āvī,
-ātum est.

fight go on, fight last, fight rage,
pass. of pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

fight, *verb*, pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

fill, complēō, 2, -plēvī, -plētus.

finally, postremō.

find, invenio, 4, -vēnī, -ventus;
quaerō, 3, quaesivī, quaesitus
(34): ("learn") cōgnoscō, 3,
cōgnōvī, cōgnitus; certior (-ior,
-ius) fiō, fierī, factus sum.

find out, cōgnoscō, 3, cōgnōvī,
cōgnitus.

fine, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

fire, *noun*, ignis, -is, M.

fire, *verb*, ("ignite") incendō, 3,
-cendī, -cēnsus: ("shoot") tēla
mittō, 3, misi, missus.

fish, piscor, 1.

flag, vexillum, -ī, N.

flee, fly, fugiō, 3, fugī (*future partic.*
fugitūrus).

fleet, classis, -is, F.

flight: *see* put to flight.

flower, flōs, flōris, M.

fly, of missiles, *pass. of mittō*, 3, misi,
missus. *See also* flee.

follow, sequor, 3, secūtus sum.

food, cibus, -ī, M.

footpath, sēmita, -ae, F.

for, *conj.*, enim, nam.

for, *prep.*, ad *with acc.*

for a long time, diū.

for the purpose of, causā, *with gen.*

force, *noun*, vis, —, F.

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *See also*
our forces.

force, *verb*, cōgō, 3, cōēgi, cōactus.

forest, silva, -ae, F.

forgive, ignoscō, 3, ignōvī, ignōtum
est.

formerly, quondam.

fort, castellum, -ī, N.

fortification, mūnitio, -ōnis, F.

fortitude, fortitūdō, -inis, F.

Frenchmen, Gallī, -ōrum, M.

frequently: *see* often.

frighten, terreo, 2, -uī, -itus.

frightened, territū, -a, -um.

from, ē, ex *with abl.*; ā ab *with abl.*
(90, III).

from all sides (quarters), from every
side, undique.

from time to time, interdum.

Gaius, Cāius, -āī, M.

garden, hortus, -ī, M.

gate, porta, -ae, F.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F.

Gaul, a, Gallus, -ī, M.

Gauls, the, Gallī, -ōrum, M.

general, imperātor, -ōris, M.

Germans, the, Germānī, -ōrum, M.

get, petō, 3, -ivī, -itus.

get possession of, potior, 4, -itus
sum.

get water, aquor, 1.

gift, dōnum, -ī, N.

girl, *puella*, -ae, F.
 give, *dō*, dare, *dedī*, datus.
 give (*aid, help*), *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*,
lātus (*with dat.*).
 give orders, *imperō*, 1, -āvi, -ātum
 est.
 glad, *laetus*, -a, -um.
 gladly, *libenter*.
 go, *eō*, *ire*, *ii*, *itum est*; *abeō*, -īre,
 -ii, -itum est (73, 91); *pro-*
ficiscor, 3, *profectus sum*.
 go away, *abeō*, -īre, -ii, -itum est.
 go out, *exeō*, -īre, -ii, -itum est;
egredior, 3, -gressus sum.
 go to the assistance of, *auxiliō eō*,
ire, *ii*, *itum est* (*with a second*
dative).
 go to the relief of, *subsidiō eō*, *ire*,
ii, *itum est* (*with a second*
dative).
 god, *deus*, -ī, M.
 going to: *translate by the future par-*
ticiple.
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um.
 grain, *frumentum*, -ī, N.
 grandfather, *avus*, -ī, M.
 grandmother, *avia*, -ae, F.
 grass, *herba*, -ae, F.
 great, *magnus*, -a, -um; *summus*, -a,
 -um (27). See also so great and
 such great.
 greatest, also *summus*, -a, -um.
 ground, *locus*, -ī, M.; *terra*, -ae, F. (24).
 on the ground, *humī*.
 guard, *noun*, *custōs*, -ōdis, M.
 guard, *verb*, *custodiō*, 4, -ivi, -itus.
 guide, *dux*, *ducis*, M.
 Hamilcar, *Hamilcar*, -aris, M.
 hand:
 on every hand, *undique*.

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, -alis, M.
 happen, (*neu.*) *third pers. sing. of*
fiō, *ferī*, *factus sum*.
 happening, *rēs*, *rei*, F.
 harm, *noceō*, 2, -uī (*future partic.*
nocitūrus).
 haste:
 in haste, *celeriter*.
 hasten, *properō*, 1, -āvi, -ātum est.
 have, *habeō*, 2, -uī, -itus. *With a*
form of sum, a dative of possession
is often used to express this idea.
 he, she, it, is, ea, id; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*:
 (*reflex.*) *suī*, *sibi* (*see also his and*
their).
 head, *caput*, -itis, N.
 hear, *audiō*, 4, -ivi, -itus.
 help, *noun*, *auxilium*, -ii, N.
 through the help of, with the help
 of, *per* with *acc.*
 help, *verb*, *adiuvō*, 1, -iūvi, -iūtus;
auxiliō (*or subsidiō*) *sum*, *esse*,
fuī (*with a second dative*). See
 also come to help and send to
 help.
 hem in, *claudō*, 3, *clausī*, *clausus*.
 here, *hīc* (124); *with verbs of motion*,
hūc.
 hesitate, *dubitō*, 1, -āvi, -ātum est.
 hide, *lateō*, 2, -uī.
 hiding place, *latebrae*, -ārum, F.
 high, *altus*, -a, -um.
 hill, *collis*, -is, M.
 himself, herself, itself, (*intens.*) *ipse*,
ipsa, *ipsum*: (*reflex.*) *suī*, *sibi*.
 his, her, its, see he: (*reflex.*) *suus*,
 -a, -um.
 his men, (*reflex.*) *suī*, -ōrum, M.
 his own, (*reflex.*) *suus*, -a, -um
 placed BEFORE the modified noun.
 hither, *hūc*.

hold, *teneō*, 2, -uī.
 home, *domus*, -ūs, F.
 at home, *domi*.
 hope, *noun*, *spēs*, -ei, F.
 hope, *verb*, *spērō*, 1.
 horn, *cornū*, -ūs, N.
 horse, *equus*, -ī, M.
 horseman, *eques*, -itis, M.
 hostage, *obses*, -idis, C.
 hour, *hōra*, -ae, F.
 however, *autem*.
 Hudson, *Hudson*, -ōnis, M.
 huge: *see* large.
 hunt, *vēnor*, 1.
 hunt for, *quaerō*, 3, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*.
 hunter, *vēnātor*, -ōris, M.
 hurl: *see* throw.
 hurry, *properō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.
 I, *ego*, *meī*.
 if, *si*.
 if anybody, if any one, *si quis*.
 if anything, if something, *si quid*.
 ill, *aeger*, -gra, -grum.
 imagine, *putō*, 1.
 in, *in with abl.*: *with verbs of motion* (excepting *collocō* and *pōnō*),
 in with acc. *See also under* direction.
 in haste, *celeriter*.
 in order that, in order to, *ut*, *quō*.
 in order that not, *nē*.
 in progress, be: *see under* fight (*noun*).
 in safety, *incolumis*, -is, -e.
 in this way, *sic*.
 Indian, *an*, *Indus*, -ī, M.
 Indians, the, *Indi*, -ōrum, M.
 infantry, *pl. of pedes*, -itis, M.
 inferior, *inferior*, -ior, -ius.

influence, *auctoritās*, -ātis, F.
 inform, *certiorem* (-ēs) *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus* (*pass. certior fiō, fierī, factus sum*).
 inhabitant, *incola*, -ae, M.
 injure, *noceō*, 2, -uī (*future partic. nocitūrus*).
 inquire, *rogō*, 1; *inquam* (15).
 insight, *ingenium*, -nī, N.
 interview, *conveniō*, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.
 intimidate, *terreō*, 2, -uī, -itus.
 into, *in with acc.*
 island, *insula*, -ae, F.
 it: *see* he.
 Italy, *Italia*, -ae, F.
 Jackson, *Iacō*, -ōnis, M.
 join, *mē coniungō*, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *with cum and abl.*; *mostly in the third person, sē coniungere*.
 journey, *iter*, *itineris*, N.
 Julia, *Iūlia*, -ae, F.
 just, just now, *modo*.
 keen, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.
 kill, *interficiō*, 3, -fēcī, -fectus;
 occidō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.
 kindness, *cōmitās*, -ātis, F.
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.
 know, *sciō*, 4, -īvī, -ītus.
 not know, *nesciō*, 4, -scīvī.
 labor: *see* work.
 land, *terra*, -ae, F.
 large, *magnus*, -a, -um. *See also* so large and such large.
 later, *post*.
 a little later, *paulō post*.
 laugh, *rideō*, 2, *risī*, (*risus*).
 lead, *dūcō*, 3, *dūxī*, *ductus*.
 lead away, *dēdūcō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, M.

- learn, *cōgnōscō*, 3, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnitus*.
 leave, *relinquō*, 3, *-līquī*, *-lictus*;
 ēgredior, 3, *-gressus sum*, *with*
 ē, *ex* and *abl.* (119).
 left, (*as contrasted with "right"*)
 sinister, *-tra*, *-trum*.
 less, *adj.*: *see* *little (adj.)*.
 less, *adv.*, *minus*; *may be used as an*
 indecl. noun.
 let loose, *ēmittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
 lie, *iaceō*, 2, *-uī*.
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*, *-ī*, *M.*
 light, *lūmen*, *-inis*, *N.*
 like, *adj.*, *similis*, *-is*, *-e*.
 like, *verb.*, *amō*, *I.*
 likely to: *use future partic.*
 liking, *studium*, *-ī*, *N.*
 line (*of battle*), *aciēs*, *-ēī*, *F.*
 linger, *moror*, *I.*
 little, *adj.*, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*.
 little, *adv.*: *see under too and later*.
 live, *habitō*, *I.*
 location: *see place (noun)*.
 loiter, *moror*, *I.*
 London, *Londinium*, *-nī*, *N.*
 long, *adj.*, *longus*, *-a*, *-um*. *See also*
 under time.
 long, *adv.*, *diū*.
 look for, *petō*, 3, *-īvī*, *-itus*; *quaerō*,
 3, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*.
 lose, *āmittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
 Louisiana, *Lovisiāna*, *-ae*, *F.*
 love, *amō*, *I.*
 maiden: *see girl*.
 make, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus (pass.*
 fiō, fierī, factus sum).
 man, *homō*, *-inis*, *C. (pl., M.)*; *vir*, *virī*,
 M.
 men, the, *masc. pl. of is, ea, id*; *pl.*
 of miles, -itis, M. *See also each*
 man, his men, our men, and their
 men.
 many, many of, *multi*, *-ae*, *-a*. *See*
 more.
 Marcella, *Mārcella*, *-ae*, *F.*
 march, *noun*, *iter*, *itineris*, *N.*
 on the march, in itinere.
 march, *verb.*, *iter faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*.
 march out, ēgredior, 3, *-gressus*
 sum.
 Marcus, *Mārcus*, *-ī*, *M.*
 Marius, *Mārius*, *-rī*, *M.*
 matter, *rēs*, *reī*, *F.*
 means, *modus*, *-ī*, *M.*
 meanwhile, *interim*.
 Mediterranean, *Mediterrāneus*, *-a*,
 -um.
 medium:
 through the medium of, per with
 acc.
 meet, *conveniō*, 4, *-vēnī*, *-ventus*.
 merely, *tantum*.
 messenger, *nūntius*, *-ī*, *M.*
 might, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*; *but often*
 simply a mark of the subjunctive
 mood (as in purpose clauses).
 miles, *mīlia* (*-ium*, *N.*) *passuum*.
 mind, *animus*, *-ī*, *M.*
 mine: *see my*.
 miss, *dīmittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
 money, *pecūnia*, *-ae*, *F.*
 monkey, *sīmia*, *-ae*, *F.*
 month, *mēnsis*, *-is*, *M.*
 more, *plūrēs*, *-ēs*, *-a*. *Sing. (noun)*
 plūs, plūris, N.
 mother, *māter*, *-tris*, *F.*
 mount: *see climb*.
 mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, *M.*
 much, *vehementer* (10): *with com.*
 paratives, multō.
 murder: *see kill*.

must: *translate by the gerundive.*

my, **meus**, -a, -um.

myself, (*intens.*) **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**.

name, *noun*, **nōmen**, -inis, N.

name, *verb*, **appellō**, I. *The participle "named" may often be rendered by the abl. nōmine (lit. "by name").*

narrow, **angustus**, -a, -um.

nation, **gēns**, **gentis**, F.

native, **incola**, -ae, M.

near, *adv.*, **prope**. *See come nearer and draw near.*

near, *prep.*, **prope** with *acc.*

need: *translate by the gerundive.*

never, **numquam**. *See also and never.*

nevertheless, **tamen**.

new, **novus**, -a, -um.

New England, **Nova** (-ae) **Britannia**, -ae, F.

New York (*city*), **Novum** (-ī) **Eboracum**, -ī, N.

night:

at night, by night, during the night, **noctū**.

no, **nullus**, -a, -um.

nobody, no one, **nēmō**, —, M. *See also and no one, and (so) that no one.*

noise, **strepitus**, -ūs, M.

nor, **neque**, **nec**.

not, **nōn**; with *hortatory subjunctive*, **nē**: *in questions implying the answer "yes," nōnne: in prohibitions, embodied in nōlī and nōlīte (from nōlō). See also and not, and not any one, in order that not, so as not to, (so) that not, and under far.*

not even, **nē . . . quidem**.

not to, **nē**.

noteworthy, **insignis**, -is, -e.

nothing, **nihil**, N., *indecl.* *See also*

and nothing, and so that nothing.

notice, **animadvertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus.

now, **iam**, **nunc**.

numbers, number, **numerus**, -ī, M.

oblige: *see force (verb).*

occupy, **occupō**, I.

ocean, **mare**, -is, N.

of, **ē**, **ex** with *abl.*: ("concerning") **dē** with *abl.*

of age: *use nātus*, -a, -um.

of course, **scilicet**.

officer, **légātus**, -ī, M.

often, **saepe**.

old: *see of age.*

on, *in with abl.*; *in with acc.* (24).

See also under march and road.

on all sides, on every side (hand), **undique**.

on the ground, **humī**.

once, **ōlim**.

one, **ūnus**, -a, -um; **quidam**, **quoddam** (7, 21, 108).

See also under day and time.

only, the only, **sōlus**, -a, -um.

only, *adv.*, **tantum**.

open boat, **scapha**, -ae, F.

opportunity, **facultās**, -ātis, F.

or, **aut**.

order, **iubeō**, 2, **iussī**, **iussus**.

other, *pl. of alius*, **alia**, **aliud**.

other, the, **cēteri**, -ae, -a: (*of two*) **alter**, -era, -erum.

others, **alii**, -ōrum, M.

others, the, **cēteri**, -ōrum, M.

ought: *translate by the gerundive.*

our, ours, **noster**, -tra, -trum.

our forces, our men, our soldiers, **nostri**, -ōrum, M.

ourselves, (*intens.*) *pl.* of *ipse, ipse, ipsum*.

over, *trāns* with *acc.*

overcome, *vincō, 3, vici, victus; superō, 1.*

own: *see* his own *and* their own.

pain, *dolor, -ōris, M.*

pardon, *ignōscō, 3, ignōvī, ignōtum est.*

part, *pars, partis, F.*

path, *sēmita, -ae, F.*

peace, *pāx, pācis, F.*

Pelusium, *Pēlūsium, -si, N.*

perhaps, *fortasse.*

persuade, *persuādēō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est.*

Petreibus, *Petrōius, -ōi, M.*

Petronius, *Petrōnius, -nī, M.*

Pharsalus, *Pharsālus, -i, F.*

pigeon, *columba, -ae, F.*

pirate, *pirāta, -ae, M.*

place, *noun, locus, -i, M. (pl. loca, -ōrum, N.).*

place, *verb, collocō, 1.*

plan, *cōnsilium, -iī, N.*

plantation, *praedium, -iī, N.*

plate, *patera, -ae, F.*

play, *lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum est.*

please, *sis, sultis (i.e. si vīs, si vultis).*

plenty, *satis (adv., used as indecl. noun).*

Pliny, *Plinius, -nī, M.*

point:

be on the point of: *translate by the future participle.*

poison, *venēnum, -iī, N.*

Pollux, *Pollūx, -ūcis, M.*

Pompey, *Pompēius, -ōi, M.*

poor, ("*wretched*") miser, *-era, -erum.*

Porsinna, *Porsinna, -ae, M.*

powerful, *validus, -a, -um.*

practice, *cōsuētūdō, -inis, F.*

prefer, *mālō, malle, mālui.*

prepare, *parō, 1.*

present, *dō, dare, dedī, datus.*

pretend, *simulō, 1.*

pretty, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.*

prevail, *superō, 1; vincō, 3, vici, victus.*

Priscilla, *Prissilla, -ae, F.*

prisoner, *captivus, -i, M.*

proceed, *contendō, 3, -tendī, (-tentus); progredior, 3, -gressus sum.*

progress, be in: *see under fight (noun).*

promise, *polliceor, 2, pollicitus sum.*

promptly: *see at once.*

protect, *praesidiō sum, esse, fui (with a second dative); dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus (68).*

protection, *praesidium, -iī, N.*

Ptolemy, *Ptolomaeus, -iī, M.*

purpose:

for the purpose of, *causā (with gen. of the gerund or gerundive).*

put, *collocō, 1; pōnō, 3, posui, positus.*

put to flight, in *fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.*

quarters:

from all quarters, *undique.*

quickly, *celeriter.*

quietly, *clam.*

Quintus, *Quintus, -iī, M.*

rampart, *vallium, -iī, N.*

rapidly: *see quickly.*

reach, *pervenio*, 4, *-venī, -ventum*
est, *with ad and acc.*

read, *legō*, 3, *lēgī, lēctus*.

readily, *libenter*.

ready to: *translate by the future participle.*

realize, *sentiō*, 4, *sēnsī, sēnsus*.

reënforce, *subsidiō sum, esse, fui*;

subsidiō veniō, 4, *vēnī, ventum*
est. *Both with a second dative.*

See also come (send) to reënforce.

reënforcement, *subsidium*, -ī, N.

refuse, *nōlō, nōlle, nōlui*.

regiment, *legiō, -ōnis*, F.

region, *regiō, -ōnis*, F.

relief: *see under go and send.*

remain, *maneō*, 2, *mānsī, mānsu-*
est; *moror*, 1.

remark, *inquam*.

reply, *inquam*.

repulse, *pellō*, 3, *pepulī, pulsus*.

retire, retreat, *mē recipiō* (3, *-cēpī, -ceptus*; *mostly in the third person, sē recipere*).

return, *redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum est*.

right, *dexter, -tra, -trum*.

river, *flūmen, -inis*, N.

road, *via, -ae*, F.

on the road, *in itinere*.

rock, *saxum, -ī*, N.

Roman, a, *Rōmānus, -ī*, M.

Romans, the, *Rōmānī, -ōrum*, M.

Rome, *Rōma, -ae*, F.

rough, *asper, -era, -erum*.

route, *iter, itineris*, N.; *via, -ae*, F.

run, *currō*, 3, *cucurrī, cursum est*.

run away, *fugiō*, 3, *fūgī (future partic. fugitūrus)*.

rush: *see run.*

rush forth, *erumpō*, 3, *-rūpī, -ruptum est*.

Sabinus, *Sabīnus, -ī*, M.

sadly: *use maestus, -a, -um.*

safe, *incolumis, -is, -e; tūtus, -a, -um.*

safely: *use incolumis, -is, -e.*

safety, *salūs, -ūtis*, F.

in safety, *incolumis, -is, -e.*

sail, *nāvigō*, 1, *-āvī, -ātum est*.

sailor, *nauta, -ae*, M.

same, the, *idem, eadem, idem*.

Saratoga, *Saratōga, -ae*, F.

save, *cōservō*, 1; *salūtī sum, esse, fui (with a second dative)*.

say, *inquam; dicō*, 3, *dixī, dictus*.

scout, *explōrātor, -ōris*, M.

sea, *mare, -is*, N.

seaman, *nauta, -ae*, M.

season, *tempus, -oris*, N.

see, *videō*, 2, *vidī, visus*.

seek, *quaerō*, 3, *quaesivī, quaesitus*.

seem, *videor*, 2, *vīsus sum*.

seize, *rapio*, 3, *rapui, raptus; arripio*, 3, *-ripui, -reptus*.

senate, *senātus, -ūs*, M.

send, *mittō*, 3, *misi, missus*.

send out, *ēmittō*, 3, *-misi, -missus*.

send to help, send to the aid (relief) of, *auxiliō mittō*, 3, *misi, missus (with a second dative)*.

send to reënforce, *subsidiō mittō*, 3, *misi, missus (with a second dative)*.

Sertorius, *Sertōrius, -rī*, M.

set on fire, *incendō*, 3, *-cendi, -census*.

set out, *proficiscor*, 3, *profectus sum*.

set sail, *nāvem (-ēs) solvō*, 3, *solvi, solūtus*.

settler, *colōnus, -ī*, M.

several, *complūrēs, -ēs, -a*.

shade, shadow, *umbra, -ae*, F.

she: *see he.*

ship, *nāvis*, -is, F.
 shoot, ("fire") *tēlum* (*tēla*) *mittō*, 3, *misī*, *missus*.
 shoot dead, *tēlō* (*tēlis*) *interficiō*, 3, -*fēcī*, -*fectus*.
 shore, *lītus*, -*oris*, N.
 shortly, *brevī*.
 should: *often to be translated by the gerundive; sometimes by the subjunctive (as in conditional sentences)*.
 shout, *clāmō*, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātum* *est*.
 sick, *aeger*, -*gra*, -*grum*.
 sick, the, *aegrī*, -*ōrum*, M.
 side:
 from all sides, from every side, on all sides, on every side, *undique*.
 sight, *cōspectus*, -*ūs*, M.
 similar, *similis*, -is, -*e*.
 since, *causal conj.*, *cum*.
 sit, sit down, *sedeō*, 2, *sēdī*, *sessum* *est*.
 skiff, *scapha*, -*ae*, F.
 skill, *sollertia*, -*ae*, F.
 sky, *caelum*, -*i*, N.
 slave, *servus*, -*i*, M.
 slay, *occidō*, 3, -*cīdī*, -*cīsus*.
 small, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 smile, *rīdeō*, 2, *rīsī*, (*rīsus*).
 Smith, *Faber*, -*brī*, M.
 so, *tam*; *ita* (105). *See also* and so.
 so as not to, *nē*.
 so as to, *ut*, *quō*.
 so great, so large, *tantus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 so many, so numerous, *tot*, *indecl. adj.*
 so that, *ut*, *quō*.
 so that . . . not, (*purpose*) *nē*.
 so that nobody, so that no one, *nē quis*.
 so that nothing, *nē quid*.

soldier, *mīles*, -*itis*, M. *See also* our soldiers.
 some, some of, *pl. of quīdam, quaedam, quoddam*.
 some one: *see* that some one.
 something: *see under if*.
 sometimes, *interdum*.
 son, *filius*, -*lī*, M.
 soon, *brevī*; *mox*.
 sortie, *ēruptiō*, -*ōnis*, F.
 Spain, *Hispania*, -*ae*, F.
 Spaniards, the, *Hispanī*, -*ōrum*, M.
 spare, *parcō*, 3, *pepercī* (*future partic. parsūrus*).
 Spartacus, *Spartacus*, -*i*, M.
 speed, *celeritās*, -*ātis*, F.
 spirit, *animus*, -*i*, M.
 spot: *see place (noun)*.
 spy upon, *speculor*, 1.
 standard, *signum*, -*i*, N.
 Standish, *Standisius*, -*sī*, M.
 start, *proficiscor*, 3, *profectus sum*; *contendō*, 3, -*tendī*, (-*tentus*).
 start out, *proficiscor*, 3, *profectus sum*.
 state, *civitas*, -*ātis*, F.
 station, *collocō*, 1.
 stay, *maneō*, 2, *mānsī*, *mānsus* *est*.
 steal, *rapiō*, 2, *rapuī*, *raptus*.
 still, ("nevertheless") *tamen*; ("up to this time") *adhūc*.
 stone, *saxum*, -*i*, N.
 stop, *moror*, 1.
 storm: *see take by storm*.
 story, *fābula*, -*ae*, F.
 stream, *rīvus*, -*i*, M.
 street, *via*, -*ae*, F.
 strength, *pl. of vis*, —, F.
 strong, *validus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 subdue, *vincō*, 3, *vīcī*, *victus*.

- such, such great, such large, *tantus*,
-a, -um.
sudden, *repentinus*, -a, -um.
suddenly, *subitō*.
suffering, *dolor*, -ōris, m.
sufficient, *satis* (*adv.*, used as *indecl.*
noun).
suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um.
summer, *aestās*, -ātis, f.
summon, *arcēssō*, 3, -ivī, -itus.
superior, *superior*, -ior, -ius.
supply, *cōpia*, -ae, f.
suppose, *arbitror*, 1; *putō*, 1.
surely, *profectō*.
surpass, *superō*, 1.
surrender, ("relinquish") *dēdō*, 3,
-didi, -ditus.
surround, *circumveniō*, 4, -vērī,
-ventus.
swiftly, *celeriter*.
swiftness, *celeritās*, -ātis, f.
swim, *nō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.
sword, *gladius*, -ī, m.
- take, ("conduct" "carry") *dūcō*, 3,
dūxī, ductus; *ferō*, ferre, *tulī*, lā-
tus; *portō*, 1; by animals, ships,
etc., *vehō*, 3, *vēxī*, vectus:
("capture") *capiō*, 3, *cēpī*, cap-
tus.
take by storm, *expugnō*, 1.
take place, *fiō*, fierī, factus sum.
talk, *loquor*, 3, *locūtus sum* (*with*
cum and *abl.*).
tall, *altus*, -a, -um.
tarry, *moror*, 1.
teach, *doceō*, 2, -uī, doctus.
teacher, *magister*, -trī, m.
tell, *nārō*, 1; *dīcō*, 3, *dixī*, dictus
(5, 59, 90, 118). Both with *dat.*
of the person spoken to.
- tent, *tabernāculum*, -ī, n.
terrified, *territus*, -a, -um.
terrify, *terreō*, 2, -uī, -itus.
that, *pron.* (*demon.*) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*;
is, *ea*, *id*; *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*: (*rel.*)
quī, *quae*, *quod*.
that, *conj.*, *ut*, *quō*; with verbs of
fearing, *nē*. Often marks indi-
rect discourse or the complemen-
tary *infin.*
that no one, *nē quis*.
that not, *nē*: with verbs of fearing,
ut.
that some one, with verbs of fearing,
nē quis.
the, usually untranslated: *is*, *ea*, *id* (6).
their: see he: (*reflex.*) *suus*, -a, -um.
their men, (*reflex.*) *sui*, -ōrum, m.
their own, (*reflex.*) *suus*, -a, -um
placed BEFORE the word modified.
themselves: see himself.
then, *tum*.
there, *ibi*: with verbs of motion, *quō*.
therefore, *igitur*; *itaque*.
these: see this.
they: see he and their.
thing, *rēs*, *rei*, f.
think, *putō*, 1; *arbitror*, 1; *crēdō*, 3,
crēdidī, *crēditus*.
thinking, *ratus*, -a, -um.
this, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*.
thoroughly frightened, thoroughly
terrified, *perterritus*, -a, -um.
those: see that (*pron.*).
though, *quamquam*.
thousands, thousand, *mīlia*, -ium, n.
three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*.
three times, *ter*.
through, through the help of, through
the medium of, *per* with *acc.*
throw, *iaciō*, 3, *ieci*, *iactus*.

thus, ita, sic.

time, tempus, -oris, N.

at times, from time to time, interdum.

for a long time, diū.

one time, ōlim.

up to this time, adhūc.

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, ad with acc.; in with acc. *Marking a purpose clause: ad with acc.; causā with gen.; quī (rel.) or ut, with subjunctive.*

to-day, hodiē.

to-morrow, crās.

too, ("also") quoque.

too little, parum (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).

top (*speed*), summus, -a, -um.

torch, lūmen, -inis, N.

tower, turris, -is, F.

town, oppidum, -ī, N.

townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, M.

travel, iter faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.

tree, arbor, -oris, F.

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F.

try, cōnor, I.

turn out, ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est.
twice, bis.

two, the two, duo, duae, duo.

under, sub with abl.

understand, intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus.

unfavorable, iniquus, -a, -um.

unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um.

unobserved, clam.

until, dōnec.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

up :

up to this time, adhūc.

upon, in with abl.; with verbs of motion (*excepting collocō and pōnō*), in with acc.

urge, hortor, I.

use, ūtor, 3, ūsus sum. *Pass. supplied in part by ūsuī sum, esse, fuī.*

use up, cōnsūmō, 3, cōnsūmptī, cōnsūmptus.

used, ("was accustomed," etc.), *imperfect and perfect tenses of soleō, 2, solitus sum; pluperfect tense of cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).*

useful, be, ūsuī sum, esse, fuī.

very useful, be, magnō ūsuī sum, esse, fuī.

usually: *use soleō, 2, solitus sum; perfect tense of cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus) (83).*

valley, vallēs, -is, F.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.

venture, audeō, 2, ausus sum.

very, *adv., mark of the superlative degree. See also under useful.*

very, the very, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

vessel, nāvigium, -ī, N.; nāvis, -is, F.

Vesuvius, Vesuvius, -vī, M.

view, speculor, I.

violence, vis, —, F.

wage (*war*), gerō, 3, gessi, gestus.

wagon, carrus, -ī, M.

wait for, opperor, 4, oppertus sum; expectō, I.

wall, mūrus, -ī, M.

want, volō, velle, voluī.

war, warfare, bellum, -ī, N.

warn, moneō, 2, -uī, -itus.

Washington, Vasingtō, -ōnis, M.

watch, speculor, I.

watchfulness, diligentia, -ae, F.

water, aqua, -ae, F.

wave, fluctus, -ūs, M.

way, *modus*, -ī, M.: ("road") *via*, -ae, F.

in this way, *sic*.

weapon, *tōlum*, -ī, N.

weary: *see* tired.

weep, *flēō*, 2, *flēvī*, *flētum* est.

weight, *pondus*, -eris, N.

well, *bene*.

what: *see* who (*interrog.*).

when, *cum*. *Clauses so introduced may often be rendered by an ablative absolute.*

where, *ubi*; *with verbs of motion*, *quō*.

whether, *introducing an indirect question*, *num*.

which: *see* who (*rel.*).

while, *dum*.

who, which, what (*interrog.*): *noun*, *quis*, *quid*; *adj.*, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

who, which, that (*rel.*), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

whole, the whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um.

why, *cūr*.

wife, *uxor*, -ōris, F.

willing, be, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

win, *vincō*, 3, *vīcī*, *victus*.

wind, *ventus*, -ī, M.

window, *fenestra*, -ae, F.

wing (*of army*), *cornū*, -ūs, N.

winter, winter time, *hiems*, *hiemis*, F.

winter, *verb.* *hiemō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

wish, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

with, *cum* *with abl.* *See also* along with.

with the help of, *per* *with acc.*

withdraw, ("go away") *mē recipiō* (3, -cēpī, -ceptus; *mostly in the third person*, *sē recipere*): ("take away") *redūcō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

without, *sine* *with abl.*

wits, *ingenium*, -nī, N.

woman, *mulier*, -ieris, F.

woods, the, *silva*, -ae, F. (*sing. or pl.*).

word, *verbum*, -ī, N.

work, *labōrō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

worse, worst: *see* bad.

would: *often to be translated by the imperfect of customary past action; sometimes by the subjunctive (as in conditional sentences).*

wound, *vulnerō*, 1.

wounded, the, *vulnerātī*, -ōrum, M.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, *scribō*, 3, *scripsī*, *scriptus*.

year, *annus*, -ī, M.

yesterday, *herī*.

yet, ("however") *tamen*: ("up to this time") *adhūc*. *See also* as yet.

you, *tū*, *tuī*.

young man, youth, *iuvenis*, -is, M.

your, *tuus*, -a, -um; *vester*, -tra, -trum.

INDEX

(Unless otherwise specified, all references are to page and footnote; *e.g.* 216. 18 signifies "page 216, footnote 18." Notes and Remarks in the body of a page are indicated by the abbreviations N. and Rem. respectively. To facilitate the use of the Index, all references to matter contained in the English-Latin Exercises are set in black-faced type.)

ā ab: combination with **-que**, avoided, 184. 7. *Cf.* **ob**.
 "from the neighborhood of," 182. 1.
 in Agency expressions, 235. Rem.
 with abl. of Degree of Difference, 158. 5.

Abbreviations: list of, xv.

of first names of persons, 262. N. 1.

abhinc: use of, 251. N. 1.

Ablative:

Ablative Absolute:

rendering of, 223. Rem. 2; *cf.* 17. 18, 46. 2, 143. 2, 170. 3.
 with object, 223. Rem. 1; *cf.* 44. 17.

of Accompaniment; without prep., 141. 10.

of adjs. of One Termination, 321 (2d) N.

of Agency, 235. Rem.

of Cause, 251; *cf.* 55. 10, 144. 5, 257. 3.

of Characteristic or Quality, 321; *cf.* 135. 2.

of Degree of Difference, 203; *cf.* 137. 3, 158. 5, 251. N. 1.

of **ego**, **suī**, and **tū**; with post-positive **-cum**, 211. 3.

of Gerund; use of, 215. N.

of I-Stems; **avis**, **collis**, **hostis**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **nūbēs**, **ovis**, **piscis**, **secūris**, **vallēs**, 201. Rem. 2; **civis**, 261. Vocab.; **classis**, 242. Vocab.; **Cornivallis**, 251. Vocab.; **mēnsis**, 218. Vocab.
Cf. 321 (2d) N.

of locus; without prep., 7. 4; *cf.* 315. 18.

of Manner, 225; *cf.* 57. 4, 115. 19, 155. 19.

of Means, 235. Rem., 294. Rem.
 idiomatic renderings of; "at," 57. 6; "from," 143. 9; "in," 6. 10, 67. 6, 80. 2, 119. 5; "of," 77. 5; "on," 145. 5; "under," 57. 8; "upon," 59. 8, 101. 16.

of Place from Which:

"from the neighborhood of," 182. 1.

instead of expression indicating Place Where, 44. 6, 78. 18, 130. 5, 168. 2, 177. 10.

without prep., 7. 4; *cf.* 21. 3, 69. 17, 125. 5, 139. 5, 142. 3, 174. 12, 178. 9, 183. 9.

Town Names, **domus** and **rūs**,

Ablative:

- 276; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12 (contrast 182. 1).
 of Place Where; without prep., 7. 4, 315. 18; *cf.* 32. 16, 41. 15.
 of Quality or Characteristic, 321; *cf.* 135. 2.
 of Specification, 239, 288 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 37. 20, 126. 17.
 of *suī*, *ego*, and *tū*; with post-positive -*cum*, 211. 3.
 of Supine: use of, 288.
 of Time When and Within Which, 199; *cf.* 62. 15, 99. 22; also 257. 10.
 of Town Names, *domus*, and *rūs*, 276; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12 (contrast 182. 1).
 of *tū*, *ego*, and *suī*; with post-positive -*cum*, 211. 3.
 of Way by Which, 294; *cf.* 5. 13, 37. 5, 103. 17, 164. 13.
 rendered as acc. of Extent of Time, 89. 10.
 with *careō*, 68. 13, 134. 19.
 with Certain Verbs, 270; *cf.* 95. 11, 171. 13.
 with Comparatives, 335 ff.; *cf.* 158. 4 (contrast 101. 3, 119. 2, 154. 10).
 with *contentus*, 101. 15.
 with *potior*, 270, 288. Vocab.; *cf.* 95. 11.
 with preps.: see *ā*, *ab*, *cum*, *ē*, *ex*, and *in*.
 with *ūtor*, 270.
 without prep.; *castris*, 218. 16, 332. 28; *locō*, *locis*, 7. 4, 315. 18; *silvā*, 323. 25. See also above under Ablative of Accompaniment, Place from Which, and Place Where.

Absolute use:

- of comparatives and superlatives, 13. 11; *cf.* 131. 8, 260. 10, 332. 27.
 of transitive verbs, 279. Rem.
 See also Ablative Absolute.
absum: form *āfutūrus*, 342. Vocab.
ac: see *atque*.
accēdō: construction with, 300. Vocab.
 Accusative:
 adverbial use of, 80. 12.
cf. 259. N. 1. Also 91. 10, 142. 12.
 idiomatic: *noctēs diēsque*, 28. 13.
 lacking with infin. dependent upon *videor*, 245. N. 3.
 object:
 of partic. in abl. absol., 223. Rem. 1.
 of supine in -*um*, 288. N.
 with predicate acc., 203 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 259. N. 1.
 of Extent of Space, 304. 15.
 of Extent of Time: 199. N. 2, 236. N. 2.
 rendering of, 123. 1.
 with *abhinc*, 251. N.
 with *nātus*, 236. N. 2.
 of Gerund and Gerundive, 235 ff., 279; *cf.* 292 (top).
 of I-Stems; in -*im*, 324. N. 1.
 of Place to (and into) Which: 77. 12, 82. 15, 133. 3, 148. 1; *cf.* 85. 11.
 Town Names, *domum*, and *rūs*, 276; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12, 341. 5 (contrast 16. 11, 174. 13).
 of Supine, 288 (1st) Rule, 292 (top); *cf.* 95. 13, 131. 1.
 Predicate, 203 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 245. N. 3, 259. N. 1, also 211. 6.

Accusative:

- with *cūrō*, 264. N.
- with *vincō*, 223. Vocab.

ācer: declined and compared, 351.
use of abl. of, 321. N.

ācrit: compared, 352.

ad: with acc.:

- governed by *accōdō*, 300. Vocab.
- of gerund and gerundive, 235 ff., 279; cf. 292 (top).
- of person, 85. 11.
- rendering of, 133. 3, 148. 1.

Adjectives:

- agreement of; mechanical, cf. 133. 11 (contrast 301. 5); with nearer noun, 71. 10; with predicate noun, 52. 5, 168. 3, 341. 14.
- comparison of, 351 ff.
- declension of, 349 ff., (*ūnus, alius*, etc.) 352 and N.
- governing supine in *-ū*, 288 (2d) Rule.

in abl. absol. construction, 223. Rem. 1; cf. 143. 2.

in Quality or Characteristic expressions, 321 and (1st) N.

is; as adj., 356. N. 2.

masc. of, used as nouns, 202. 9, 228. 21, 238. 18; cf. 330. N.; also 6. 16.

neuter of, used as nouns, 5. 9.

of One Termination, 350; cf. 248. N. 1, 321 (2d) N.

Predicate, 245. N. 3, 259. N. 1.

rendered by adv. or phrase, 2. 16; cf. 90. 4, 204. Vocab. (incolumis).

with gen. in *-ius* and dat. in *-ī*, 352 with N.

See also *imū*, *primus*, and *summus*, and Possessive Adjectives.

adorior: conjugation of, 372.

Adverbs:

- comparison of, 352
- used as indecl. nouns, 298. N. 1; cf. 297. Vocab., 300. Vocab.
- See also *quō* and *ubi*.

Africa: map of, 146.

Agency:

- contrasted with *Means*, 235. Rem.
- Dative of, 235; in indirect discourse, 235 (1st) N.
- expressed by the abl. with *ā*, *ab*, 235. Rem.

Intermediate, 329.

ager: declension of, 345.

Agreement: see under *Adjectives*, *Gerundive*, and *Pronouns*.

alibi: 177. 9.

aliqui (*aliquis*), declension and use of, 358, with NN.

alius: declension of, 352. N.; use of, 210. N. and Rem.

alii . . . *alii*, 20. 15; cf. 183. 5.

alii . . . *aliam*, 80. 5; cf. 177. 9.

alter: declension of, 352. N.

use of, 210. N.

altior: declension of, 350.

altus: comparison of, 351.

amāns: comparison of, 351; cf. 70. 9.

ambō: declension of, 353. N.

amplius: construction of clause unchanged by, 101. 3, 119. 2.

animal: declension of, 346 (324).

ante: used in connection with abl. of Degree of Difference, 209.

Vocab.; cf. 251. N. 1.

Antecedent:

incorporated in rel. clause, 44. 13, 141. 7, 145. 12, 184. N. 3; cf. 42.

4, 163. 9.

suppressed, 135. 16, 161. 10; cf. 169. 4.

- Apposition:** 214. 21.
arbor: declension of, 346.
arripiō: contrasted with **capiō**, 277. N. 2.
Asia Minor: map of, 179.
atque, ac: use of the two forms, 216. N. 1.
audācter: comparison of, 352.
audāx: comparison of, 351 (248. Vocab.).
 declension of, 350; cf. 248. N. 1.
audeō: semi-deponent, 372 (223. Vocab.); cf. 213. N. 2.
audiō: conjugation of, 368.
aut: connecting questions; rendering of, 128. 7, 152. 5.
autem: position in sentence, 246. 5. use with **cum** and **dum**, 218. 11.
auxilium: declension of, 223. Vocab.; cf. 219. N. 2.
avis: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.

bonus: comparison of, 351. declension of, 349.
bōs: declension of, 348.
Brundisium: declension of, see 345. N. 2; cf. 16. 4, 219. N. 2.

Cāius: abbreviation and pronunciation of, 262. N. 1.
canis: not an I-stem, 274. N. 2.
capiō: see **arripiō**.
caput: 47. 16; cf. 122. 18.
Cardinal Numerals: 353 ff.
careō: construction with, 68. 13; 134. 19.
Cases: of indecl. nouns (and advs. so used), 298. N. 1.
causā: not necessarily dependent upon a verb of motion, 248. Rem. 3.

 postpositive, 248. Rem. 1.
 with gen. of gerund and gerundive, 248, 279; of noun, 108. 8.
Cause: expressed by
 a **cum**-clause, 218. Vocab., 220.
 a **quod**-clause, 55. 11, 62. 13; cf. 166. 3.
 a relative clause, 170. 4.
 the ablative case, 251.
celeriter: comparison of, 352.
centuriō: rank of, 126. 18.
certē: contrasted with **perfectō**, 267 (2d) N.
certus: in the idiom (**aliquem**) **certiōrem facere**, 259. Vocab. and N. 1.
cēteri: force and use of, 210. N. and Rem.
Characteristic: expressed by
 a relative clause, 297; cf. 109. 5.
 the ablative case, 321; cf. 135. 2.
 the genitive case, 261; cf. 62. 14.
circiter: use of, 242. Vocab.
City: see **Town**.
cīvis: abl. of, 261. Vocab.
classis: abl. of, 242. Vocab.
Clauses:
 coördinate, definition of, 232. Rem.
 dependent in indirect discourse; mood and tense in, 267, **Rule and N.**
Cnaeus: abbreviation and pronunciation of, 262. N. 1.
coepti: use of passive of, 66. 12; cf. 105. 14.
cohors: size of, 129. 4.
collis: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.
collocō: with **in** and **abl.**, 323. 32; cf. 266. 23, 287. 35; with **loc.**, 307. 26.
commūtō: construction with, 94. 17.

Comparative: declension of, 350.
abl. with, 335 ff.; *cf.* 158. 14 (contrast 101. 3, 119. 2, 154. 10).
formed by prefixing **magis**, 352. N. 3.
in Purpose clauses, 291.
of **prope**: used as prep., 131. 8.
Comparison: of adjectives, 351 ff.;
of adverbs, 352.
by the use of **magis** and **maximē**, 352. N. 3; *cf.* 44. 11, 176. 3.
of the present participle, 351 (**amāns**); *cf.* 70. 9.
Complementary: see Infinitive.
complūrēs: declension of, 350. N.
Compounds: of **sum**, 374. N.; *cf.* 58. 12, 101. 17.
Conditional Sentences:
classes of, 254, 338 ff.
English forms inexact, 257. 6.
unsymmetrical, 272. 5.
coniungō: idiom **sē coniungere cum** and abl., 307. 33.
Conjugation of Verbs: 360 ff.
Conjunction: position of, in complex sentence, 211. 12.
Connective: negative, 232.
Consonant Stems: 346, 349.
cōnsuēscō: use of, 273. **Vocab.**, 274. N. 1.
cōnsuētūdō: construction with, 323. 5; *cf.* 308. N. 1.
Contrary to Fact: conditional sentences, 338 ff.
Conventional: see Formal.
Coordinate clause: defined, 232. **Rem.**
Cornivallis: abl. of, 251. **Vocab.**
cornū: declension of, 347 (324).
could: idiomatic rendering of pres. indicative of **possum**, 41. 7; *cf.* 326. 18. See also Subjunctive.

cum, conj.:
cum-clause contrasted with **dum**-clause, 212. N.
cum-clause replacing nom. of pres. partic., 211. 16; *cf.* 14. 8.
introducing causal clauses, 218. **Vocab.**, 220; *cf.* 211. 16.
position in complex sentence, 211. 12.
tenses of the subjunctive with, 219. N. 1; *cf.* 220. N. 1.
use of **autem** with, 218. 11.
cum, prep.:
postpositive, 211. 3.
rendered "for," 94. 17.
See **commūtō** and **coniungō**.
Curio's Campaign in Africa: map of, 146.
cūrō: construction with, 264. N.

Dates: 178. 4, 180. 9, 183. 2.
Dative:
ambiguous with the impersonal gerundive, 333. **Rem.**
of adjs. (**ūnus**, **alter**, etc.); in -ī, 352. N.
of Agency, 235; *cf.* 333. **Rem.** also 34. 21.
in indirect discourse, 235 (1st) N.
of Disadvantage: 136. 17; *cf.* 85. 16.
of gerund and gerundive, 308, 309.
of Indirect Object:
used in connection with a Dative of Service, 264. **Rem.**
with **auxilium ferō**, 228. 5;
bellum indicō, 92. 7, 280. **Vocab.**; **dēdō**, 226. **Vocab.**;
dicō, 299. 14, 331. 11; **ignem admovēō**, 293. 27; **nūntiō**, 223. **Vocab.**; **praesum**, 58. 12; **respondeō**, 342. **Vocab.**

Dative:

with Certain Verbs, 229. Also
333. Vocab. (ignōscō); 302.
Vocab., 303. N. 1. (imperō);
264. Vocab., 229. N. (noceō);
239. Vocab. and N. 3 (parcō);
230. Vocab. and N. 1, 23. 9,
27. 13, 303. N. 1 (persuādeō).
with impersonal pass. of, 332 ff.
with gerund of intransitive
verbs, 279. N.

of Interest, 244.

used in connection with a Dative
of Service, 264. Rem.; cf. 65.

4.

of Possession, 216.

of Service, 264; cf. 273. Vocab.
(ūsui); 333. Vocab. (salūtī);
also 65. 4, 136. 3.

rendered "for"; 236. N. 1, 244.
Rem.; cf. 136. 17; "upon,"
280. Vocab., 92. 7; cf. 58. 12.

with Certain Verbs; see under
Dative of Indirect Object above.

with idōneus, 236. Vocab. and N.
1; with similis, 297. Vocab.;
cf. 298. N. 3.

Declension: of Nouns, Adjectives,
and Pronouns, 345 ff.

dēdō: construction with, 226. Vocab.

Degree of Difference: expressed by
the abl., 203; cf. 137. 3, 158. 5,
251. N. 1.

Deities: of the Romans, 15.

Demonstrative Pronouns: declension
of, 356.

Dependent Clauses: see Subordinate
Clauses.

Deponent Verbs: conjugation of,
370 ff.; semi-deponent, 372; cf.
213. N. 2.

future infinitive of, 207; cf. 226.
Rem.

future participle of, 204.

gerundive of, 226 with Rem.

supine of, 287.

use of certain perfect participles
of, 270. N., 310. Vocab.

Derivation: of obsidiō, 154. 13; of
postridiē, 154. 5; of trādō, 11.
4; of trādūcō, 91. 10; cf. 142.
12.

dēus: declension of, 348.

dīcō: construction with, 299. 14, 331.
11.

form dīc, 260. 11.

personal passive of, 5. 17.

diēs: declension of, 347.

gender of, 347. N. 2.

Cf. also noctēs diēsq̄ue.

difficilis: superl. of, 352. N. 2 (298.
N. 3).

dignus: governing a rel. clause, 86.
4.

Diminutives: force of, cf. 169. 3.

dissimilis: superl. of, 352. N. 2
(298. N. 3).

diū: comparison of, 352.

absolute use of comparative of
260. 10, 332. 27.

See also iam diū.

dō: conjugation of, 377.

domus: declension of, 348 with N.

locative case of, 247; cf. 348. N.

use of abl. and acc. sing. of, 276;
cf. 87. 12 (contrast 16. 11, 174
13).

dūcō: form dūc, 260. 11.

dum: dum-clause contrasted with
cum-clause, 212. N.

use of autem with, 218. 11.

with present indicative, 212.

duo: declension of, 353.
governing **ē**, **ex** with **abl.**, 213. N. 1.
dux: see **imperātor**.

-ē-; in gen. and dat. sing. of Fifth Declension nouns, 347. N. 1.
ē, **ex**: omitted with **locō**, **locis**, 7. 4; *cf.* 315. 18.
with **abl.**, governed by numerals or **quidam**, 213. N. 1; by **ēgredior**, 327. **Vocab.**; by **quaerō**, 315. 3.
Eagle: used as standard, 131. 16, 132, 162.
edō: conjugation of, 378.
ego: declension of, 355.
abl. with postpositive **-cum**, 211. 3.
forms of, used reflexively, 356. N. 1 (318. **Rem.** 2).
gen. not used to express ownership, 319. **Rem.**
plural: with force of sing., 161. 4.
ēgredior: construction with, 327. **Vocab.**
Enclitics: see **Postpositives**.
English-Latin Exercises, 199 ff.
English-Latin Vocabulary, 427 ff.
enim: neque with, 127. 16.
position in sentence, 246. 5.
Entrails: a source of omens, 166. 1.
eō, adv.: *cf.* 43. 18, 314. N.
eō, verb: conjugation of, 374.
eōdem: use of, 87. 16.
eques Rōmānus: standing of, 125. 9.
esse: omitted sometimes with future active infinitive and gerundive in indirect discourse, 222. 11, 234. 10.
et: omitted, 180. 2.
use in the composition of numerals, 345. N.

etiam: contrasted with **quoque**, 280. **Vocab.** and N.
exercitus: declension of, 347.
Existence and Non-existence: 297 with N.
Extent of Space: expressed by the acc., 304. 15.
Extent of Time: expressed by the acc., 199. N. 2; *cf.* 123. 1.
with **abhinc**, 251. N. 1.
with **nātus**, 236. N. 2.
extrēmus: use of, 181. 5.

facile: comparison of, 352.
facilis: superl. of, 352. N. 2 (298 N. 3).
faciō: form **fac**, 260. 11.
facultās: construction with, 308. N. 1.
Falsity of assumption: implied by conditional sentence, 339.
Fearing, Verbs of: construction with, 258.
Feminine:
forms lacking in pronouns used as nouns, 357. N., 358 and NN.
of nouns of the Fourth Declension, 347. N.; *cf.* 336. N. 2.
ferō: conjugation of, 379.
auxilium ferō: with dat., 228. 5.
form **fer**, 260. 11.
fidō: semi-deponent, 372 (213. N. 2).
Fifth or Ē-Declension, 347.
retention of **ē** in gen. and dat. sing., 347. N. 1.
filius: declension of, 345 NN. 1 and 2; *cf.* 16. 4, 219. N. 2.
fiō: conjugation of, 381.
See **fit ut**.
First names of persons: abbreviated, 262. N. 1.
First or Ā-Conjugation, 360.

First or *Ā*-Declension, 345.
 nom. sing. in *-ās*, 23. 4; *cf.* 86. 12.
 First Person Pronoun: see *ego*.
fit ut: 251. Vocab., 252. N. 3; *cf.* 74. 15, 111. 1.
Flags: use of, as standards, 162.
flōs: declension of, 346.
 Formal rendering:
 of certain verbs with indirect obj., 229. N.
 of *cōnsuēscō* and *soleō*, 213. N. 2; *cf.* 274. N. 1.
 of future imperative, 342. N.
 Forms: Summary of, 345.
forte: free rendering of, with verb, 85. 12.
fortis: comparison and declension of, 351.
fortiter: comparison of, 352.
 Fourth or *Ī*-Conjugation, 368.
 Fourth or U-Declension, 347 (324).
 gender of nouns of, 347. N.; *cf.* 324. N. 2, 336. N. 2.
fugiō: form *fugitūrus*, 204. Rem.
 Future Tense: see Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, and Participle.
 Gallia: map of, 124.
gaudeō: semi-deponent, 372 (213. N. 2).
 Gender:
 determined by predicate noun, 30. 6, 52. 5, 74. 12, 168. 3, 183. 10, 341. 14.
 of *diēs*, 347. N. 2.
 of impersonal expressions, 243. 16.
 of indeclinable nouns (and advs. so used), 298. N. 1.
 of nouns of the fourth declension, 347. N.; *cf.* 336. N. 2, 324. N. 2.

Genitive:
 Objective, 70. 9, 74. 2.
 of adjs. (*ūnus*, *alter*, etc.); in *-ius*, 352. N.
 of Characteristic or Quality, 261; *cf.* 62. 14.
 of Charge or Penalty, 47. 16; *cf.* 122. 18.
 of *ego*, *suī*, and *tū*; not used to express ownership, 319. Rem.
 of gerund and gerundive with *causā*, 247 ff., 279.
 of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 345. N. 2; *cf.* 16. 4, 219. N. 2.
 of Quality or Characteristic, 261; *cf.* 62. 14.
 of *suī*, *tū*, and *ego*; not used to express ownership, 319. Rem.
 Partitive, 296; *cf.* 107. 17, 149. 13, 150. 10.
 Possessive; renderings of, 138. 11, 159. 11, 180. 11, 181. 7.
 rendered "for," 74. 2, 308. N. 1; *cf.* 329. 15; "in," *cf.* 323. 5; "to," 70. 9, 308. N. 1. See also under Possessive Genitive above.
 with *cōnsuetūdō*, 323. 5 (*cf.* 308. N. 1); *facultās*, 308. N. 1; *similis*, 297. Vocab., 288. N. 3; *studium*, 329. 15.
 Gerund:
 abl. case; use, 215. and N., 308.
 contrasted with gerundive, 215; with present partic., 215. Rem.
 dat. case little used, 308.
 forms of, 215.
 in purpose clauses, with *ad* and *causā*, 279 with N. and Rem.
 of transitive verbs used absolutely, 279. Rem.
 summary of uses of, 308.

Gerundive:

- agreement with *suī* (pl.), 133. 11.
 ambiguous dat. with impersonal
 use of, 333. Rem.
 contrasted with gerund, 215.
 dat. case little used, 309.
 defective; 236. Rem. 3, 248.
 Rem. 2, 282. N.
 force of; apart from *sum*, 236.
 Rem. 2, 309; cf. 61. 8; with
sum, 226, 255. Rem. 2, 309; cf.
 128. 1, 171. 9.
 impersonal use of, 282. N.; cf.
 333. Rem.
 in purpose clauses:
 governed by *ad*, 235 ff., 248.
 Rem. 3; cf. 279. Rule.
 governed by *causā*, 247, 248.
 Rem. 3; cf. 279.
 use of *ad* and *causā* contrasted,
 248. Rem. 3.
 of deponent verbs, 226 with Rem.
 of intransitive verbs (impers. only),
 282. N., 309 (top); cf. 236.
 Rem. 3, 248. Rem. 2.
 omits *esse* sometimes in indirect
 discourse, 234. 10.
 renderings of; see force of (above).
 summary of uses of, 309 ff.
 with Dative of Agency, 235; cf.
 333. Rem.
 Gods: of the Romans, 15.
gracilis: superl. of, 352. N. 2
 (298. N. 3).
habēō: conjugation of, 362.
hīc: declension of, 356.
 Historical Infinitive: 174. 10, 177. 1.
 Historical Present (indicative):
 135. 6.
homō: contrasted with *vir*, 204. N. 2.

- Hortatory Subjunctive: negative of,
 305.
hortor: construction with, 251.
 Vocab.
hortus: declension of, 345.
hostis: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.
hūc: use of, 255. N.
humilis: superl. of, 352. N. 2
 (298. N. 3).
humus: locative case of, 247 (345.
 N. 3); cf. 109. 17.
 use of abl. and acc. sing. of, 276.
 Hundreds: declined in Latin, 306. 2
 (354).
idem: declension of, 356.
 Identity: pronoun of, see *idem*.
idōneus: comparison of, 352. N. 3.
 force of dat. with, 236. N. 1.
ignis: declension of, 346; cf. 201.
 Rem. 2.
ignōscō: 333. Vocab.
 construction with, 229.
ille: declension of, 356.
 noun use of, 211. 18.
 Imperative:
 Future, 341 ff.
 Present; irregular forms of, 260. 11.
imperātor: contrasted with *dux*,
 200 (2d) N.
 Imperfect Tense: see Indicative and
 Subjunctive.
imperō: construction with, 302.
 Vocab., 303. N. 1.; cf. 229.
 Impersonal:
 expressions; gender of, 243. 16.
 passive (including gerundive),
 282 with N. and Rem., 332 ff.;
 cf. 1. 11, 8. 15, 12. 2.
imūs: use of, cf. 168. 8.
 See *inferior*.

in: with abl.; (*collocō*), 323. 32; *cf.* 266. 23, 287. 35; (*pōnō*), 266. 23, 302. 31; *cf.* 287. 35.
omitted with *locō*, *locis*, 7. 4, 315. 18; *cf.* also 32. 16, 41. 15.
with acc.; (*domum*), by exception, 16. 11, 174. 13.
incolumis: contrasted with *tūtus*, 204. N. 3.
use of, 204. **Vocab.**
Incorporation: of antecedent in rel. clause, 44. 13, 141. 7, 145. 12; *cf.* 42. 4, 163. 9, 184. N. 3.
Indeclinable:
adjective, 310. **Vocab.** (*tot*).
nouns (and advs. so used); syntax of, 298. N. 1.
Indefinite Pronouns: 358 ff.
See also indef. *quī* (*quis*), *quīdam*, and *quisquam*.
Indefinite Relative Pronoun: 359
Indicative:
Future renders English present in conditions, 257. 6.
Imperfect Tense:
of Customary Past Action, 255. **Rem.** 2; *cf.* 7. 17, 150. 12.
renderings of, 36. 7, 107. 7, 158. 8, 160. 14.
with *iam diū*: force of, 10. 15.
in Simple Conditional Sentences, 254.
Perfect Tense: short forms of, 38. 1.
Pluperfect Tense:
rendered as a perf., 72. 1.
short forms of, 170. 12, 171. 12.
Present Tense:
idiomatic: 104. 14 (*longum est*); 41. 7, *cf.* 326. 18 (*possum*).

in animated narration for perf. (Historical Present), 135. 6.
of *inquam*; use of, 382. N.
with *dum*, 212.
indicō: *bellum indicō*, with dat., 280. **Vocab.**
Indirect Discourse:
Dative of Agency in, 235 (1st) N. dependent upon the personal pass. of *dicō* or the like, 5. 17.
esse omitted sometimes with future active infin. or gerundive, 222. 11, 234. 10.
governed by *videor*, lacks subject acc., 245. N. 3.
governing verb implied merely, 128. 1, 160. 8, 170. 10, 174. 10; *cf.* 133. 13.
• infinitive of; contrasted with complementary infin., 209. N.
mood in subordinate clauses in, 267; *cf.* 61. 14.
subject of; expressed, 211. 1 (contrast 245. N. 3).
tense of infin. in, 207 ff.
tense of subjunctive in subordinate clauses in, 267 (1st) N.; *cf.* 217. 1.
use of reflexives in, 317 ff.; *cf.* 235 (1st) N., 275. 10.
See also Infinitive.
Indirect Object: see Dative.
Indirect Questions: 312 ff.; *cf.* 126. 17.
with *num*, 325. **Vocab.**
inferior: comparison of, 351. *Cf.* *imius*.
Infinitive:
Future:
formation and use of, 207 ff.; *cf.* 226. **Rem.**

Infinitive

- of **possum**; lacking, 250. 7; *cf.* 23. 9.
- omits **esse** sometimes in indirect discourse, 222. 11.
- not used to express Purpose, 234. 3.
- Perfect:
 - formation and use of, 207 ff.
 - sequence of, 217. 1; *cf.* 267 (1st) N.
 - short forms of, 87. 8.
- Present:
 - Complementary, 209. N.
 - of **possum**; for lacking future, 250. 7; *cf.* 23. 9.
 - of **sum**; omitted sometimes with gerundive in indirect discourse, 234. 10.
 - used in place of the third person of perf. or pluperf. indicative (Historical Infinitive), 174. 10, 177. 1.
 - sequence of, 217. 1; *cf.* 267 (1st) N.
 - tenses and use of, 207 ff.
 - with **nesciō**; idiomatic, 241. 28; *cf.* 8. 2, 35. 17; with **sciō**, 23. 3.
 - See also Indirect Discourse.
- inquam**: 382.
 - use of present forms of, 382. N.
- Instrumentality: expressed by **per** and **acc.**, 329.
- Intensive Particle: 175. 7.
- Intensive Prefix: 25. 10, 145. 12; *cf.* 186.
- Intensive Pronoun: see **ipse**.
- Interest: Dative of, 244.
 - used in connection with a Dative of Service, 264. Rem.
- Intermediate Agency: expressed by **per** and **acc.**, 329.

Interrogative Words:

- first in clause, 222. 25.
- not reinforced by **-ne**, 263. 13.
- See also interrog. **quī** (**quis**), **num**, **quōd**, and **ubi**.
- Intransitive Verbs: defined, 279.
 - passive of (including gerundive), impersonal only, 282. with N., 332 ff.; *cf.* 1. 11, 8. 15, 12. 2.
 - types of, 279. N.; *cf.* 270.
 - use of gerund of, 279 with N.; *cf.* 308.
- ipse**: declension of, 356.
 - contrasted with **sui**, 318. Rem. 1.
- is**: declension of, 355.
 - gen. of; contrasted with **sui**, 317.
 - used as adj., 356. N. 2.
- iste**: declension of, 356. N.
 - use of, 73. 4.
- I-Stems: 324, 346, 351.
 - abl. sing., of **avis**, **collis**, **hostis**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **nūbēs**, **ovis**, **piscis**, **secūris**, **vallēs**, 201. Rem. 2; of **cīvis**, 261. Vocab.; of **classis**, 242. Vocab.; of **Cornivallis**, 251. Vocab.; of **mēnsis**, 218. Vocab. *Cf.* 321 (2d) N.
 - acc. in **-im**, 324. N. 1.
 - neuter, 201. c, 324 with N. 1.
 - summary of, 201.
- itaque**: position in sentence, 272. 24.
- iam diū**: force of, with imperfect tense, 10. 15.
- iubeō**: contrasted with **imperō**, 303. N. 1.
- iuvenis**: not an I-Stem, 274. N. 2.
- Latin-English Exercises, 1 ff.
- Latin-English Vocabulary, 385.
- legiō**: constitution of, 125. 14; *cf.* 139. 10.

- libenter**: comparison of, 352.
 free rendering of, 77. 10, 79. 19, 93. 9; cf. 85. 12.
- List of Abbreviations, xv.
- List of Verb Constructions, 382.
- litus**: declension of, 346.
- Locative Case**: 247; cf. 178. 7, 276.
 in -il, 247. Rem. 1; cf. 345. N. 2.
 of **domus**, 247; cf. 348. N.; of
humus, 247, 346. N. 3; cf. 109.
 17; of **rūs**, 247, 248. N. 2,
 346. N.
 of Town names, 247 with Rem. 1;
 cf. 345. N. 2.
 with **collocō**, 307. 26.
- locus**: abl. without prep., 7. 4; cf.
 315. 18.
- longē**: comparison of, 352.
- longum est**: 104. 14.
- loquor**: construction with, 233. Vocab.
- M.**: abbreviation of **Mārcus**, 262.
 N. 1.
- magis**: comparison of, 352.
 marking the comparative degree,
 352. N. 3.
 See also **maximē**.
- magnus**: comparison of, 351.
- mālō**: conjugation of, 376.
- mālum**: declension of, 345.
- malus**: comparison of, 351.
- manus**: gender of, 336. Vocab. and
 N. 2.
- Maps: Asia Minor, 179; Curio's
 Campaign in Africa, 146; Gallia,
 124.
- Mārcus**: abbreviation of, 262. N. 1.
- mare**: declension of, 346.
- Masculine**: of adjectives and participles;
 used as nouns, 202. 9, 228. 21, 238. 18, 267. Vocab.;
 cf. 330. N. Also 6. 16, 66. 7.
- mātūrē**: comparison of, 352.
- maximē**: marking the superlative
 degree, 352. N. 3; cf. 44. 11,
 176. 3.
 See **magis**.
- Means**: abl. of, 235. Rem.; cf.
 294. Rem.
- mēnsa**: declension of, 345.
- mēnsis**: abl. of, 218. Vocab.
- meus**: order in phrase, 318 (2d) N.
 reflexive use of, 318. Rem. 2.
- mille, milia**: declension and use of,
 239. Vocab. and N. 1.
- minus**: comparison of, 352.
 construction of clause uninfluenced
 by, 154. 10.
 governing the gen., 302. 16 (296 ff.).
- miser**: comparison of, 351.
 declension of, 349.
- mittō**: conjugation of, 364.
- Mixed Stems**: 350.
- Modifier**: in Ablative of Quality or
 Characteristic, 321. Rule and
 N.
- mōns**: not abbreviated or capitalized,
 307. 31.
- morior**: form **moritūrus**, 216. Vocab.
- moror**: conjugation of, 370.
- Motion**: verbs of, governing **ad** with
 acc. of gerund or gerundive,
 235 (2d) N., 292 (top); govern-
 ing supine in -um, 288. Rule
 and N.
- multō**: use of, 244. Vocab., 245. N. 2.
- multus**: comparison of, 351.
- nam**: use of, 175. 7.
- Names**: first names of persons ab-
 breviated, 262. N. 1.

Names:

See also Proper Names, Town Names, and River Names.

nārrō: construction with, 209. **Vocab.**

nātus: with Accusative of Extent of Time, 236. **N. 2.**

nāvis: abl. of, 201. **Rem. 2.**

-ne: attached to pronoun, 222. 26.

dividing words of a phrase, 231. 1.

not added to other interrogatives, 263. 13.

See also **nōnne**.

nō: followed by indef. **quī (quis)**, 255, 256. **NN. 1** and **2**; *cf.* 56. 1.

introducing clauses dependent upon verbs of Fearing, 258; *cf.* 255, 256. **N. 2.**

introducing Purpose clauses, 273.

N.; *cf.* 256. **N. 1.**

freely rendered in, 171. 10.

in dependence upon **hortor**, 251.

Vocab.; upon **imperō**, 302.

Vocab.; upon **persuādeō**, 230.

Vocab.

use contrasted with that of **ut nōn**, 273. **N.**

with Hortatory Subjunctive, 305.

nē . . . quidem: use of, 227. **N. 1.**

nec: see **neque**.

Negative:

Clauses:

of Purpose, 291. 1, 256. **N. 1**; *cf.* 273. **N.**

of Result, 273. **N.**

use of **quisquam** and **umquam** in, 233. **Vocab.**

Connective, 232; *cf.* 17. 8, 150. 13.

of Hortatory Subjunctive, 305.

nēmō: declension of, 210. **Vocab.**;

cf. 44. 17.

nēmō est quī, 297.

neque, nec: use of the two forms, 233. **N.**

combines negative and connective, 232; *cf.* 150. 13.

in combination with various post-positive words, 127. 16.

use of **quisquam** and **umquam** in connection with, 233. **Vocab.**

nesciō: with idiomatic infin., 241. 28; *cf.* 8. 2, 35. 17; *cf.* **sciō**.

Neuter:

gerundive of intransitive verbs, 282. **N.**; *cf.* 333. **Rem.**

impersonal expressions, 243. 16.

indeclinable nouns (and advs. so used), 298. **N. 1.**

I-Stems, 201. **c**; *cf.* 324.

neuter: declension of, 352. **N.**

nēve: 150. 13.

Night: watches of, 91. 17.

nihil: indecl. noun, 300. **Vocab.** and **N.**

construction with, 302. 24 (296).

nisi: followed by indef. **quī (quis)**, 255, 256. **N. 2.**

noceō: construction with, 229 with **N.** form **nocitūrus**, 264. **Vocab.**

noctēs diēsque: 28. 13.

nōlō: conjugation of, 376.

Nominative: Predicate, 203. **N.**; *cf.* 211. 6, 245. **N. 3**, 259. **N. 1.**

nōn: marking negative result, 273. **N.**

Non-existence and Existence: general expressions of, 297.

nōnne: use of, 266. 33; *cf.* 98. 4.

noster: masc. pl. of, used as noun, 228. 21.

order in phrase, 318 (2d) **N.**

reflexive use of, 318. **Rem. 2.**

Nouns: declension of; Regular, 345 **fi**; Irregular, 348.

Nouns:

- abstract; dat. expressing Service, 264. Rule.
 in apposition, 214. 21.
 indeclinable; case use of, 298. N. 1.
 make up abl. absol. construction, 222 ff.
 masc. of adjs. and pronouns, used as, 202. 9, 228. 21, 238. 18, 330. N.; also 2. 1, 6. 16.
 of the second declension, in -ius and -ium, 345. NN. 1 and 2; cf. 219. N. 2.
 plural; with sing. adjs., 301. 5.
 Predicate, 211. 6, 203. Rule and N.; cf. 245. N. 3.
 determining gender, 341. 14; cf. 30. 6, 52. 5, 119. 5, 168. 3, 183. 10.
 use of forms of ille as, 211. 18.
 nūbēs: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.
 nūllus: declension of, 352. N.
 num: followed by indef. quī (quis), 255, 256. N. 2.
 introducing indirect question, 325. Vocab.
 Numerals: 353 ff. (300, 305).
 formed by subtraction, 354. N (300).
 governing ē, ex with abl., 213. N. 1.
 use of et in composition of, 354. N.
 numerus: use of, 239. N. 2.
 nūntiō: construction with, 223. Vocab.
 ob: -que not combined with, 129. 5; cf. 184. 7.
 Object:
 Direct:
 of participle in abl. absol. construction, 223. Rem. 1; cf. 44. 17, 175. 11.

of supine in -um, 288. N.
 transitive verbs, used without, 279. Rem.

Indirect: see Dative of Indirect Object.

Objective Genitive, 70. 9, 74. 2.

obsidiō: derivation of, 154. 13.

Omens: 166. 1.

Omission of forms of sum:

in future active infinitive, 222. 11.

in repetitions, 243. 31, 307. 13, 326. 14, 335. 19.

with the gerundive in indirect discourse, 234. 10.

omnēs: rendering of, in connection with quī, 57. 8, 97. 10; cf. 58. 11.

One Termination: adjs. of, 350; cf. 248. N. 1, 321 (2d) N.

Ordinal Numerals: 353.

designated by figures, 183. 13.

ovis: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.

pār: declension and use of, 321. Vocab. and NN.

parcō: construction with, 229, 239. N. 3.

Participle:

Future Active:

formation and use of (including deponents), 204 ff.; cf. 4. 3, 16. 15, 31. 7, 122. 11, 168. 1.

of absum, 342. Vocab.; fugiō, 204. Rem.; morior, 216. Vocab.; nuceō, 264. Vocab.; sum, 204.

omits esse sometimes in indirect discourse, 222. 11.

Perfect:

masc. pl. of; used as noun, 267. Vocab.; cf. 66. 7.

- Perfect :
of certain deponents, substituted
for present, 270. **N.**, 310. **Vo-**
cab. (**veritus**); *cf.* 2. 17.
rendered loosely as present, 7. 15,
86. 3, 155. 16.
- Predicate: 245. **N.** 3.
- Present: declension of, 349.
comparison of: 351 (**amāns**);
cf. 70. 9.
contrasted with *gerund*, 215. **Rem.**
in abl. absol. construction, 223.
Rem. 1; *cf.* 44. 17, 175. 11.
nominative case of, little used;
replaced by *cum*-clause, 211.
16, 270. **Rem.**; *cf.* 14. 8.
oblique cases, standing alone,
104. 3, 177. 4.
with object in abl. absol. con-
struction, 223. **Rem.** 1; *cf.* 44.
17, 175. 11.
rendered by an indicative clause,
156. 9, 182. 2, 185. 7.
- Partitive Genitive: 296; *cf.* 107. 17,
149. 13, 150. 10.
- parum**: use of, 296 ff., 297. **Vocab.**
- parvus**: comparison of, 351.
- Passive:
impersonal, 282 with **N.**, 332 ff.;
cf. 1. 11, 8. 15, 12. 2.
of transitive and intransitive verbs,
282.
personal; governing indirect dis-
course, 5. 17; *cf.* **videor**, 245.
N. 3.
- Past action; described by **dum** with
present indicative, 212.
- patior**: conjugation of, 371.
- pauci**: rendering of, in connection
with **quī**, *cf.* 58. 11.
- per**: with acc.; expressing Instru-
- mentality or Intermediate
Agency, 329.
- per-**: intensive prefix, 25. 10, 145.
12; *cf.* 186.
- Perfect Tense: of **cōsuēscō**, 273.
Vocab., 274. **N.** 1.
See Indicative, Infinitive, Parti-
ciple, and Subjunctive.
- perfungor**: construction with, 171.
13; *cf.* 270.
- Personal Pronouns: declension of,
355 ff.
See **ego**, **is**, and **tū**.
- persuādeō**: construction with, 230.
Vocab. and **N.** 1, (229); *cf.*
23. 9, 27. 13, 303. **N.** 1.
- piger**: declension of, 349.
- piscis**: abl. of, 201. **Rem.** 2.
- Place from Which: see Ablative.
- Place to (and into) Which: see
Accusative.
- Place Where: see Ablative. *Cf.* also
Locative.
- Pluperfect Tense: of **cōsuēscō**;
use of, 274. **N.** 1.
See Indicative and Subjunctive.
- Plural: of **ego**; with force of sing.,
161. 4.
- plūs**: declension and use of, 350 with
Rem. (298. **N.** 2).
- polliceor**: conjugation of, 370.
- pōnō**: with **in** and **abl.**, 266. 23,
302. 31; *cf.* 287. 35.
- Possession: dat. of, 215 ff.
- Possessive Adjectives:
order in phrase, 318 (2d) **N.**; *cf.*
206. 17, 228. 32, 243. 15, 266. 31;
also 11. 6, 85. 4.
reflexive use of **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**,
and **vester**, 318. **Rem.** 2.
See **suus**.

- possum**: conjugation of, 373.
 present indicative of; idiomatic use, 41. 7; *cf.* 326. 18.
 present infinitive of; for future, 250. 7; *cf.* 23. 9.
 rendering of, 1. 13. *Cf.* also 41. 7, 326. 18.
 with **quam** and superl. of adj. or adv., 142. 5, 181. 14.
- Postpositives**:
causā, 248. Rule and Rem. 1.
-cum, 211. 3.
-que; added to second word in phrase, 129. 5; *cf.* 184. 7.
tamen, 219. N. 3.
tantum, 276. N. 1.
 use of neque with, 127. 16.
- postridīe**: derivation of, 154. 5.
- potior**: construction with, 288.
Vocab. (270); *cf.* 95. 11.
- praesum**: conjugation of, 374. N.
 construction with, 58. 12.
- Predicate**: see Adjectives, Nouns, and Participle.
- Prefixes**: list of, 186.
per-, 25. 10, 145. 12.
re-, 8. 5.
- Preposition**:
 coalesceſſ with verb, yet governing acc., 91. 10, 142. 12.
 not required with supine in **-um** in purpose expressions, 288. N.
 omitted with abl. and acc. of Town Names, **domus**, and **rūs**, 276, 341. 5; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12 (contrast 16. 11, 174. 13, 182. 1); with abl. of locus, 7. 4; *cf.* 315. 18. For other omissions, see under Ablative.
- propius**, used as, 131. 8.
- que** not attached to ob, 129. 5; *cf.* 184. 7.
 with abl. and acc. of gerund and gerundive, 308. NN. 2 and 3, 310. N.
- Present Tense**: of **inquam**; use of, 382. N.
- See Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, Participle, and Subjunctive.
- primus**: use of, 22. 7, 76. 21, 89. 20, 177. 3.
- profectō**: contrasted with **certē**, 267 (ad) N.
- proficiācor**: conjugation of, 371.
- Pronouns**: 355 ff.
 agreeing with predicate noun, 52. 5, 168. 3, 341. 14. See also under rel. **quī**.
- prope**, adv.: comparison of, 352.
 comparative of; used as prep., 131. 8.
- Proper Names**: in **-ius** and **-ium**; declension of, 345. NN. 1 and 2; *cf.* 219. N. 2.
 of persons; first name abbreviated, 262. N. 1.
 See also Town and River Names.
- prōsum**: conjugation of, 374. N.
- puer**: declension of, 345.
- Purpose**:
 expressed by
ad and **causā** with gerund or gerundive, 235 ff., 248, 279; *cf.* 292 (top), also 108. 8.
quō with subjunctive, 291. Rule; *cf.* 101. 14.
 relative with subjunctive, 199 ff.; *cf.* 278. 6.
 supine in **-um**, 288; *cf.* 95. 13, 131. 1.
ut and **nē** with subjunctive, 290;

Purpose:

cf. 255, 256. **N.** 1, 273. **N.**
in dependence upon *hortor*,
251. **Vocab.**; upon *imperō*,
302. **Vocab.**; upon *persuādeo*, 230. **Vocab.**

governing verb implied merely,
138. 2.

not expressed by infin., 234. 3.

summary of methods of expressing,
290 ff.

tenses of subjunctive; force of,
220. **N.** 1; *cf.* 258. **N.**

use of indef. *quī* (*quis*) with *nē*,
255, 256. **NN.** 1 and 2; *cf.* 56. 1.

quaerō: construction with, 315. 3.

Quality or Characteristic:

expressed by abl., 321.

expressed by gen., 261.

quam: with superl. (and *possum*),
47. 14, 142. 5, 181. 14.

-que: not combined with *ob*, 129.
5; *cf.* 184. 7.

Questions:

anticipating answer "yes," 266. 33.

Indirect, 312 ff.; *cf.* 126. 17.

See also *aut*.

quī, rel.: declension of, 357.

agreement with predicate noun, 30.
6, 74. 12, 119. 5, 183. 10.

in agreement, but rendered by
gen., 57. 8; *cf.* 58. 11, 97. 10.

See Relative Words; also Cause,
Characteristic, Purpose, Result,
and *dignus*.

quī (*quis*), indef.: declension of,
358 with **N.**

following *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*,
255, 256. **NN.** 1 and 2; *cf.* 56. 1.

noun forms of, 358. **N.**

quī (*quis*), interrog.: declension of,
357 and **N.**

quicumque: declension of, 359.

quidam: declension and use of, 359
and **N.** 1.

governing *ē*, *ex* with abl., 213. **N.** 1.

quisquam: declension and use of,
359 with **N.** 2, 233. **Vocab.**

quisque: declension and use of, 358
(313. **Vocab.**).

quō, adv.: use of, 313. **Vocab.**, 314.
N.

See also Relative Words.

quō, conj.: introducing purpose
clause, 291; *cf.* 101. 14.

quod, conj.: force of subjunctive with,
55. 11, 62. 13; *cf.* 166. 3.

quoque: contrasted with *etiam*, 280,
N.

rapīō: conjugation of, 366.

ratus: use of, 270. **Rem.**

re-: force of, 8. 5; *cf.* 186.

recipiō: idiom *sē recipere*, 240. **N.**
4; *cf.* 284. 24.

redūcō: contrasted with *sē recipere*,
284. 24.

Reflexive: defined, 316.

of first and second persons, 318.

Rem. 2; *cf.* 356. **N.** 1.

of third person; see *suī* and *suus*.

Relative Words:

antecedent incorporated in relative
clause, 42. 4, 44. 13, 141. 7, 145.

12, 184. 3; *cf.* 42. 4, 163. 9;

suppressed, 135. 16, 161. 10, 169.

4; *cf.* 163. 9.

first in clause, 246. 19.

introducing clause dependent upon
dignus, 86. 4.

clause expressing Cause, 170. 4.

Relative Words:

- clause of Characteristic, 297; *cf.* 109. 5.
 clause of Purpose, 199 ff.; *cf.* 291; (ubi) 278. 6, 284. 13.
 clause of Result, 174. 11.
 not suppressed in Latin sentence, 206. 25.
 replacing demonstrative word or personal pron. at beginning of new sentence, 228. 25, 286. 31; *cf.* 5. 3 and 8, 14. 3, 24. 1; (quō) 313. Vocab., 314. N.; *cf.* 323. 21, 332. 37; (ubi) 269. 32, 343. 11; *cf.* 287. 41, 312. 24 and 30.
 See also *quī*, *ubi*, and Indefinite Relative Pronoun.
rēs: declension of, 347.
respondeō: construction with, 342. Vocab.
 Result: expressed by
 clause introduced by *ut* (negative *nōn*), 273 with N.
 relative clause, 174. 11.
 River Names: 324. N. 1.
 Rome: designated as *urbs* simply, 48. 3.
rūs: declension of, 248. Vocab. and N. 2 (346. N.).
 abl. and acc. without prep., 276; *cf.* 341. 5.
 locative case of, 247, 248. N. 2 (346. N.).
salūti esse: 333. Vocab.
satis: use of, 297. Vocab. and (1st) Rem.
sciō: with idiomatic infin., 23. 3; *cf.* *nesciō*.
scribō: special construction with, 138. 2.

- Second or *Ē*-Conjugation, 362.
 Second or *O*-Declension, 345 ff.
 Second Person Pronoun: see *tū*.
secūris: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.
sed: *autem* preferred to, 218. 11.
 Semi-deponents, 372; *cf.* 213. N. 2.
 Senatorial Order: 165. 11.
 Sequence of Tenses: 219 ff.
 in indirect discourse, 267 (1st) N.; *cf.* 217. 1.
 Service: Dative of, 264; *cf.* 273. Vocab. (136. 3), 333. Vocab.; also 65. 4.
sī: followed by indef. *quī* (*quis*), 255, 256. N. 2; *cf.* 56. 1.
 cf. also Conditional Sentences.
similis: comparison of, 351; *cf.* 298. N. 3.
 construction with, 297. Vocab., 298. N. 3.
 Simple Conditional Sentences: 254.
 Singular: of *vīta*: rendered as pl., 39. 17.
sīs, sultis: literal force of, 224. N. 3.
soleō: semi-deponent, 372; *cf.* 213. N. 2.
sōlus: declension of, 352. N.
 Specification: abl. of, 239, 288 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 37. 20, 126. 17.
 Standards: of the Roman army, 130. 1, 131. 16, 132. 162.
studium: construction with, 329. 15.
 Subject:
 emphasized by use of pron., 214. 19.
 of indirect discourse; expressed, 211. 1 (contrast 245. N. 3).
 position of; in complex sentence, 211. 12; *cf.* 20. 17.
 suppressed with *sunt quī*, etc., 297. N.

Subjunctive:

Horatory; negative *nē*, 305.

in Causal clauses; (*cum*) 220;
(*quod*) 55. 11, 62. 13; *cf.* 166.
3; (rel.) 170. 4.

in clauses dependent on Verbs of
Fearing, 258.

in Conditional Sentences, 254 (2d)
Rule, 338 ff.

in dependent clauses in indirect
discourse, 267; *cf.* 61. 14.

in Indirect Questions, 312 ff; *cf.*
126. 17.

in Purpose clauses; see under Pur-
pose.

in Relative clause dependent upon
dignus, 86. 4.

in Relative clauses of Character-
istic, 297; *cf.* 109. 5.

in Result clauses, 273; (rel.) 174.
11.

rendered "could," 46. 16;
"should," 255. Rem. 2; *cf.* 104
18, 111. 3, 150. 11; "would,"
255. Rem. 2; *cf.* 92. 13.

Tenses of:

imperfect: force of, 220. N. 1,
258 and N.

Law of Sequence, 219, 220. N;
cf. 217. 1, 258 and N., 267
and (1st) N., 313. N.

perfect; force and use of, 220.
N. 2, 273. Rem.

pluperfect: force of, 220. N. 2.
short forms, 3. 1, 12. 9, 135.
16.

present: force of, 220. N. 1, 258
with N.

with *fit ut*, 251. Vocab.

Subordinate Clauses:

in indirect discourse, 267.

use of *suī* and *suus* in certain
kinds of, 316 ff., 318 (1st) N.

suī: declension of, 355.

abl. of; with postpositive *-cum*,
211. 3.

contrasted with *ipse*, 318. Rem. 1.
gen. not used to express owner-
ship, 319. Rem.

idioms: *sē coniungere cum* with
abl., 307. 33; *sē recipere*, 240.
N. 4; *cf.* 284. 24; *sē tenere* with
abl., 218. 16, 232. 28, 323. 25.

use of; general, 316 ff.; ambigu-
ous, 318 (1st) N.; in certain
types of subordinate clauses, 316
ff., 318 (1st) N.; *cf.* 235 (1st) N.

sultis, sis: literal force of, 224. N. 3.

sum: conjugation of, 373.

compounds of, 374. N.; *cf.* 101. 17.
form *esse*; omitted sometimes with
future active infin. and gerundive
in indirect discourse, 222. 11,
234. 10.

form *futūrus*, 204.

omitted in repetitions, 243. 31, 307.
13, 326. 14, 335. 19.

Cf. also *nēmō est quī*, and *sunt*
quī.

Summary of Forms, 345.

summus: use of, 104. 4.

See superior (*cf.* 230. N. 2).

sunt quī: 297.

superior: comparison of, 351.

Superlative: of adjs. and advs., 351 ff.
absolute use of, 13. 11.

formed by prefixing *maximē*, 352.
N. 3; *cf.* 44. 11, 176. 3.

in *-limus*, 352. N. 2 (298. N. 3).

renderings of, 129. 3, 184. 7.

with *quam* (and *possum*), 47. 14,
142. 5, 181. 14.

- Supine**: formation of, 287.
 in -ū, 288 with Rem.; cf. 126. 17.
 in -um, 288. with N. and Rem.;
 cf. 95. 13, 131. 1.
- suus**: ambiguous in its reference,
 cf. 318 (1st) N.
 contrasted with the gen. of *is*, 317.
 function of, 319. Rem.
 masc. pl. of, used as noun, 330. N.
 order in phrase, 318 (2d) N.; cf.
 206. 17, 228. 32, also 11. 6, 85. 4.
 use of, general, 316 ff.; in certain
 types of subordinate clauses, 316
 ff., 318 (1st) N.; cf. 235 (1st) N.
 with force of objective gen., 166.
 3.
- tam**: use of, 273. Vocab.; cf. 310.
 N. 3.
- tamen**: position in sentence and
 clause, 219. N. 3.
- tantum**: usually postpositive, 276.
 N. 1.
- Tenses**: sequence of, 219.
 See Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive,
 Participle, and Subjunctive.
- terrā marique**: 41. 15.
- Third Declension**: Adjectives, 349 ff.;
 Nouns, 346 ff.
 See also I-Stems.
- Third or E-Conjugation**, 364 ff.,
 366 ff.
- Third Person Pronoun**; see *is*.
- Third Person Reflexives**: see *sui*
 and *suus*.
- Three Terminations**: Adjs. of, 351.
- Time**:
 Extent of; expressed by acc., 199.
 N. 2, 236. N. 2; cf. 123. 1.
 methods of measuring, 75, 91. 17;
 cf. 74. 16.
- When or Within Which; expressed
 by abl., 199; cf. 62. 15, 99. 22,
 also 257. 10.
 Cf. also Dates.
- tot**: force of, 310. N. 3.
- tōtus**: declension of, 352. N.
 modifying abl. lacking prep. in,
 32. 16.
- Town Names**:
 abl. and acc. without prep., 276;
 cf. 79. 21 (contrast 182. 1).
 I-Stems; acc. in -im, 324. N. 1.
 locative case of, 247; cf. 276,
 345. N. 2.
 of second declension; in -ium,
 345. N. 2; cf. 219. Rem. 2,
 247. Rem. 1.
- trādō**: derivation of, 11. 4.
- trādūcō**: derivation of, and construction with, 91. 10, 142. 12.
- Transitive Verbs**: defined, 279.
 absolute use of, 279. Rem.
 use of gerund of, 279. Rem.; cf. 308
 use of gerundive of, 279. Rule;
 cf. 309.
- trēs**: declension of, 353.
 governing *ex* with abl., 213. N. 1.
- tribūnus (militum)**: rank of, 126. 18
- tū**: declension of, 355.
 abl. with postpositive -cum, 211. 3
 forms of, used reflexively, 318
 Rem. 2 (356. N. 1).
 gen. not used to express ownership,
 319. Rem.
- turris**: declension of, 346 (324).
- tūtō**: comparison of, 352.
- tūtus**: contrasted with *incolumis*,
 204. N. 3.
- tuus**: order in phrase, 318 (2d) N.
 reflexive use of, 318. Rem. 2.
- Two Terminations**: Adjs. of, 351.

U-Stems: see Fourth or U-Declension.

ubi: contrasted with **quō**, 314. **N.**
relative use illustrated, 216. **N. 2.**
See also Relative Words.

ūllus: declension of, 352. **N.**

umquam: use of, 233. **Vocab.**

ūnus: declension of, 352.
governing **ē**, **ex** with **abl.**, 213.
N. 1.

urbs: "the city," *i.e.* Rome, 48. 3.

ūsui esse, 273. **Vocab.**, 274. **N. 3;**
cf. 136. 3.

ut: introducing Purpose clauses,
290; governed by **hortor**, 251.
Vocab.; by **imperō**, 302. **Vocab.**;
by **persuādeō**, 230. **Vocab.**;
governing verb implied merely,
138. 2.

introducing Result clauses, 273
with **N.**

with **fit**, etc., 251. **Vocab.**

with verbs of Fearing, 258.

ut nōn: contrasted with **nē**, 273. **N.**

uter: declension of, 352. **N.**

ūtōr: construction with, 270.
supplemented by **ūsui esse**,
274. **N. 3.**

Vague Future Conditional Sentences:
254, 255. **Rem. 2.**

vallēs: declension of, 346.

vēlis rēmisque: 113. 19.

Verb Constructions: List of, 382.

Verbs: Regular, 360 ff.: Irregular,
373 ff.

governing **abl.**, 270.

governing **dat.**, see Dative of Indi-
rect Object.

of Fearing, 258; *cf.* 310. **N. 2.**

of Motion:

governing **ad** with **acc.** of **gerund**
and **gerundive**, 235. **N.**, 292
(top).

governing **supine** in **-um**, 288
(1st) Rule, 292 (top).

quō with, 314. **N.**

of saying, thinking, etc.; personal
passive of, 5. 17.

position in sentence; irregular, 293.
9, 320. 4; *cf.* 266. 21.

See Intransitive and Transitive.

vereor: construction with, 310. **N. 2**
(258).

perf. partic. of, 310. **Vocab.** (270.
Rem.); *cf.* 2. 17.

vērō: position in sentence, 246. 5.

Vestal Virgins: 9.

vester: order in phrase, 318 (2d)
Rem.

reflexive use of, 318. **Rem. 2.**

videor: indirect discourse with, 245.
N. 3.

vincō: construction with, 223. **Vocab.**

vir: declension of, 345.

contrasted with **homō**, 204. **N. 2.**

vīs: declension of, 348.

vīta: sing.; rendered as pl., 39. 17.

vocāns: declension of, 349.

Vocative: 345. **N. 1** (219. **N. 2**).

vocō: conjugation of, 360.

volō: conjugation of, 374.

Watches: of the night, 91. 17.

Way by Which: expressed by **abl.**,
294; *cf.* 5. 13, 37. 5, 103. 17,
164. 13.

Winter: little fighting during, 144.
12; *cf.* 178. 5.

Word List, 186.



